

20

Schedules



Table of Contents for Schedules 1 to 17

1.	Schedule of natural and human use values of Otago’s surface water bodies	4
	1A Schedule of natural values	6
	1AA Schedule of Otago Resident Native Freshwater Fish - Threat Status	47
	1B Schedule of water supply values	48
	1C Schedule of registered historic places	51
	1D Schedule of spiritual and cultural beliefs, values and uses of significance to Kai Tahu.....	53
2.	Schedule of specified restrictions on the exercise of permits to take surface water	58
	2A Schedule of specific minimum flows for primary allocation takes in accordance with Policy 6.4.3, and primary allocation limits in accordance with Policies 6.4.2(a) and 6.4.1A.....	59
	2B Schedule of supplementary allocation blocks and specific minimum flows in accordance with Policy 6.4.9(c).....	62
	2C Schedule of aquifers where groundwater takes are to be considered as primary allocation, and subject to minimum flows of specified catchments in accordance with Policy 6.4.1A	63
	2D Schedule of matters to be considered when setting minimum flows and allocation limits.....	64
3.	Schedule of human use values of Otago’s aquifers.....	65
	3A Schedule of human uses of particular aquifers	65
	3B Schedule of groundwater takes for the purpose of community water supply	66
4.	Schedule of the allocation and restriction regime for groundwater	67
	4A Maximum allocation limits for groundwater takes from aquifers	67
	4B Restrictions for groundwater takes	67
	4C Schedule of matters to be considered when setting maximum allocation limits and restriction levels for aquifers.....	68
	4D Matters to be considered in calculating mean annual recharge.....	69
5.	Schedule of limits to instantaneous take of groundwater	70
	5A Schedule of equations to determine stream depletion effects of the take of groundwater	70
	5B Schedule of method for identifying groundwater takes potentially affected by bore interference.....	72
6.	Schedule of water bodies where damming is prohibited	74
7.	Schedule of water bodies sensitive to suction dredge mining	75
8.	Schedule of requirements for discharge of animal wastes.....	80
9	Schedule of identified Regionally Significant Wetlands and Wetland Management Areas.....	81

10	[Repealed – 1 October 2013]	86
11	[Repealed – 1 March 2012]	87
12	Schedule of coastal marine area boundaries	88
13	Schedule of transitional provisions repealed by this Regional Plan: Water	103
14	[Repealed – 1 March 2012]	106
15	Schedule of characteristics and numerical limits and targets for good quality water in Otago lakes and rivers	107
16	Schedule of permitted activity discharge thresholds for water quality ..	113
	16A Permitted activity discharge thresholds for water quality by discharge threshold area	113
	16B Representative flow monitoring sites and reference flows	115
17	Schedule of rules applying to plantation forestry in Otago	117

SCHEDULE 1: NATURAL AND HUMAN USE VALUES OF
OTAGO'S SURFACE WATER BODIES

1. Schedule of natural and human use values of Otago's surface water bodies

This schedule identifies some of the natural and human use values of Otago's lakes and rivers. These are the characteristics of a water body which are important to, or are an essential part of, ecological communities, or are enjoyed or utilised by people and communities. The values are identified by geographic subregion and by individual water bodies, or groups of water bodies, within each subregion (see Maps A1-A8 for subregions).

The identification of natural and human use values supported by Otago's lakes and rivers provides a mechanism for recognising the existence of values which need to be taken into account and given appropriate protection in managing water use and land use activities (see Policy 5.4.2). The opportunity to provide such protection will arise when preparing or reviewing regional and district plans under the Resource Management Act, and when considering applications for resource consents.

This schedule of natural and human use values is divided into five parts:

- (a) Schedule 1A: Natural values (page 20-6);
- (aa) Schedule 1AA: Otago Resident Native Freshwater Fish – Threat Status (page 20-47)
- (b) Schedule 1B: Water supply values (page 20-48);
- (c) Schedule 1C: Registered historic places (page 20-51);
- (d) Schedule 1D: Spiritual and cultural beliefs, values and uses of significance to Kai Tahu (page 20-53).

The natural values identified in Schedule 1A are specifically related to Part II of the Resource Management Act but are limited to the attributes of the aquatic ecosystem that support indigenous flora and fauna, trout and salmon, and the regionally significant presence of gamebirds. The outstanding features and landscapes relate to those in Part II of the Act or those identified in the Water Conservation (Kawarau) Order, which this Plan recognises.

Natural and human use values are not limited to those characteristics identified in the schedule. The natural character and amenity values of lakes and rivers are also important natural and human use values, which are given particular regard to by Policies 5.4.8 and 5.4.9. The non-listing of values in Schedule 1A is not to be taken as meaning that an area, value or habitat is not important or worthy of protection.

Some water bodies may be wholly or partly wetland, with regionally significant wetland values. These water bodies may be identified in Schedule 9.

This schedule is not intended to represent a comprehensive or exhaustive list of natural and human use values. It contains information available during the preparation process of this Plan. There is now additional information available for many water bodies, however there may still be lakes or rivers for which there is no

SCHEDULE 1: NATURAL AND HUMAN USE VALUES OF
OTAGO'S SURFACE WATER BODIES

or insufficient information. Water bodies not included in the schedule, but in close proximity to those that have values identified, may share similar values.

Conversely, identification of a particular value for a river does not necessarily mean that value occurs at every point throughout that river. Identification does, however, provide a starting point, in identifying what values are expected to occur.

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

1A Schedule of natural values

The following schedule identifies natural values supported by Otago's lakes and rivers. These include ecosystem values, outstanding natural features and landscapes, areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna, and areas with a high degree of naturalness.

The areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna are included where they meet criteria under Policy 10.5.2 of the Regional Policy Statement for Otago. Other scheduled values are established to provide certainty and to meet the requirements of the Objectives and Policies in Chapter 6 of the Regional Policy Statement for Otago.

The values are identified by geographic subregion and by individual water bodies, or groups of water bodies, within each subregion (see Maps A1–A8 for subregions).

Note the codes for ecosystem values in Column 2 of Schedule 1A are given in Table 3.

Table 3: Codes for ecosystem values supported by lakes and rivers

Ecosystem Value	Code	Explanation
Physical Characteristics		
Size	Psize	Large water bodies supporting high numbers of particular species, or habitat variety, which can provide for diverse life cycle requirements of a particular species, or a range of species.
Unimpeded access	Ppass	Access within the main stem of a catchment through to the sea or a lake unimpeded by artificial means, such as weirs, and culverts.
Substrata: Macrophyte Boulder Gravel Sand Silt/mud Bedrock	Pplant Pboulder Pgravel Psand Psilt Prock	Refers to the bed composition of importance for resident biota.
Habitat Characteristics		
Spawning areas	Hspawn	Refers to presence of significant fish spawning areas: (t)=trout; (s)=salmon.
Juvenile rearing areas	Hjuve	Refers to presence of significant areas for development of juvenile fish: (t)=trout; (s)=salmon.
Riparian vegetation	Hriparian	Refers to presence of riparian vegetation of significance to aquatic habitats.

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

Ecosystem Value	Code	Explanation
Freedom from biological nuisances	Exoticfree Weedfree Willowfree	Refers to absence of: exotic species of fish; aquatic pest plants (eg Lagarosiphon) identified in the Pest Management Strategy for Otago 2009; Crack willow.
Species Characteristics		
Exotic game fish: trout, salmon	Trout Rtrout Salmon	Refers to significant presence of trout. Refers to regionally significant presence of trout. Refers to significant presence of salmon.
Fishery values: eels	Eel	Refers to significant presence of eels.
Indigenous fish diversity	Fishdiv	Refers to presence of a significant range of indigenous fish species.
Indigenous fish – rare species	Rarefish	Refers to presence of indigenous fish species threatened with extinction.
Indigenous waterfowl diversity	Birddiv	Refers to presence of a significant range of indigenous waterfowl.
Indigenous waterfowl - rare species	Birdrare	Refers to presence of indigenous waterfowl threatened with extinction.
Indigenous Invertebrates diversity	Invdiv	Refers to presence of a significant range of indigenous invertebrates.
Indigenous Invertebrates - rare species	Invrare	Refers to presence of indigenous invertebrates threatened with extinction.
Indigenous- aquatic vegetation	Sigveg	Refers to presence of significant indigenous aquatic vegetation.
Gamebirds	Gbird	Refers to regionally significant presence of gamebirds.

Note that all map references given in Schedule 1A refer to the NZMS 260 series.

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

North Otago subregion				
<i>Water body</i>	<i>Ecosystem Values</i>	<i>Outstanding natural feature or landscape</i>	<i>Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna</i>	<i>Areas with a high degree of naturalness</i>
Welcome Creek	Hspawn(t), Weedfree, Trout, Salmon. In divid in headwaters			
Unnamed former tributary of the Pacific Ocean a.k.a. Temby Swamp Stream	Ppass, Pgravel, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Trout			
Waiareka Creek	Weedfree, Hspawn (inanga spawning below J42:435586)			
Kakanui River (note, the Kakanui-Kauru Alluvium Aquifer forms an integral part of the water body)	Psize, Ppass, all substrata, Weedfree, Hspawn(t), (inanga spawning below J42:443574), Hjuve, Trout, Eel, Rarefish, Fishdiv. Willowfree, Hriparian upstream of I41:275733. Invrare (North branch) upstream of I41:110675		<i>Significant habitat</i> for longjaw galaxiid and koaro. <i>Significant habitat</i> for lamprey (uncommon in Otago).	A high degree of naturalness above Clifton Falls.
Kauru River	Pgravel, Weedfree, Rarefish, Fishdiv		<i>Significant habitat</i> for longjaw galaxiid.	
Kurinui Creek a.k.a. Big Kuri Creek	Weedfree. Invrare upstream of J42:334392			
Waianakarua River	Ppass, Pgravel, Hjuve, Hriparian, Weedfree, Hspawn (inanga spawning downstream of J42:403485), Rarefish, Fishdiv, Eel		<i>Significant habitat</i> for koaro.	A high degree of naturalness above afforested areas of the catchment.
South Branch Waianakarua	Ppass, Pgravel, Hjuve, Hriparian, Weedfree, Fishdiv. Invrare upstream of J42:305410			
Shag River (Waihemo) (note, the Shag Alluvium Aquifer forms an integral part of the water body)	Psize, Ppass all substrata, Weedfree, Hspawn (inanga spawning below J43:351233), Trout(t), Eel, Rarefish. In divid in mid reaches		<i>Significant habitat</i> for flathead galaxiid and koaro. <i>Significant habitat</i> for lamprey (uncommon in Otago).	
Siberia Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat</i> for flathead galaxiid.	

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

North Otago subregion				
<i>Water body</i>	<i>Ecosystem Values</i>	<i>Outstanding natural feature or landscape</i>	<i>Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna</i>	<i>Areas with a high degree of naturalness</i>
Unnamed tributary of the Shag River (Waihemo) a.k.a. Deem Burn	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for koaro upstream of I42:224388.</i>	
Pigroot Creek	Pboulder, Hriparian, Weedfree. Invrare upstream of I42:072530			
Happy Valley Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for flathead galaxiid.</i>	
Tipperary Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for hybrid galaxiid species.</i>	
Deepdell Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for flathead galaxiid.</i>	
Trotters Creek	Weedfree, Hriparian, Hjuve, Fishdiv, Rarefish. Invrare upstream of J42:330322		<i>Significant habitat for giant kokopu and koaro. Significant habitat for lamprey (uncommon in Otago).</i>	
Pigeon Creek	Weedfree, Hriparian, Hjuve, Fishdiv, Rarefish. Invrare upstream of J42:335339		<i>Significant habitat for giant kokopu.</i>	

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

Maniototo subregion				
<i>Water body</i>	<i>Ecosystem Values</i>	<i>Outstanding natural feature or landscape</i>	<i>Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna</i>	<i>Areas with a high degree of naturalness</i>
Taieri River upstream of Tiroiti	Psize, Pgravel, Ppass, Hspawn(t&s), Hjuve, Weedfree, Eel, Trout downstream of Paerau weir. Hriparian, Trout, Birddiv, Invdiv, Rarefish upstream of Paerau weir. Invrare upstream of H43:544013, Gbird	<p>a) Deep gorge (Taieri Falls) cut into distinct rocky scarp, schistose landscape, in main stem between H43:110567 and Canadian Flat.</p> <p>b) Deep gorge (Paerau Gorge) cut into distinct rocky scarp, schistose landscape, in main stem from Paerau Reservoir to NZMS 260 H42:369727.</p> <p>c) Scroll plain (Serpentine Flat) consisting of a meandering channel pattern and oxbow lakes and wetlands, from confluence with Bonds Creek to Paerau Reservoir.</p> <p>d) Scroll plain consisting of a meandering channel pattern and oxbow lakes and wetlands, from confluence with Linn Burn to confluence with Shepherds Hut Stream.</p>	<p>Significant habitat for flathead galaxiid, including tributaries upstream of Paerau weir.</p> <p>Significant habitat for lamprey (uncommon in Otago).</p>	
Ailsa Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		Significant habitat for flathead galaxiid.	
Bullocky Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		Significant habitat for flathead galaxiid.	
Elbow Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		Significant habitat for flathead galaxiid.	
Unnamed tributary of the Taieri River at H43:600125	Weedfree, Rarefish		Significant habitat for flathead galaxiid.	

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

Maniototo subregion				
<i>Water body</i>	<i>Ecosystem Values</i>	<i>Outstanding natural feature or landscape</i>	<i>Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna</i>	<i>Areas with a high degree of naturalness</i>
Horse Burn	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for flathead galaxiid.</i>	
Rock and Pillar Creek	Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Exoticfree. Invrare upstream of H43:772290			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Styx Creek	Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Exoticfree. Invrare upstream of H43:744254			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Logan Burn	Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Trout			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Shepherds Hut Creek, McHardies Creek and Loganburn Reservoir	Hriparian, Hspawn(t), Hjuve			
Linn Burn	Pboulder, Weedfree, Rarefish. Invrare upstream of H43:603294		<i>Significant habitat for flathead galaxiid.</i>	A high degree of naturalness above 600 metres asl.
Totara Creek	Weedfree, Trout (lower reaches), Rarefish. Invrare upstream of H42:595338		<i>Significant habitat for unidentified galaxiid species.</i>	A high degree of naturalness above 600 metres asl.
Sow Burn	Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Salmon, Trout			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Cambridge Creek (tributary of the Sow Burn)	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for flathead galaxiid.</i>	A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Ewe Burn	Hspawn(t), Weedfree, Rarefish, Trout		<i>Significant habitat for roundhead galaxiid.</i>	
Pig Burn	Hspawn, Hjuve, Trout			
Kye Burn	Psize, Ppass, Weedfree, Hriparian, Hspawn(t), Hjuve, Rarefish, Eel, Trout	Areas of old gold sluicing landscapes.	<i>Significant habitat for flathead galaxiid and roundhead galaxiid.</i>	A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

Maniototo subregion				
<i>Water body</i>	<i>Ecosystem Values</i>	<i>Outstanding natural feature or landscape</i>	<i>Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna</i>	<i>Areas with a high degree of naturalness</i>
Healy Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish, Fishdiv		<i>Significant habitat for unique community of flathead and roundhead galaxiids. Type locality for flathead galaxiid.</i>	
Little Kye Burn	Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Trout, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for roundhead galaxiid.</i>	
Swin Burn	Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for roundhead galaxiid.</i>	

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

Central Otago subregion				
<i>Water body</i>	<i>Ecosystem Values</i>	<i>Outstanding natural feature or landscape</i>	<i>Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna</i>	<i>Areas with a high degree of naturalness</i>
Clutha River/Mata-Au between Alexandra and Lake Wanaka	Psize, Prock, Pgravel, Hspawn(t&s), Hriparian, Hjuve(t&s), Trout, Eel, Salmon, Rarefish, Birddiv		Significant habitat for flathead galaxiid (tributaries).	
Chapmans Gully	Invrare upstream of G42:237420			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Luggate Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish. Invrare upstream of F40:040924		Significant habitat for koaro.	
Princess Burn	Weedfree. Invrare upstream of F40:064925			
Manuherikia River main stem	Pgravel, Hspawn(t), Hjuve, Hriparian, Weedfree, Eel, Trout. Invdiv in mid reaches. Birdrare above Falls Dam		Significant habitat: Areas of importance to internationally uncommon species - black fronted tern - above Falls Dam.	
Rocks Creek	Weedfree. Invrare upstream of H40:620976			
Unnamed tributary of the Manor Burn at G42:435365	Weedfree, Rarefish		Significant habitat for roundhead galaxiid.	
Chatto Creek	Pboulder, Hspawn, Hriparian, Weedfree, Trout, Eel, Rarefish		Significant habitat for roundhead galaxiid.	
Devonshire Creek	Pboulder, Hriparian, Hspawn, Hjuve, Trout			
Ophir Drainage Channel	Weedfree, Rarefish		Significant habitat type locality for roundhead galaxiid.	
Dunstan Creek	Pgravel, Weedfree, Hriparian. Hjuve (t), Hspawn (t), Trout in lower reaches	Old gold sluicing landscapes at Blue Lake.		A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Ida Burn and Pool Burn	Hspawn, Hjuve, Trout, Eel			
Donald Stuarts Creek	Pgravel, Weedfree. Exoticfree, Invrare upstream of H41:508840			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Dovedale Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		Significant habitat for roundhead galaxiid.	

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

Central Otago subregion				
<i>Water body</i>	<i>Ecosystem Values</i>	<i>Outstanding natural feature or landscape</i>	<i>Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna</i>	<i>Areas with a high degree of naturalness</i>
Earnsclough or Fraser River	Pgravel, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t). Hriparian (except in lower reaches). Weedfree, Trout, Eel. Exoticfree in headwaters. Invrare upstream of F42:098420			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Bannock Burn	Pgravel, Hjuve, Hspawn, Eel, Trout			
Low Burn	Pboulder, Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t)			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Sheepskin Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for flathead galaxiid.</i>	
Schoolhouse Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for flathead galaxiid.</i>	
Lindis River	Pgravel, Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Eel, Trout			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
John Bull Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for koaro.</i>	
Amisfield Burn	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for koaro.</i>	
Cardrona River	Pboulder, Psand, Pgravel, Hspawn, Hjuve, Weedfree, Trout, Eel, Rarefish. Invrare (mid to upper reaches)		<i>Significant habitat for flathead galaxiid</i>	A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl
Spotts Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for koaro.</i>	
Timber Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for koaro.</i>	
Branch Burn	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for koaro.</i>	
Boundary Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for koaro.</i>	
Wrights Gully	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for koaro.</i>	
Maori Gully	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for koaro.</i>	

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

Lakes subregion				
<i>Water body</i>	<i>Ecosystem Values</i>	<i>Outstanding natural feature or landscape</i>	<i>Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna</i>	<i>Areas with a high degree of naturalness</i>
Kawarau River <i>between Lake Dunstan and Lake Wakatipu</i>	Psize, Pgravel, Prock, Trout, Salmon, Eel, Rarefish. Weedfree upstream of Lake Dunstan	Outstanding: (a) for its wild, scenic characteristics; (b) natural characteristics, in particular the return flow in the upper section when the Shotover River is in flood; (c) for scientific values, in particular the return flow in the upper section when the Shotover is in flood; (d) for recreational purposes, in particular rafting, jet boating and kayaking. Spectacular and rugged river gorge, schistose landscape, fast flowing white water and rapids, old gold sluicing landscape, from confluence with Arrow River to Lake Dunstan.	<i>Significant habitat</i> for koaro including many tributaries.	
Soho Creek	Weedfree. Invrare upstream of F41:866830			
Lake Hayes	Psand, Psilt, Weedfree, Hriparian, Eel, Trout			
Lakes Johnson, Luna, Kirkpatrick and Dispute	Hriparian, Eel, Trout			
Horne Creek	Weedfree. Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Ppass, Trout in lower reaches			
Moke Lake	Hriparian, Weedfree (also free of Elodea), Eel, Trout, Sigveg		<i>Significant vegetation:</i> Rare association of aquatic plants.	

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

Lakes subregion				
<i>Water body</i>	<i>Ecosystem Values</i>	<i>Outstanding natural feature or landscape</i>	<i>Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna</i>	<i>Areas with a high degree of naturalness</i>
Lake Wakatipu	Psize, Pplant, Weedfree, Hjuve(t&s), Hriparian, Eel, Trout, Salmon, Sigveg, Rarefish, Invrare	<p>Outstanding:</p> <p>(a) as a fishery;</p> <p>(b) for its scenic characteristics;</p> <p>(c) for scientific value, in particular water clarity, and bryophyte community;</p> <p>(d) for recreational purposes, in particular boating;</p> <p>(e) for historical purposes;</p> <p>(f) for significance in accordance with tikanga Maori, in particular sites at the head of the lake, and the legend of the lake itself.</p> <p>Scenic values within the wider landscape context of the surrounding mountains, particularly:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • clear blue colour of the water, • river deltas, and • beaches, particularly uncommon beach features between Rat Point and White Point. 	<p><i>Significant habitat</i> for koaro including many tributaries.</p> <p><i>Significant vegetation:</i> Rare association of aquatic plants.</p>	
Unnamed tributary of Lake Wakatipu at F42:747392	Weedfree, Invrare			
One Mile Creek	Weedfree. Invrare upstream of E41:665659			
Gorge Creek	Weedfree. Invrare upstream of E41:408857			

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

Lakes subregion				
<i>Water body</i>	<i>Ecosystem Values</i>	<i>Outstanding natural feature or landscape</i>	<i>Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna</i>	<i>Areas with a high degree of naturalness</i>
Wye, Kingston and Staircase Creeks	Pboulder, Hriparian, Weedfree, Rarefish. Ppass in Staircase Creek only. Hspawn in lower reaches		<i>Significant habitat</i> for koaro.	A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Streams from west and south of Richardson Mountains	Pboulder, Weedfree, Hjuve, Hspawn, Hriparian			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Buckler Burn, Precipice Creek or Temple Burn, Twelve Mile Creek or Ox Burn	Pboulder, Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Rees River	Psize, Ppass, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Weedfree, Hriparian, Eel, Salmon, Trout, Birddiv, Birdrare	<p>Outstanding:</p> <p>(a) Natural and physical qualities and characteristics that contribute to people's appreciation of pleasantness of waters;</p> <p>(b) Natural and physical qualities and characteristics that contribute to aesthetic coherence;</p> <p>(c) as habitat for wildlife;</p> <p>(d) for its scenic characteristics;</p> <p>(e) for significance in accordance with tikanga Maori, in particular sites at the mouth of the river.</p> <p>High level of naturalness - free from significant interference by human practices, from confluence with Hunter Creek to its source.</p> <p>System of braided gravel river channels, in main stem from Lake Wakatipu</p>	<i>Significant habitat:</i> Areas of importance to internationally uncommon species - black fronted tern, wrybill, banded dotterel - in main stem from Lake Wakatipu to confluence with Hunter Creek.	

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

Lakes subregion				
<i>Water body</i>	<i>Ecosystem Values</i>	<i>Outstanding natural feature or landscape</i>	<i>Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna</i>	<i>Areas with a high degree of naturalness</i>
		to confluence with Hunter Creek.		
Earnslaw Burn	Ppass, Hspawn, Hriparian, Hjuve, Trout, Weedfree, Salmon, Birddiv, Birdrare			A high degree of naturalness within Mount Aspiring/Tititea National Park.
Diamond Lake, Diamond Creek and Lake Reid	Ppass, Psand, Hspawn(t&s), Hjuve(t&s), Weedfree, Hriparian, Eel, Trout, Salmon (Quinnat), Birddiv, Rarefish	Outstanding (a) as habitat for wildlife and quinnat salmon; (b) as a fishery.	<i>Significant habitat</i> for koaro.	
Diamond Lake tributary at E40:447978	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat</i> for koaro.	
Dart River/Te Awa Whakatipu	Psize, Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Eel, Trout, Salmon, Birddiv, Birdrare	Outstanding: (a) Natural and physical qualities and characteristics that contribute to people's appreciation of pleasantness of waters; (b) Natural and physical qualities and characteristics that contribute to aesthetic coherence; (c) Natural and physical qualities and characteristics that contribute to cultural attributes; (d) Biological and genetic diversity of ecosystems; (e) Essential characteristics that determine the ecosystem's integrity, form, functioning and resilience; (f) as habitat for wildlife; (g) for its scenic characteristics; (h) for its natural characteristics, in	<i>Significant habitat:</i> Presence of a breeding population of threatened endemic species - blue duck - above Beans Burn confluence to its source. Areas of importance to internationally uncommon species - black fronted tern, wrybill, banded dotterel - in main stem from Lake Wakatipu to confluence to Beans Burn.	

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

Lakes subregion				
<i>Water body</i>	<i>Ecosystem Values</i>	<i>Outstanding natural feature or landscape</i>	<i>Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna</i>	<i>Areas with a high degree of naturalness</i>
		<p>particular natural turbidity;</p> <p>(i) scientific value, in particular natural turbidity;</p> <p>(j) for significance in accordance with tikanga Maori, in particular sites at the mouth of the river.</p> <p>High level of naturalness - free from significant interference by human practices above Beans Burn confluence to its source.</p> <p>System of braided gravel river channels with delta, in main stem from Lake Wakatipu to confluence with Beans Burn.</p>		
Route Burn	Psize, Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Eel, Trout, Birddiv, Birdrare	<p>Outstanding:</p> <p>(a) Natural and physical qualities and characteristics that contribute to people's appreciation of pleasantness of waters;</p> <p>(b) Natural and physical qualities and characteristics that contribute to aesthetic coherence;</p> <p>(c) Natural and physical qualities and characteristics that contribute to cultural attributes;</p> <p>(d) Natural and physical qualities and characteristics that contribute to recreational attributes;</p> <p>(e) Biological and genetic diversity of ecosystems;</p>		A high degree of naturalness within Mount Aspiring/ Tititea National Park.

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

Lakes subregion				
<i>Water body</i>	<i>Ecosystem Values</i>	<i>Outstanding natural feature or landscape</i>	<i>Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna</i>	<i>Areas with a high degree of naturalness</i>
		<p>(f) Essential characteristics that determine the ecosystem's integrity, form, functioning and resilience.</p> <p>High level of naturalness - free from significant interference by human practices.</p>		
Greenstone River, Caples River	Psize, Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Eel, Trout, Birdrare	<p>Outstanding:</p> <p>(a) Natural and physical qualities and characteristics that contribute to people's appreciation of pleasantness of waters;</p> <p>(b) natural and physical qualities and characteristics that contribute to recreational attributes;</p> <p>(c) Essential characteristics that determine the ecosystem's integrity, form, functioning and resilience.</p> <p>High level of naturalness - free from significant interference by human practices.</p>		A high degree of naturalness within National Park and DoC estate.
Lochy River	Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Eel, Trout	<p>Outstanding:</p> <p>(a) as a fishery;</p> <p>(b) for recreational purposes, in particular fishing.</p> <p>Wild and scenic characteristics, in main stem from Lake Wakatipu to its source.</p>		A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Collins Creek	Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t)			

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

Lakes subregion				
<i>Water body</i>	<i>Ecosystem Values</i>	<i>Outstanding natural feature or landscape</i>	<i>Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna</i>	<i>Areas with a high degree of naturalness</i>
Streams flowing to Lake Wakatipu between Halfway Bay and Elfin Bay, including Von River	Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Eel, Trout, Rarefish	Outstanding: (a) as a fishery; (b) for recreational purposes, in particular fishing. Wild and scenic characteristics, in Von main stem from Lake Wakatipu to its source.	<i>Significant habitat</i> for roundhead galaxiid (Von catchment).	A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Bullock Creek	Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Trout			
Lake Wanaka	Psize, Psand, Eel, Trout, Salmon, Sigveg, Rarefish, Invrare	Scenic values within the wider landscape context of the surrounding mountains, particularly the unmodified lake level, water quality and colour of the water.	<i>Significant vegetation:</i> Rare association of aquatic plants.	
Unnamed tributary of the Motatapu River at F40:825058	Weedfree, Invrare			
Unnamed tributary of the Motatapu River at F40:827055	Weedfree, Invrare			
Matukituki River	Psize, Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn(t&s), Hjuve(t&s), Hriparian, Eel, Trout, Birddiv, Birdrare, Rarefish	System of braided gravel river channels, in main stem from Lake Wanaka to its source.	<i>Significant habitat:</i> Areas of importance to internationally uncommon species - black fronted tern, wrybill, banded dotterel - in main stem from Lake Wanaka to its source. <i>Significant habitat</i> for koaro including many tributaries.	A high degree of naturalness within Mount Aspiring/Tititea National Park.

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

Lakes subregion				
<i>Water body</i>	<i>Ecosystem Values</i>	<i>Outstanding natural feature or landscape</i>	<i>Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna</i>	<i>Areas with a high degree of naturalness</i>
Streams flowing off West Wanaka, including Albert Burn	Ppass, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Weedfree, Trout			A high degree of naturalness within Mount Aspiring/Tititea National Park. A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Wilkin River	Psize, Pgravel, Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Trout, Eel, Birddiv, Birdrare	High level of naturalness - free from significant interference by human practices above Kerin Forks to its source. System of braided, gravel river channels, in main stem from confluence with Makarora River to Kerin Forks	<i>Significant habitat:</i> Presence of a breeding population of threatened endemic species - blue duck - above upper forks to source. Areas of importance to internationally uncommon species - black fronted tern, wrybill, banded dotterel - in main stem from confluence with Makarora River to Kerin Forks.	A high degree of naturalness within Mount Aspiring/Tititea National Park.
Young River	Psize, Ppass, Hriparian, Hspawn, Hjuve, Trout, Eel			A high degree of naturalness within Mount Aspiring/Tititea National Park.
Makarora River	Psize, Ppass, Pgravel, Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Eel, Trout, Birddiv, Birdrare	System of braided, gravel river channels with delta, in main stem between Lake Wanaka and confluence with Blue River.	<i>Significant habitat:</i> Areas of importance to internationally uncommon species - black fronted tern, wrybill, banded dotterel - in main stem between Lake Wanaka and confluence with Blue River.	A high degree of naturalness within Mount Aspiring/Tititea National Park.
Brady Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat</i> for koaro.	
Lake Hawea	Psize, Psand, Weedfree, Hjuve(t&s), Eel, Trout, Salmon	Scenic values within the wider landscape context of the surrounding mountains, particularly colour of the water.		

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

Lakes subregion				
<i>Water body</i>	<i>Ecosystem Values</i>	<i>Outstanding natural feature or landscape</i>	<i>Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna</i>	<i>Areas with a high degree of naturalness</i>
Hunter River	Psize, Pgravel, Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Eel, Trout, Birddiv, Birdrare	High level of naturalness - free from significant interference by human practices between Long Flat Creek confluence and its source System of braided, gravel river channels, in main stem from Lake Hawea to confluence with Long Flat Creek.	<i>Significant habitat:</i> Presence of a breeding population of threatened endemic species - blue duck - between Long Flat Creek confluence and its source. Areas of importance to internationally uncommon species - black fronted tern, wrybill, banded dotterel - from Lake Hawea to confluence with Long Flat Creek.	A high degree of naturalness within Mount Aspiring/Tititea National Park. A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Dingle Burn	Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Eel, Trout, Birdrare			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Timaru River	Ppass, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Weedfree, Trout. Invrare between G39:308280 and G39:313294 (incl tributaries)			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Hawea River	Psize, Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Trout, Salmon, Eel			
Shotover River	Pgravel, Pboulder, Psand, Prock, Psize, Weedfree, Hriparian, Birddiv, Birdrare	Outstanding: (a) for its wild and scenic characteristics; (b) for its natural characteristics, in particular the high natural sediment load and active delta at confluence with Kawarau River; (c) scientific value, in particular the high natural sediment load and active delta at confluence with Kawarau River; (d) for recreational purposes, in particular	Lochnagar and Lake Creek, outstanding: (a) Essential characteristics that determine the ecosystem's integrity, form, functioning and resilience. <i>Significant habitat:</i> Areas of importance to internationally uncommon species - black fronted tern, banded dotterel - in main stem between	A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

Lakes subregion				
<i>Water body</i>	<i>Ecosystem Values</i>	<i>Outstanding natural feature or landscape</i>	<i>Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna</i>	<i>Areas with a high degree of naturalness</i>
		<p>rafting, kayaking and jet boating; (e) for historical purposes, in particular gold mining.</p> <p>Spectacular and rugged river gorge, schistose landscape, fast flowing white water and rapids, old gold sluicing landscape, in main stem between confluence with Iron Stone Stream and Arthur Point.</p> <p>Wild and scenic characteristics, from confluence with Iron Stone Stream to its source.</p>	Arthur Point and its source.	
Carmichaels Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat</i> for koaro.	
Deep Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat</i> for koaro.	
Skippers Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat</i> for koaro.	
Mill Creek	Pgravel, Psand, Hspawn, Hjuve, Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat</i> for roundhead galaxiid.	A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Arrow River	Psize, Psand, Pgravel, Ppass, Hspawn, Hjuve, Weedfree, Trout			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Roaring Meg	Pboulder, Weedfree, Hriparian. Invrare upstream of F41:026844			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Nevis River	Psize, Ppass, Prock, Pgravel, Psand, Hspawn,, Hjuve, Weedfree, Eel, Trout, Birddiv, Birdrare. In divid above Nevis Crossing.	<p>Main stem gorge from Nevis Crossing to Kawarau River confluence: Outstanding (a) for its wild, characteristics; (b) for recreational purposes, in particular fishing and kayaking.</p> <p>Main stem above Nevis Crossing to source:</p>		A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

Lakes subregion				
<i>Water body</i>	<i>Ecosystem Values</i>	<i>Outstanding natural feature or landscape</i>	<i>Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna</i>	<i>Areas with a high degree of naturalness</i>
		<p>Outstanding (a) for its scenic, characteristics; (b) for recreational purposes, in particular fishing.</p> <p>High level of naturalness above Nevis Crossing to its source.</p> <p>Spectacular river gorge, white water and rapids, in main stem from Nevis Crossing to confluence with Kawarau River.</p>		
Unnamed tributary of the Nevis River at F43:820261	Hriparian, Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat</i> for roundhead galaxiid.	
Sproules Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat</i> for koaro.	
Schoolhouse Creek	Weedfree. Invrare upstream of F42:870478			
Unnamed tributary of the Nevis River at F42:921450	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat</i> for roundhead galaxiid	
Unnamed tributary of the Nevis River at F42:951492	Weedfree. Invrare upstream of F42:003487			
Unnamed tributary of the Nevis River at F42:954541	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat</i> for roundhead galaxiid.	
Nevis Burn	Weedfree. Invrare upstream of F42:870524			

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

Lakes subregion				
<i>Water body</i>	<i>Ecosystem Values</i>	<i>Outstanding natural feature or landscape</i>	<i>Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna</i>	<i>Areas with a high degree of naturalness</i>
Unnamed tributary of the Nevis River at F42:959529	Weedfree, Rarefish		Significant habitat for roundhead galaxiid.	
Doolans Creek Left Branch	Weedfree. Invrare upstream of F42:860561			
Rastus Burn	Pboulder, Weedfree, Hspawn, Hriparian, Invrare upstream of F41:806641			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

Roxburgh subregion				
<i>Water body</i>	<i>Ecosystem Values</i>	<i>Outstanding natural feature or landscape</i>	<i>Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna</i>	<i>Areas with a high degree of naturalness</i>
Clutha River/Mata-Au between Alexandra and Island Block	Psize, Psand, Pgravel, Prock, Hjuve, Eel, Trout, Salmon, Birddiv. Hspawn(s) below Roxburgh dam, Sigveg below Roxburgh dam		Significant habitat for lamprey (uncommon in Otago)	
Obelisk Creek	Weedfree. Invrare upstream of G42:175339			
Elbow Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		Significant habitat for koaro.	
Coal Creek	Weedfree. Invrare upstream of G42:170321			
Teviot River	Pboulder, Weedfree, Willowfree (in upper reaches), Hjuve(t&s), Hspawn(t&s), Hriparian, Trout			
Lake Onslow	Hriparian, Hjuve(t), Hspawn(t), Trout			
Unnamed tributary of Lake Onslow at G43:458137	Weedfree, Rarefish		Significant habitat for roundhead galaxiid.	
Black Jacks Creek	Weedfree. Invrare upstream of G43:210086			
Benger Burn	Pboulder, Weedfree, Hspawn(t&s), Hriparian, Rarefish		Significant habitat for koaro.	A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Tima Burn	Weedfree, Rarefish		Significant habitat for koaro.	
Streams flowing from Old Man Range /Kopuwai	Pboulder, Hspawn(t), Weedfree, Hriparian			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

Strath Taieri subregion				
<i>Water body</i>	<i>Ecosystem Values</i>	<i>Outstanding natural feature or landscape</i>	<i>Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna</i>	<i>Areas with a high degree of naturalness</i>
Taieri River between Tiroiti and Pukerangi	Psize, Ppass, Psand, Pgravel, Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve, Hriparian, Eel, Salmon, Rarefish, Fishdiv, Trout		Significant habitat for flathead galaxiid (including many tributaries). Significant habitat for lamprey (uncommon in Otago) Significant habitat for Lower Taieri galaxiid and koaro in many tributaries below Middlemarch.	
Prices Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		Significant habitat for roundhead galaxiid.	
Lug Creek	Pboulder, Hriparian, Eel, Weedfree. Invrare upstream of H43:862280			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Cap Burn, Mare Burn, Scrub Burn and Six Mile (upper)	Hriparian, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t)			
Annetts Creek, Heeney Creek and House Creek	Hriparian, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t)			
Six Mile Creek (lower)	Pgravel, Prock, Weedfree, Eel, Hriparian, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t). Invrare upstream of H43:853243			
Last Creek, Nant Creek, Dewar Creek and Kirkland Creek	Pgravel, Hriparian, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t)			
Nenthorn Stream	Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Eel, Trout, Rarefish		Significant habitat for flathead galaxiid.	
Black Rock Stream	Weedfree, Rarefish		Significant habitat for flathead galaxiid.	
Manuka Stream	Weedfree, Rarefish		Significant habitat for flathead galaxiid.	
Washpool Stream	Weedfree, Rarefish		Significant habitat for flathead galaxiid.	
Deighton Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		Significant habitat for flathead galaxiid.	

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

Strath Taieri subregion				
<i>Water body</i>	<i>Ecosystem Values</i>	<i>Outstanding natural feature or landscape</i>	<i>Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna</i>	<i>Areas with a high degree of naturalness</i>
Spratts Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for roundhead galaxiid.</i>	
Sutton Stream	Pboulder, Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hriparian, Hjuve, Trout, Eel			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Burgan Stream	Weedfree, Exoticfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for Lower Taieri galaxiid.</i>	
Stony Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish. Invrare upstream of H44:603910		<i>Significant habitat for Lower Taieri galaxiid.</i>	
Salt Lake (near Sutton)	Weedfree	A rare example of a natural salt lake.		
March Creek	Pboulder, Pgravel, Psand, Psilt, Weedfree			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

Waikouaiti/Lammermoor subregion				
<i>Water body</i>	<i>Ecosystem Values</i>	<i>Outstanding natural feature or landscape</i>	<i>Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna</i>	<i>Areas with a high degree of naturalness</i>
Waikouaiti River (excluding South Branch)	Psize, Ppass, Psand, Pgravel, Weedfree, Hspawn (t) (& inanga spawning between I43:240084 and I43:266087), Hjuve, Eel, Trout, Rarefish. Invrare between I43:183242 and I43:093297, and including tributaries between I43:148264 and I43:093297		Significant habitat for flathead galaxiid, hybrid galaxiid, banded kokopu and koaro.	
Unnamed tributary of the Waikouaiti River at I43:097281	Weedfree, Rarefish		Significant habitat for flathead galaxiid.	
Back Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		Significant habitat for flathead galaxiid.	
Waikouaiti River South Branch	Weedfree, Ppass, Hspawn(t), Hjuve, Hriparian, Trout, Rarefish, Fishdiv		Significant habitat for koaro.	A high degree of naturalness within Scenic Reserve.
Unnamed tributary of the Waikouaiti River a.k.a. Merton Stream at I43:244065	Weedfree, Fishdiv, Rarefish		Significant habitat for lamprey (uncommon in Otago).	
Toll Bar Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		Significant habitat for koaro.	
Flat Stream	Weedfree. Invrare in lower reaches			
Taieri River between Pukerangi and Outram	Psize, Ppass, Pgravel, Psand, Prock, Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Trout, Salmon, Eel, Fishdiv, Rarefish	Well defined, deep gorge (Taieri Gorge) cut into distinct rocky scarp, schistose landscape, in main stem between confluence with Ross Stream and Outram.	Significant habitat for Lower Taieri galaxiid (tributaries). Significant habitat for lamprey (uncommon in Otago).	
Traquair Burn	Weedfree, Eel, Fishdiv			
Smugglers Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		Significant habitat (and type locality) for Lower Taieri galaxiid.	

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

Waikouaiti/Lammermoor subregion				
<i>Water body</i>	<i>Ecosystem Values</i>	<i>Outstanding natural feature or landscape</i>	<i>Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna</i>	<i>Areas with a high degree of naturalness</i>
Deep Stream	Pgravel, Psize in lower reaches. Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Rarefish, Eel, Trout. Invrare upstream of H44:605910		<i>Significant habitat for Lower Taieri galaxiid.</i>	A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Clarkes Stream	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for Lower Taieri galaxiid at H44:682930.</i>	
Unnamed tributary of Deep Stream at H44:660958	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for Lower Taieri galaxiid.</i>	
Unnamed tributary of Deep Stream at H44:678947	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for Lower Taieri galaxiid.</i>	
Barbours Stream	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for Lower Taieri galaxiid.</i>	
Deep Creek	Pgravel, Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve, Hriparian, Trout. Invrare upstream of H44:623987			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Three O'clock Stream	Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve, Hriparian, Willowfree, Trout, Rarefish, Fishdiv		<i>Significant habitat for flathead galaxiid and koaro.</i>	
Christmas Creek	Ppass, Pboulder, Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Willowfree			A high degree of naturalness within Scenic Reserve.
Lee Stream	Psize, Ppass, Pgravel, Psand, Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve, Hriparian, Rarefish, Eel, Trout. Invrare upstream of I44:952867, and including tributaries upstream of I44:916868		<i>Significant habitat for Lower Taieri galaxiid.</i>	
Black Rock Stream	Weedfree, Eel, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for Lower Taieri galaxiid.</i>	
Broad Stream	Weedfree, Eel, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for koaro.</i>	
Canton Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish, Fishdiv		<i>Significant habitat for Lower Taieri galaxiid.</i>	

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

Waikouaiti/Lammermoor subregion				
<i>Water body</i>	<i>Ecosystem Values</i>	<i>Outstanding natural feature or landscape</i>	<i>Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna</i>	<i>Areas with a high degree of naturalness</i>
Big Stream	Ppass, Pboulder, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Willowfree, Weedfree, Eel, Rarefish, Trout			A high degree of naturalness within Scenic Reserve.

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

Coastal subregion				
<i>Water body</i>	<i>Ecosystem Values</i>	<i>Outstanding natural feature or landscape</i>	<i>Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna</i>	<i>Areas with a high degree of naturalness</i>
Careys Creek	Pgravel, Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Rarefish, Fishdiv, In divid (upper reaches)		<i>Significant habitat</i> for koaro and banded kokopu. <i>Significant habitat</i> for lamprey (uncommon in Otago).	
Waitati River	Ppass, but major abstractions can result in very low flows in lower stretches. Pgravel, Weedfree, Hspawn (t) (&inanga spawning below I44:205925), Hjuve(t). Hriparian in headwaters. Trout, Rarefish, In divid (upper reaches)		<i>Significant habitat</i> for koaro. <i>Significant habitat</i> for lamprey (uncommon in Otago).	A high degree of naturalness within Silverpeaks Scenic Reserve.
Fergusons Creek	Weedfree. In rare above I44:170896			
Wetherstons Creek	Weedfree			
Orokonui Creek	Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Rarefish, Fishdiv		<i>Significant habitat</i> for giant kokopu, koaro and banded kokopu. <i>Significant habitat</i> for lamprey (uncommon in Otago).	
Foote Stream and Mihiwaka Stream	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat</i> for koaro and banded kokopu.	
Water of Leith	Pgravel, Weedfree, Hspawn(t&s), Hjuve(t&s), Hriparian Rarefish, Salmon, Trout		<i>Significant habitat</i> for giant kokopu and banded kokopu.	
Streams entering Otago Harbour (except Water of Leith)	Weedfree, Hspawn, Rarefish, Fishdiv, Exoticfree		<i>Significant habitat</i> for koaro and banded kokopu.	
Unnamed tributary of Otago Harbour a.k.a. Deborah Bay Stream at I44:252876	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat</i> for koaro and banded kokopu.	

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

Coastal subregion				
<i>Water body</i>	<i>Ecosystem Values</i>	<i>Outstanding natural feature or landscape</i>	<i>Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna</i>	<i>Areas with a high degree of naturalness</i>
Unnamed tributary of Latham Bay a.k.a. Latham Bay Stream at I44:280824	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for banded kokopu.</i>	
Unnamed tributary of Otago Harbour a.k.a. Macandrew Bay Stream at I44:233793	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for banded kokopu.</i>	
Unnamed tributary of Otago Harbour a.k.a. Otakou Stream at J44:318869	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for banded kokopu.</i>	
Unnamed tributary of Papanui Inlet at J44:332820	Weedfree, Hspawn, Invrare			
Unnamed tributary of the Pacific Ocean at J44:345808 (Papanui Beach)	Weedfree, Hspawn, Invrare			
Robertsons Creek	Weedfree, Hspawn, Invrare			
Unnamed pond, Jones Creek at I44:115734	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for banded kokopu.</i>	
Unnamed tributary of the Pacific Ocean at I44:241763 (Boulder Beach)	Weedfree, Hspawn, Fishdiv			
Tomahawk Lagoon	Psilt, Weedfree, Hriparian, Trout, Eel, Invrare			
Otokia Creek	Weedfree, Ppass, Hspawn, Hjuve, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for banded kokopu.</i>	
Fern Stream	Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Fishdiv, Rarefish, Birddiv		<i>Significant habitat for banded kokopu.</i>	

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

Coastal subregion				
<i>Water body</i>	<i>Ecosystem Values</i>	<i>Outstanding natural feature or landscape</i>	<i>Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna</i>	<i>Areas with a high degree of naturalness</i>
Flax Stream	Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Exoticfree, Fishdiv, Rarefish, Birddiv		<i>Significant habitat</i> for banded kokopu.	
Unnamed tributary of the Taieri River a.k.a. Takitakitoa Stream	Ppass, Psilt, Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Birddiv, Eel, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat</i> for giant kokopu and banded kokopu.	
Taieri River between Henley and the sea	Psize, Ppass, Psilt, Psand, Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Rarefish, Fishdiv, Trout, Salmon, Eel, Gbird	Lower Taieri Gorge	<i>Significant habitat</i> for giant kokopu and banded kokopu.	
Akatore Creek	Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Weedfree, Eel, Trout, Fishdiv, Rarefish. Exoticfree upstream of H45:878565		<i>Significant habitat</i> for koaro and banded kokopu.	
Bull Creek	Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Weedfree, Fishdiv, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat</i> for koaro.	
Big Creek	Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Weedfree, Fishdiv, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat</i> for koaro.	
Lower Tokomairiro River main stem	Psand, Psilt, Pgravel Pplant, Psize, Ppass, Hspawn(t), Hriparian, Hjuve(t), Eel, Trout, Fishdiv			
Wangaloa Creek	Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Exoticfree, Birddiv			
Unnamed tributary of the Pacific Ocean a.k.a. Turnbolls Creek at H46:787366	Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Exoticfree, Rarefish, Birddiv		<i>Significant habitat</i> for banded kokopu.	

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

Taieri/Clutha Plains subregion				
<i>Water body</i>	<i>Ecosystem Values</i>	<i>Outstanding natural feature or landscape</i>	<i>Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna</i>	<i>Areas with a high degree of naturalness</i>
Taieri River between Outram and Henley	Psize, Psilt, Ppass, Pgravel, Psand, Weedfree, Hjuve, Trout, Salmon, Eel, Birddiv, Fishdiv, Rarefish, Gbird			
Lakes Waipori/Waihola	Psize, Ppass, Psilt, Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Eel, Trout, Fishdiv, Birddiv, Birdrare, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat:</i> Presence of variety of waterfowl and native fish, including a breeding population of fernbird and giant kokopu.	
Mary Hill Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish, Fishdiv		<i>Significant habitat</i> for giant kokopu.	
Lee Creek	Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Eel. Hriparian and Invrare above H44:898800			
Contour Channel and other West Taieri hill streams	Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Eel. Hriparian in upper stretches			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl
Mill Creek	Weedfree, Eel, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat</i> for koaro.	
Meggat Burn	Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Weedfree, Eel, Rarefish. Invrare upstream of H45:743693		<i>Significant habitat</i> for banded kokopu.	
Waipori River	Ppass in lower stretches. Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Weedfree, Fishdiv, Eel, Rarefish, Trout		<i>Significant habitat</i> for koaro upstream of dam.	A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl and within Scenic Reserve.
Shepherd Stream	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat</i> for Lower Taieri galaxiid.	
Tributaries of Waipori River	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat</i> for dusky galaxiid and koaro. Munro's Dam Stream type locality for dusky galaxiid.	
Lake Mahinerangi	Weedfree, Hriparian, Trout, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat</i> for koaro.	
Unnamed tributaries of Lake Mahinerangi at H44:709803, H44:714801, and H44:724797	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat</i> for koaro.	

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

Taieri/Clutha Plains subregion				
<i>Water body</i>	<i>Ecosystem Values</i>	<i>Outstanding natural feature or landscape</i>	<i>Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna</i>	<i>Areas with a high degree of naturalness</i>
Lammerlaw Stream	Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for koaro.</i>	
North West Stream	Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for koaro.</i>	
Nardoo Stream	Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for koaro.</i>	
Unnamed tributary of Lake Mahinerangi at H44:705754	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for Lower Taieri galaxiid.</i>	
Unnamed tributary of Lake Mahinerangi at H44:720766	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for Lower Taieri galaxiid.</i>	
Unnamed tributary of Pioneer Stream at H44:703752	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for Lower Taieri galaxiid.</i>	
Boundary Creek	Hriparian, Hspawn, Hjuve			
Unnamed tributaries of Lake Mahinerangi at H44:775772, H44:778770, and H44:775770	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for Lower Taieri galaxiid.</i>	
Verter Burn	Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for koaro.</i>	
Post Office Creek	Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Weedfree, Rarefish, Fishdiv		<i>Significant habitat for Lower Taieri galaxiid.</i>	
Silver Stream	Pgravel, Weedfree, Trout, Eel. Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Invdiv (midreaches), Hriparian in upper catchment. Invrare upstream of I44:144849. Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for koaro upstream of I44:114899 and including several tributaries. Significant habitat for lamprey (uncommon in Otago).</i>	A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl and within Scenic Reserve and water reserve.
Whare Creek	Weedfree, Eel, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for Lower Taieri galaxiid.</i>	
Upper Tokomairiro River main stem (including East and West Branches)	Psize, Ppass, Pgravel, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Trout, Eel, Rarefish. Hriparian in upper catchment		<i>Significant habitat for fernbird. Significant habitat for Lower Taieri galaxiid in tributaries. Significant habitat for lamprey (in East and West Branches).</i>	

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

Taieri/Clutha Plains subregion				
<i>Water body</i>	<i>Ecosystem Values</i>	<i>Outstanding natural feature or landscape</i>	<i>Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna</i>	<i>Areas with a high degree of naturalness</i>
Unnamed tributary of Fishers Stream at H45:706645	Weedfree, Rarefish		Significant habitat for Lower Taieri galaxiid.	
Unnamed tributary of the Tokomairiro River West Branch at H45:693655	Weedfree, Rarefish		Significant habitat for Lower Taieri galaxiid.	
Unnamed tributary of the Tokomairiro River West Branch a.k.a. Nuggety Gully	Weedfree, Rarefish		Significant habitat for roundhead galaxiid.	
Lovells Stream	Ppass, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Trout, Eel			
Lake Tuakitoto	Ppass, Psilt, Psand, Pplant, Psize, Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Trout, Eel, Birddiv, Birdrare, Rarefish, Fishdiv		Significant habitat for giant kokopu. Also a breeding population of fernbird.	
Lake Kaitangata (and Lake Kaitangata/Lake Tuakitoto Drainage)	Weedfree, Eel, Rarefish, Fishdiv		Significant habitat for giant kokopu.	
Saddle Stream	Weedfree, Eel, Rarefish, Fishdiv		Significant habitat for giant kokopu.	
McCrosties Drain	Weedfree, Eel, Rarefish, Fishdiv		Significant habitat for giant kokopu.	
Clutha River /Mata-Au between Balclutha and the sea	Psize, Ppass, Psand, Pgravel, Hspawn(s), Hjuve(t&s), Trout, Eel, Salmon, Fishdiv, Rarefish, Gbird			
Puerua River	Ppass, Psilt, Weedfree, Rarefish, Fishdiv, Hriparian, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Eel		Significant habitat for giant kokopu (Puerua River deviation)	
Glenomaru Stream	Weedfree, Hriparian, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t). Invdiv in mid reaches			

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

Southwest Otago subregion				
<i>Water body</i>	<i>Ecosystem Values</i>	<i>Outstanding natural feature or landscape</i>	<i>Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna</i>	<i>Areas with a high degree of naturalness</i>
Pomahaka River	Psize, Ppass, Pgravel, Psand, Prock, Weedfree, Hspawn(t&s), Hjuve(t&s), Hriparian, Rtrout, Eel, Fishdiv, Invdiv. Invrare between G45416466 and confluence with Clutha River/Mata-Au, Gbird			
Timber Creek	Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn(t&s), Hjuve(t&s), Trout. Invrare upstream of G43:173032			
Unnamed tributary of Flodden Creek a.k.a. Whisky Gully	Weedfree. Invrare upstream of G45:216674			
Rankle Burn	Weedfree. Invrare upstream of G45:274640			
Back Stream West Branch	Weedfree, Invdiv			
Bullock Creek	Weedfree. Invrare upstream of G43:170093			
Waiwera River	Pgravel, Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn(t&s), Hriparian, Hjuve(t&s), Trout, Eel, Rarefish, Invdiv		<i>Significant habitat for roundhead galaxiid.</i>	
Kaihiku Stream	Pgravel, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Eel, Trout, Invdiv (mid reaches)			
Clutha River /Mata-Au between Island Block and Balclutha	Psize, Ppass, Psand, Pgravel, Hspawn(t&s), Hjuve, Eel, Trout, Salmon, Sigveg, Birddiv, Rarefish, Fishdiv, Gbird between Balclutha and Tuapeka River mouth	Beaumont and Rongahere Gorge.	<i>Significant habitat:</i> Remnant indigenous ecosystem at Birch Island. <i>Significant vegetation:</i> Rare association of aquatic plants above confluence with Tuapeka.	

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

Southwest Otago subregion				
<i>Water body</i>	<i>Ecosystem Values</i>	<i>Outstanding natural feature or landscape</i>	<i>Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna</i>	<i>Areas with a high degree of naturalness</i>
Unnamed tributary of the Clutha River/Mata-Au a.k.a. Raes Junction Stream	Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for koaro.</i>	
Canadian Creek	Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for koaro. Significant habitat for lamprey (uncommon in Otago).</i>	
Unnamed tributary of the Tuapeka River a.k.a. Konini Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for roundhead galaxiid.</i>	
Waitahuna River	Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn(t&s), Hjuve(t&s), Rarefish, Eel, Trout. Invrare upstream of H44:653760		<i>Significant habitat for Waitahuna dusky galaxiid (in headwaters and upper tributaries), and flathead galaxiid.</i>	
Tuapeka River	Pgravel, Psize, Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn(t&s), Hjuve(t&s), Eel, Trout. In divid in upper reaches			
Unnamed tributaries of the Tuapeka River upstream of G45:472668	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for flathead galaxiid and dusky galaxiid.</i>	
Wetherston Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for roundhead galaxiid.</i>	
Corkscrew Road Stream	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for roundhead galaxiid.</i>	
Blackcleugh Burn	Weedfree. Invrare upstream of G45:340676			
Kuriwao Stream	Ppass, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Trout, Eel			

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

Southwest Otago subregion				
<i>Water body</i>	<i>Ecosystem Values</i>	<i>Outstanding natural feature or landscape</i>	<i>Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna</i>	<i>Areas with a high degree of naturalness</i>
Mokoreta River (upper stretches, within Otago region)	Ppass, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Trout, Eel			
Waipahi River (lower stretches, within Otago region)	Pplant, Pgravel, Psize, Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn(t&s), Hjuve(t&s), Rtrout, Eel			

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

Catlins subregion				
<i>Water body</i>	<i>Ecosystem Values</i>	<i>Outstanding natural feature or landscape</i>	<i>Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna</i>	<i>Areas with a high degree of naturalness</i>
Catchments between Fleming River and Longbeach Creek (excl Tautuku River)	Weedfree, Ppass, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Fishdiv, Birddiv			A high degree of naturalness within bushed catchments.
Tautuku River	Psize, Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Fishdiv, Birddiv, Eel	Scenic values with silver beech margins, from its mouth to its source.		A high degree of naturalness within bushed catchments.
Tautuku Bay Stream	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for banded kokopu.</i>	
Tahakopa River	Pgravel, Psize, Weedfree, Rarefish, Ppass, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Trout, Eel, Fishdiv, Birddiv		<i>Significant habitat for flathead galaxiid. Significant habitat for lamprey (uncommon in Otago).</i>	A high degree of naturalness within bushed catchments.
Jumbo Creek	Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for koaro and banded kokopu.</i>	
Gorge Creek	Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for flathead galaxiid.</i>	
Unnamed tributary of the Tahakopa River at G47:268063	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for flathead galaxiid.</i>	
Maclennan River	Psize, Weedfree, Ppass, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Trout, Eel, Fishdiv, Birddiv, Rarefish	Scenic values with silver beech margins, from confluence with Tahakopa River to its source.	<i>Significant habitat for koaro. Significant habitat for lamprey (uncommon in Otago).</i>	A high degree of naturalness within bushed catchments.
Waitangi Stream	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for koaro.</i>	
Matai Stream	Weedfree, Rarefish, Fishdiv		<i>Significant habitat for roundhead galaxiid and banded kokopu.</i>	
Catlins River	Psize, Pgravel, Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Trout, Eel, Rarefish, Fishdiv, Invdiv	Scenic values with silver beech margins, from its mouth to its source.	<i>Significant habitat for giant kokopu, banded kokopu and roundhead galaxiid. Significant habitat for lamprey (uncommon in Otago).</i>	A high degree of naturalness within bushed catchments.
Purakaunui River	Pboulder, Ppass (below Falls), Weedfree, Eel	Purakaunui Falls.		A high degree of naturalness within bush, apart from viewing structures.

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

Catlins subregion				
<i>Water body</i>	<i>Ecosystem Values</i>	<i>Outstanding natural feature or landscape</i>	<i>Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna</i>	<i>Areas with a high degree of naturalness</i>
Frank Stream	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for roundhead galaxiid.</i>	
Wallis Stream	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for roundhead galaxiid.</i>	
Craggy Tor Stream	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for roundhead galaxiid.</i>	
Daphne Brook	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for flathead galaxiid.</i>	
Tarwood Stream	Weedfree		<i>Significant habitat for roundhead galaxiid.</i>	
Papatupu Stream	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for roundhead galaxiid.</i>	
Unnamed tributary of the Catlins River at G46:274228	Weedfree, Rarefish		<i>Significant habitat for roundhead galaxiid.</i>	
McLaren Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish, Fishdiv		<i>Significant habitat for giant kokopu, koaro, roundhead galaxiid and banded kokopu.</i>	
Owaka River	Psize, Pgravel, Ppass, Weedfree, Hriparian, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Fishdiv, Trout, Eel. In divid in upper reaches			A high degree of naturalness within bushed catchments.
Unnamed tributary of the Owaka River at H46:504119	Weedfree, Rarefish, Fishdiv		<i>Significant habitat for giant kokopu.</i>	
Waipati (Chaslands) River	Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Trout, Eel			

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

Sources for information contained in Schedule 1A

The outstanding natural features and landscapes, areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna identified in this schedule are derived from the following publications:

Allibone, R.M. (1997) Freshwater Fish of the Otago Region. Department of Conservation. Otago Conservancy Miscellaneous Report Series No. 36. (includes NIWA Freshwater Fish database for Otago rivers).

Biggs, BJ and Shand, BI (1985) Biological Communities and the Potential Effects of Power Developments in the Lower Clutha River - Otago. Report no. WS987, Ministry of Works and Development.

Clayton, J. (1993) Resource Evaluation and Operational Programme For Lakeweed: The Upper Clutha and Kawarau Catchment Areas. Prepared by NIWA Ecosystems for the Otago Regional Council.

Department of Conservation: Special Sites of Wildlife Interest.

Grindell, D.S. and P.A. Guest (eds) (1986) A list of Rivers and Lakes Deserving Inclusion in a Schedule of Protected Waters. Water and Soil Miscellaneous Publication, No. 97. National Water and Soil Conservation Authority, Wellington.

Grindell, D.S. (1984) A National Inventory of Wild and Scenic Rivers. Water and Soil Miscellaneous Publication, No. 68. National Water and Soil Conservation Authority, Wellington.

Kenny, J.A. and B.W. Hayward (eds) (1993) Inventory of Important Geological Sites and Landforms in the Otago region. Geological Society of New Zealand Miscellaneous Publication No. 77. Geological Society of New Zealand, Lower Hutt.

Lake Wanaka Preservation Act 1973.

Local Water Conservation (Lake Tuakitoto) Notice 1991.

Ministry for the Environment (1997) Water Conservation (Kawarau) Order 1997.

Water and Soil Conservation Authority (1982) A Draft for a National Inventory of Wild and Scenic Rivers. Part 1 - Nationally Important Rivers. Water and

SCHEDULE 1A: NATURAL VALUES

Soil Miscellaneous Publication, No. 97. National Water and Soil Conservation Authority, Wellington.

SCHEDULE 1AA: OTAGO RESIDENT NATIVE
FRESHWATER FISH THREAT STATUS

1AA Schedule of Otago Resident Native Freshwater Fish - Threat Status

Common name	Scientific name	Threat Status
Lowland longjaw galaxias	<i>Galaxias cobitinis</i>	Nationally Critical*
Canterbury mudfish (Kōwaro)	<i>Neochanna burrowsius</i>	Nationally Critical
Teviot flathead galaxias	<i>Galaxias</i> 'Teviot'	Nationally Critical*
Dusky galaxias	<i>Galaxias pullus</i>	Nationally Endangered*
Alpine galaxias	<i>Galaxias</i> aff. <i>paucispondylus</i> 'Manuherikia'	Nationally Endangered*
Eldon's galaxias	<i>Galaxias eldoni</i>	Nationally Endangered*
Central Otago roundhead galaxias	<i>Galaxias anomalus</i>	Nationally Vulnerable*
Clutha flathead galaxias	<i>Galaxias</i> sp. D.	Nationally Vulnerable*
Smeagol galaxias	<i>Galaxias</i> aff. <i>gollumoides</i> 'Nevis'	Nationally Vulnerable*
Longfin eel (<i>tuna</i>)	<i>Anguilla dieffenbachii</i>	Declining
Giant kokopu (Taiwharu)	<i>Galaxias argenteus</i>	Declining
<i>Galaxias gollumoides</i>	<i>Galaxias gollumoides</i>	Declining
Lamprey (kanakana)	<i>Geotria australis</i>	Declining
Torrentfish (<i>Piripiripōhatu</i>)	<i>Cheimarrichthys fosteri</i>	Declining
Koaro	<i>Galaxias brevipinnis</i>	Declining
Inanga (inaka)	<i>Galaxias maculatus</i>	Declining
Bluegill bully	<i>Gobiomorphus hubbsi</i>	Declining
Redfin bully	<i>Gobiomorphus huttoni</i>	Declining

*NB: Fish marked with an * are only found in the Otago Region.

SCHEDULE 1B: WATER SUPPLY VALUES

1B Schedule of water supply values

This schedule identifies existing water takes from lakes and rivers, where the water taken is used for public water supply purposes. The communities identified in the schedule have come to rely upon these water supplies to provide for their social, economic and cultural well being. Rule 12.1.3.1 provides for replacement consents for these takes as a controlled activity, to provide certainty for these communities. The water takes are identified by geographic subregion and by individual water bodies within each subregion (see Maps A1–A8 for subregions and site locations).

Water is also taken for private water supply throughout Otago, particularly for domestic supply to dwellings such as farm homesteads and associated buildings, usually without treatment. It is also consumed without treatment by musterers, anglers, trampers, cyclists, hunters and other backcountry users. Areas with a high degree of naturalness, identified in Schedule 1A, will often contain water bodies with relatively pristine water quality. Those that utilise the water without treating it take the risk that it may contain giardia or other pathogenic (disease causing) organisms.

North Otago subregion

Water body or Catchment	Site No.	Water Supply Values
Kakanui River (note, the shallow aquifer forms an integral part of the water body)	1	Windsor and Dunrobin Water Supplies at J41:325737
	2	Weston and Enfield Water Supplies at J41:381667
	3	Reidston Water Supply at J42:405595
	4	Kakanui Water Supply at J42:430581
Kauru River	5	Kauru Hill Water Supply at J41:314637
Kurinui Creek a.k.a. Big Kuri Creek	6	Hampden-Moeraki Water Supply at J42:364413
Shag River (Waihemo) (note, the shallow aquifer forms an integral part of the water body)	7	Dunback Water Supply at I43:274279
	8	Palmerston (including Blue Mountain) Water Supply at J43:317237
	9	Goodwood Water Supply at J43:343234
Waianakarua River	10	Herbert-Waianakarua Water Supply at J42:339507

Maniototo subregion

Water body or Catchment	Site No.	Water Supply Values
Sow Burn	11	Patearoa Water Supply at H42:786435
Ewe Burn	12	Ranfurly Water Supply at H41:800689, H41:836770 and H41:794684

Central Otago subregion

Water body or Catchment	Site No.	Water Supply Values
Clutha River/Mata-Au <i>between Alexandra and Lake</i>	13	Clyde Water Supply at G42:199521
	14	Cromwell Water Supply at G41:120670

SCHEDULE 1B: WATER SUPPLY VALUES

Water body or Catchment	Site No.	Water Supply Values
<i>Wanaka (including Lake Dunstan)</i>		
Manuherikia River catchment	15	St Bathans Water Supply at H40:592926 and H40:602938
	16	Omakau and Ophir Water Supplies at G41:427626

Lakes subregion

Water body or Catchment	Site No.	Water Supply Values
Lake Wakatipu	17	Queenstown Water Supply from E41:666653 and F41:719664
Lake Hayes Tributary	18	Lake Hayes Water Supply at F41:794738
Lake Wanaka	19	Wanaka Water Supply at F40:033062 and F40:013057
Lake Hawea	20	Hawea Water Supply at G40:123153

Roxburgh subregion

Water body or Catchment	Site No.	Water Supply Values
Clutha River/Mata-Au <i>between Alexandra and Island Block</i>	21	Roxburgh Hydro Village Water Supply at G43:225194
Benger Burn	22	Ettrick Water Supply at G43:198030

Waikouaiti/Lammermoor subregion

Water body or Catchment	Site No.	Water Supply Values
Deep Stream	23	Dunedin Water Supply at H44:677992
Deep Creek	24	Dunedin Water Supply at H43:665037
Fortification Creek Dam	25	Hindon Water Supply at I44:906923
Waikouaiti River	26	Waikouaiti Water Supply at I43:232079
Waikouaiti River	27	Mt Pleasant-Stoneburn Water Supply at I43:155263

Coastal subregion

Water body or Catchment	Site No.	Water Supply Values
Water of Leith	28	Dunedin Water Supply at I44:152820 (Ross Creek)
	29	I44:153833 (Nicols Creek);
	30	I44:160843 (Lower Morrisons Creek)
	31	I44:153849 (Upper Morrisons Creek); and
	32	I44:164857 (West Branch)
Sullivans Dam	33	Dunedin Water Supply at I44:172863
Rossville Reservoir	34	Port Chalmers Water Supply at I44:233865 (Rossville intake); and
	35	I44:227879 (Cedar Farm intake)

SCHEDULE 1B: WATER SUPPLY VALUES

Waitati River	36	Dunedin Water Supply at I44:158883 (Burns Creek); I44:160873 (Jeffersons Creek); and I44:159870 (Williams Creek)
	37	
	38	
Wetherstons Creek	39	Waitati Water Supply at I44:201882

Taieri/Clutha Plains subregion

Water body or Catchment	Site No.	Water Supply Values
Taieri River <i>between Outram and Henley</i>	40	Outram Water Supply at I44:955804
Mill Creek	41	West Taieri Water Supply at H44:833730
Meggat Burn	42	North Bruce Water Supply at H45:743693
Silver Stream catchment	43	Dunedin Water Supply at I44:096859; I44:105844; I44:105848; and I44:105850
	44	
	45	
	46	
Tokomairiro River East Branch	47	Milton Water Supply at H45:746529
Clutha River/Mata-Au <i>between Balclutha and the sea</i>	48	Bruce Water Supply at H46:619343 Kaitangata and Wangaloa Water Supplies at H46:667308
	49	
Puerua River	50	Richardson Water Supply at H46:510257

Southwest Otago subregion

Water body or Catchment	Site No.	Water Supply Values
Pomahaka River	51	Glenkenich Water Supply at G44:103754 <i>[Repealed – 1 June 2015]</i>
	52	
Waipahi River	63	Waipahi Rural Stock Water Supply at G45:196488
Timber Creek	53	Moa Flat Water Supply at G43:172033
Greens Creek	54	Rural Water Supply at G44:104752
Unnamed tributary of Flodden Creek a.k.a. Whisky Gully	55	Tapanui Water Supply at G45:223660
Back Stream West Branch	56	<i>[Repealed – 1 June 2015]</i>
Clutha River/Mata-Au <i>between Island Block and Balclutha</i>	57	Richardson Water Supply at G45:491435 Balclutha Water Supply at H46:580363
	58	
Waitahuna River	59	Balmoral 1 and 2 and Tuapeka East Water Supplies at H45:523564
Bungtown Creek	60	Lawrence Water Supply at H44:573773
Tuapeka River	61	Tuapeka Water Supply at G44:491742
Bluejacket Gully	62	Lawrence Water Supply at H44:543747

SCHEDULE 1C: REGISTERED HISTORIC PLACES

1C Schedule of registered historic places

This schedule identifies registered historic places which occur in, on, under or over the beds or margins of Otago's lakes and rivers. Historic places are an important cultural resource as they provide links with Otago's history and heritage.

There are other sites, buildings, places and areas of heritage value on the beds or margins of Otago rivers or lakes that are not identified in this schedule. The New Zealand Historic Places Trust retains information about important but unregistered historic values.

The registered historic places are identified by geographic subregion and by individual water bodies within each subregion (see Maps A1–A8 for subregions).

North Otago subregion

Water body	Registered Historic Places
Oamaru Creek	Japanese Red Bridge, Oamaru Public Gardens Thames Street Bridge, Thames Street, Oamaru
Kakanui River	Clarks Flourmill, including dam, gate and race, SH 1, Maheno
McCormicks Creek	McCormick's Creek Bridge, SH 85, Dunback
Waianakarua River North Branch	Graves Dam, Breakneck Road, Waianakarua Turnbull Thompson Bridge, SH 1, Waianakarua
Waianakarua River South Branch	Waianakarua Bridge, SH 1, Waianakarua

Maniototo subregion

Water body	Registered Historic Place
Hog Burn	Naseby Historic Area, Naseby – various culverts and crossings in or over the river

Central Otago subregion

Water body	Registered Historic Places
Clutha River/Mata-Au <i>between Alexandra and Lake Wanaka</i>	Bridge Piers, SH8, Alexandra Earnsclough Bridge and Piers, Clyde
Manuherikia River	Shakey Bridge, Alexandra Daniel O'Connell Bridge, Ophir Bridge Road–, Ophir
Lake Dunstan	Old Bannockburn Bridge Foundations (submerged). Cromwell Bridge, Cromwell

SCHEDULE 1C: REGISTERED HISTORIC PLACES

Lakes subregion

Water body	Registered Historic Places
Kawarau River	Kawarau Falls bridge and dam, Frankton, Queenstown Kawarau Gorge Suspension Bridge, SH 6, Gibbston
Luggate Creek	Luggate Flourmill, Luggate
Horne Creek	Horne Creek Bridge, Ballarat Street, Queenstown
Shotover River	Oxenbridge Tunnel, Arthurs Point, Queenstown Edith Cavell Bridge, Arthurs Point, Queenstown
Mill Creek	Wakatipu Flourmill Complex, Speargrass Flat Road. Butel's Flourmill, Millbrook
Murdochs Creek	Bullendale Battery and Dynamo, Skippers catchment
Stony Creek	"Murphy's Creek" suspended pipe over Stony Creek, Skippers catchment

Roxburgh subregion

Water body	Registered Historic Places
Clutha River/Mata-Au <i>between Alexandra and Island Block</i>	Four Span Steel Truss Bridge, Millers Flat Old bridge piers at Roxburgh, adjacent to current bridge

Strath Taieri subregion

Water body	Registered Historic Place
Taieri River <i>between Tiroiti and Pukerangi</i>	Hyde Bridge, SH 87, Hyde

Coastal subregion

Water body	Registered Historic Places
Water of Leith	George Street Bridge, George Street, Dunedin Cast Iron Footbridge, University of Otago, Dunedin Stone Bridge, University of Otago, Dunedin
Ross Creek	Earth Dam, Burma Road, Dunedin Valve Tower and Jetty, Burma Road, Dunedin

Taieri/Clutha Plains subregion

Water body	Registered Historic Places
Clutha River Mata-Au <i>between Balclutha and the sea</i>	Blair Railway Bridge, SH 91, Balclutha Balclutha Bridge, SH 1, Balclutha
Pioneer Stream and Reef Creek	Otago Pioneer Quartz Historic Reserve containing many relics of former mining activity

1D Schedule of spiritual and cultural beliefs, values and uses of significance to Kai Tahu

This schedule identifies the spiritual or cultural beliefs, values or uses associated with water bodies of significance to Kai Tahu. The values are identified by geographic subregion and by individual water bodies, or groups of water bodies, within each subregion (see Maps A1–A8 for subregions). Note that the codes for these values are given in Table 4. Kai Tahu provided the information that appears in this schedule.

Where an activity will require a resource consent, Policy 5.4.2 will apply. This means that where an activity is to occur with respect to any water body for which this schedule identifies a particular spiritual or cultural belief, value or use, it may be necessary for the applicant to consult with Kai Tahu in a manner which is consistent with that set out in the document “Kai Tahu Ki Otago - Natural Resource Management Plan”.

Table 4: Code for Kai Tahu beliefs, values and uses ascribed to water bodies

Code	Mana Interests:
MA1	Kaitiakitanga – the exercise of guardianship by Kai Tahu in accordance with tikanga Maori* in relation to Otago’s natural and physical resources; and includes the ethic of stewardship.
MA2	Mauri – life force; for example the mauri of a river is most recognisable when there is abundance of water flow and the associated ecosystems are healthy and plentiful; a most important element in the relationship that Kai Tahu have with the water bodies of Otago.
MA3	Waahi tapu and/or Waiwhakaheke – sacred places; sites, areas and values associated with water bodies that hold spiritual values of importance to Kai Tahu. (Note: Kai Tahu should be consulted regarding the location of these places, sites areas and values for a river identified as MA3).
MA4	Waahi taoka – treasured resource; values, sites and resources that are valued and reinforce the special relationship Kai Tahu have with Otago’s water resources.

Code	Access/Customary Use Interests:
MB1	Mahika kai – places where food is procured or produced. Examples in the case of waterborne mahika kai include eels, whitebait, kanakana (lamprey), kokopu (galaxiid species), koura (fresh water crayfish), fresh water mussels, indigenous waterfowl, watercress and raupo.
MB2	Kohanga – important nursery/spawning areas for native fisheries and/or breeding grounds for birds.
MB3	Trails – sites and water bodies which formed part of traditional routes, including tauraka waka (landing place for canoes).
MB4	Cultural materials – water bodies that are sources of traditional weaving materials (such as raupo and paru) and rongoa (medicines).
MB5	Waipuna – sources of water highly regarded for their purity, healing and health-giving powers.

* the correct way of doing things, according to custom.

SCHEDULE 1 D: KAI TAHU VALUES

North Otago subregion									
Water body	MA1	MA2	MA3	MA4	MB1	MB2	MB3	MB4	MB5
Awamoko Stream			✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	
Landon Creek				✓					
Awamoa Creek				✓				✓	
Waiareka Creek				✓	✓		✓	✓	
Kakanui River	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Oamaru Creek				✓	✓			✓	
Kakaho Creek				✓				✓	
Kurinui Creek a.k.a. Big Kuri Creek				✓			✓	✓	
Ngutukaka Creek				✓					
Waiherowhero Creek				✓					
Waimataitai				✓	✓			✓	
Creeks between Waimataitai & Shag Point/Matakaea				✓					
Stony Creek				✓	✓	✓			
Bobbys Head Creek			✓	✓					
Most creeks between Bobbys Head & Pleasant River				✓					
Shag River (Waihemo)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Waianakarua River	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Pleasant River			✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Trotters Creek	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

Maniototo subregion									
Water body	MA1	MA2	MA3	MA4	MB1	MB2	MB3	MB4	MB5
Taieri River, upstream of Tiroiti	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Streams on the west- facing slopes of the Rock and Pillar Range, excluding Logan Burn				✓	✓				
Kye Burn	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	

Central Otago subregion									
Water body	MA1	MA2	MA3	MA4	MB1	MB2	MB3	MB4	MB5
Clutha River/Mata-Au <i>between Alexandra and Lake Wanaka</i>	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Manuherikia River	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Moa Creek				✓					
Other Manuherikia tributaries	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Little Bremner Creek				✓					
Earnsleugh or Fraser River				✓					
Bannock Burn				✓					
Lindis River				✓			✓	✓	
Cardrona River	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	

SCHEDULE 1D: KAI TAHU VALUES

Lakes subregion									
Water body	MA1	MA2	MA3	MA4	MB1	MB2	MB3	MB4	MB5
Kawarau River <i>between Lakes Dunstan and Wakatipu</i>	✓	✓		✓			✓	✓	
Lake Hayes				✓	✓				
Lake Wakatipu	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Diamond Lake, Diamond Creek and Lake Reid				✓					
Dart River/Te Awa Whakatipu	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Route Burn	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Greenstone River, Caples River	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Lochy River				✓					
Streams flowing to Lake Wakatipu between Halfway Bay and Elfin Bay, including Von River				✓					
Lake Wanaka	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Matukituki River	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Streams flowing off West Wanaka, including Albert Burn				✓	✓				
Makarora River	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Lake Hawea	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Hunter River	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Dingle Burn				✓					
Timaru River				✓					
Hawea River	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Shotover River	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Arrow River	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Roaring Meg	✓	✓	✓	✓			✓		
Nevis River	✓	✓	✓	✓			✓		

Roxburgh subregion									
Water body	MA1	MA2	MA3	MA4	MB1	MB2	MB3	MB4	MB5
Clutha River/Mata-Au <i>between Alexandra and Island Block</i>	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Teviot River					✓				
Lake Onslow				✓	✓				
Minzion Burn				✓					

Strath Taieri subregion									
Water body	MA1	MA2	MA3	MA4	MB1	MB2	MB3	MB4	MB5
Great Moss Swamp				✓	✓				
Red Swamp Creek				✓					
Taieri River <i>between Tiroiti and Pukerangi</i>	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Nenthorn Stream	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Deighton Creek				✓					

SCHEDULE 1 D: KAI TAHU VALUES

Streams flowing on west side of Taieri Ridge				✓					
Lug Creek, Wandle Creek and other streams flowing on the east side of the Rock and Pillar Range				✓					

Waikouaiti/Lammermoor subregion									
Water body	MA1	MA2	MA3	MA4	MB1	MB2	MB3	MB4	MB5
Taieri River <i>between Pukerangi and Outram</i>	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	
Three O'clock Stream				✓					
Lee Stream	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Ross Stream				✓					
Deep Stream (and Deep Creek)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	
Waikouaiti River (excluding South Branch)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Waikouaiti River South Branch	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Lower Waikouaiti River (estuary and tidal zone)			✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Hawksbury Lagoon			✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	
Streams between Karitane & Yellow Bluff (Te Pa Hawea)				✓					

Coastal subregion									
Water body	MA1	MA2	MA3	MA4	MB1	MB2	MB3	MB4	MB5
Streams between Summer Hill and Brighton, excluding Taieri and Tokomairi River main stems			✓	✓					
Akatore River			✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Lower Tokomairi River main stem	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Taieri River <i>between Henley and the sea</i>	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Unnamed tributary of the Taieri River a.k.a. Takitakitōa Stream	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓		✓	
Otokia Creek	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Deep Creek (Omimi)				✓			✓		
Evansdale Creek				✓					
Kaikorai Stream	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Otago Peninsula streams	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓
Water of Leith			✓	✓					
Waitati River				✓					

SCHEDULE 1D: KAI TAHU VALUES

Taieri/Clutha Plains subregion									
Water body	MA1	MA2	MA3	MA4	MB1	MB2	MB3	MB4	MB5
Taieri River <i>between Outram and Henley</i>	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Lakes Waipori and Waihola, Sinclair Wetlands	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Contour Channel and other West Taieri hill streams					✓				
Waipori River				✓	✓				
Silver Stream	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
Owhiro Stream	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Upper Tokomairiro River main stem					✓				
Lovells Stream					✓				
Lake Tuakitoto	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Clutha River/Mata-Au <i>between Balclutha and the sea</i>	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Waitepeka River, Puerua River including Glenomaru Stream tributary				✓	✓	✓	✓		

Southwest Otago subregion									
Water body	MA1	MA2	MA3	MA4	MB1	MB2	MB3	MB4	MB5
Pomahaka River	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Waiwera River					✓				
Clutha River/Mata-Au <i>between Island Block and Balclutha</i>	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Waitahuna River					✓				
Waipahi River (lower stretches within Otago region)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	

Catlins subregion									
Water body	MA1	MA2	MA3	MA4	MB1	MB2	MB3	MB4	MB5
Catchments between Fleming River and Longbeach Creek (excluding Tautuku River)			✓	✓	✓				
Tautuku River			✓	✓					
Tahakopa River	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Maclennan River	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Catlins River	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Owaka River	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Karoro Creek			✓	✓	✓				

SCHEDULE 2: SPECIFIED RESTRICTIONS ON THE
EXERCISE OF PERMITS TO TAKE WATER

2. Schedule of specified restrictions on the exercise of permits to take surface water

This schedule provides specified minimum flows applying to the taking of surface water within primary and supplementary allocation from catchments identified in the B-series maps, and Welcome Creek. The schedule should be read in conjunction with the policies contained in section 6.4.

Schedule 2A specifies minimum flows that apply to the primary allocation water taken from catchments identified in the B-series maps. The last column of Schedule 2A also specifies the primary allocation limit in accordance with Policy 6.4.2(a) for the whole catchments of the rivers and lakes. The catchment areas for the primary allocation limits set by Policy 6.4.2(a) may be larger than those specified on the B-series maps.

Schedule 2B specifies minimum flows that apply to specified blocks of supplementary allocation for some catchments. Additional supplementary allocation may be granted under Policies 6.4.9 and 6.4.10.

Schedule 2 identifies minimum flows in litres per second and the site at which flows will be monitored. When the minimum flow is reached, consents to take water from the identified catchment will cease or will be suspended by the Otago Regional Council, in accordance with Policy 6.4.11 of this Plan. The flows listed in Schedule 2, which trigger suspension, use the instantaneous flow rates.

In accordance with Policy 6.4.1A, groundwater takes from aquifers listed in Schedule 2C and identified in the C-series maps, and other connected groundwater, are considered against primary or supplementary allocation provided for by Policies 6.4.2 and 6.4.9 and where listed in Schedules 2A and 2B, and may be subject to the minimum flows identified.

Schedule 2D identifies matters to be considered when making additions to these schedules through a plan change.

SCHEDULE 2: SPECIFIED RESTRICTIONS ON THE
EXERCISE OF PERMITS TO TAKE WATER

2A Schedule of specific minimum flows for primary allocation takes in accordance with Policy 6.4.3, and primary allocation limits in accordance with Policies 6.4.2(a) and 6.4.1A

The following schedule:

1. Identifies the minimum flows that apply to the taking of surface water, which includes groundwater managed as surface water in terms of Policy 6.4.1A within primary allocation from the catchments shown in the B-series maps, Welcome Creek and aquifers shown in the C-series maps. The B-series maps identify the location of catchment area boundaries and numbered monitoring sites referred to in the schedule for setting and measuring the minimum flows.
2. Specifies the primary allocation limit in accordance with Policy 6.4.2(a). That limit is exceeded in catchments where the consented takes as at 28 February 1998 (or 19 February 2005 in the Welcome Creek catchment, or 7 July 2000 in the Waianakarua catchment) set a higher limit in accordance with Policy 6.4.2(b). The catchments in which the limit set by Policy 6.4.2(a) is exceeded by Policy 6.4.2(b) (as at 20 December 2008) are the Shag, Kakanui, Taieri, Lake Hayes, Luggate and Manuherikia.

Catchment See the B-series maps	Monitoring Site (with MS number) See the B-series maps	Minimum flow (litres per second – instantaneous flow)	Primary Allocation Limits in accord with Policy 6.4.2(a) (litres per second – instantaneous flow)
Welcome Creek catchment	Steward Road	600	600 <i>Welcome Creek catchment from confluence with Waitaki River to headwaters. (Also subject to Table 12.1.4.2)</i>
Kakanui catchment (a) 1 October to 30 April	Mill Dam (MS 3) and McCones (MS 3b)	250 (300 for secondary permits) If 250 breached, flow must return to 400 before taking can recommence.	750 <i>Kakanui catchment from mouth to headwaters excluding the Waiareka Creek and Island Stream catchments.</i>
(b) 1 May to 30 September	Clifton Falls (MS 3a) Mill Dam (MS 3) and McCones (MS 3b)	400 for primary and secondary permits	
Waianakarua catchment	Browns Pump (MS 13)	200 (1 October to 30 April) 400 (1 May to 30 September)	190 <i>Waianakarua catchment from mouth to headwaters</i>
Trotters catchment	Mathesons Weir (MS 12)	10 (1 October to 30 April) 35 (1 May to 30 September)	15 <i>Trotters catchment from mouth to headwaters</i>

SCHEDULE 2: SPECIFIED RESTRICTIONS ON THE
EXERCISE OF PERMITS TO TAKE WATER

Catchment See the B-series maps	Monitoring Site (with MS number) See the B-series maps	Minimum flow (litres per second – instantaneous flow)	Primary Allocation Limits in accord with Policy 6.4.2(a) (litres per second – instantaneous flow)
Shag catchment (both minimum flows apply)	Goodwood Pump (MS 1)	28	280 <i>Shag catchment from mouth to headwaters</i>
	Craig Road (MS 2)	150	
Water of Leith catchment	Water of Leith at University Footbridge (MS 4)	94	140 <i>Water of Leith catchment from mouth to headwaters</i>
Taieri River upstream of Paerau	Paerau Dam (MS 5a)	850	4,860 <i>Taieri River catchment from mouth to headwaters.</i>
Taieri River catchment between Paerau and Waipiata	Taieri River at Waipiata (MS 5)	1,000	
Taieri River catchment between Waipiata and Tiroiti	Taieri River at Tiroiti (MS 5b)	1,100	
Taieri River catchment between Tiroiti and Sutton	Taieri River at Sutton (MS 6)	1,250	
Taieri River catchment between Sutton and Outram	Taieri River at Outram (MS 6a)	2,500	
Luggate catchment	SH6 Bridge (MS 11)	180 (1 November to 30 April)	500 <i>Luggate catchment from confluence with Clutha/Mata-Au to headwaters</i>
		500 (1 May to 30 October)	
Lake Hayes catchment area	Mill Creek at Fish Trap (MS 7)	180	260 <i>Lake Hayes catchment from lake outlet to headwaters</i>
Manuherikia River catchment upstream of Ophir	Manuherikia River at Ophir (MS 8)	820	3,200 <i>Manuherikia catchment from confluence with Clutha/Mata-Au to headwaters</i>
Waitahuna River catchment	Waitahuna River at Tweeds Bridge (MS 9)	450	650 <i>Waitahuna catchment from confluence with Clutha/Mata-Au to headwaters</i>
Pomahaka catchment (within Otago Region)	Burkes Ford (MS 15)	3,600 (1 October to 30 April)	1,000 <i>Pomahaka catchment from confluence with Clutha/Mata-Au to headwaters</i>
		7,000 (1 May to 30 September)	

SCHEDULE 2: SPECIFIED RESTRICTIONS ON THE
EXERCISE OF PERMITS TO TAKE WATER

Catchment See the B-series maps	Monitoring Site (with MS number) See the B-series maps	Minimum flow (litres per second – instantaneous flow)	Primary Allocation Limits in accord with Policy 6.4.2(a) (litres per second – instantaneous flow)
Waiwera catchment	Maws Farm (MS 16)	280 (1 October to 30 April) If 280 breached by taking, flow must return to 310 before taking can recommence. 400 (1 May to 30 September)	150 <i>Waiwera catchment from confluence with Clutha/Mata-Au to headwaters</i>
Lake Tuakitoto catchment	Lovells Creek at SH1 (MS 10)	5	30 <i>Lake Tuakitoto catchment from confluence with Clutha/Mata-Au to headwaters</i>

SCHEDULE 2: SPECIFIED RESTRICTIONS ON THE
EXERCISE OF PERMITS TO TAKE WATER

2B Schedule of supplementary allocation blocks and specific minimum flows in accordance with Policy 6.4.9(c)

Catchment (See the B-series maps) & Supplementary Block Number	Minimum Flow (litres per second – instantaneous flow) at the monitoring site(s) (See the B-series maps)	Supplementary Allocation Block (litres per second – instantaneous flow)
Welcome Creek catchment (first supplementary allocation block)	1,000 At Steward Road (MS 14)	400 (Also subject to Table 12.1.4.2)
Kakanui catchment	For each minimum flow listed below: 1. At Mill Dam (MS 3) for takes downstream of Clifton Falls monitoring site; or 2. At both Mill Dam (MS 3) and Clifton Falls (MS 3a) for takes upstream of Clifton Falls monitoring site.	
Kakanui catchment (first supplementary allocation block)	1 October to 30 April: 1,050	1 October to 30 April: 300
	1 May to 30 September: 1,500	1 May to 30 September: 500
Kakanui catchment (subsequent supplementary allocation blocks)	All subsequent minimum flows corresponding to supplementary allocation blocks in the Kakanui catchment will be based on the following formula: 1 October to 30 April: $1,050 + (300 \times \text{number of supplementary allocation block}^*)$ 1 May to 30 September: $1,500 + (500 \times \text{number of supplementary allocation block}^*)$ * 2 for the 2 nd , 3 for the 3 rd allocation block, and so on.	All subsequent supplementary allocation blocks in the Kakanui catchment will be based on the following sizes: 1 October to 30 April: 300 1 May to 30 September: 500
Waianakarua catchment (first supplementary allocation block)	311 At Browns Pump (MS 13)	100
Trotters catchment (first supplementary allocation block)	1 October to 30 April: 30 at Mathesons Weir (MS 12)	15
	1 May to 30 September: 50 at Mathesons Weir (MS 12)	15
Trotters catchment (second supplementary allocation block)	1 October to 30 April: 60 at Mathesons Weir (MS 12)	30
	1 May to 30 September: 80 at Mathesons Weir (MS 12)	30
Trotters catchment (third supplementary allocation block)	1 October to 30 April: 90 at Mathesons Weir (MS 12)	30
	1 May to 30 September: 110 at Mathesons Weir (MS 12)	30

SCHEDULE 2: SPECIFIED RESTRICTIONS ON THE
EXERCISE OF PERMITS TO TAKE WATER

Catchment (See the B-series maps) & Supplementary Block Number	Minimum Flow (litres per second – instantaneous flow) at the monitoring site(s) (See the B-series maps)	Supplementary Allocation Block (litres per second – instantaneous flow)
Shag catchment (first supplementary allocation block)	650 At Craig Road (MS 2) 401 At Goodwood Pump (MS 1)	100
Shag catchment (second supplementary allocation block)	750 At Craig Road (MS 2) 501 At Goodwood Pump (MS 1)	100
Pomahaka catchment (within Otago Region) (first supplementary allocation block)	13,000 At Burkes Ford (MS 15)	500
Waiwera catchment (first supplementary allocation block)	600 At Maws Farm (MS 16)	100

2C Schedule of aquifers where groundwater takes are to be considered as primary allocation, and subject to minimum flows of specified catchments in accordance with Policy 6.4.1A

Aquifer Name	Map Reference	Catchment to which primary or supplementary allocation limits apply, and minimum flows may apply*
Kakanui-Kauru Alluvium Aquifer	C17 & C18	Kakanui catchment*
Shag Alluvium Aquifer	C19	Shag catchment*
Lindis Alluvial Ribbon Aquifer	C5 & C6	Lindis catchment**
Cardrona Alluvial Ribbon Aquifer	C2 & C3	Cardrona catchment upstream of the Mount Barker recorder site**
Lowburn Alluvial Ribbon Aquifer	C7	Lowburn Stream**
Pomahaka Alluvial Ribbon Aquifer	C22 & C23	Pomahaka catchment**

* as given in Schedules 2A and 2B.

** as provided for by Policies 6.4.2, 6.4.3 and 6.4.9.

SCHEDULE 2: SPECIFIED RESTRICTIONS ON THE
EXERCISE OF PERMITS TO TAKE WATER

2D Schedule of matters to be considered when setting minimum flows and allocation limits

Primary allocation limits and minimum flows will be added to Schedule 2A, to give effect to the objectives and policies in this Plan, through the plan change process following scientific investigation and consultation with the community and affected parties. The lists in 2D.1 and 2D.2 identify matters to which consideration will be given when setting these flows and limits. The lists are not exhaustive and consideration will be given to these and any other relevant matters.

2D.1 When setting minimum flows in Schedule 2A for a catchment, consideration will be given to the following matters:

- (a) Any existing or previous minimum flow regime or residual flow;
- (b) The 7-day mean annual low flow;
- (c) Interaction among water bodies;
- (d) Ecological values, including the need for flow variability;
- (e) Demand for water, including community water supplies;
- (f) Existing water uses and associated infrastructure;
- (g) Environmental, social, cultural, recreational and economic costs and benefits of taking and using water before and after the implementation of a minimum flow regime; and
- (h) Any other relevant matter in giving effect to Part 2 of the Resource Management Act.

2D.2 When setting primary allocation limits in Schedule 2A for a catchment, consideration will be given to the following matters:

- (a) Amount of water currently allocated as primary allocation;
- (b) Amount of water currently taken as primary allocation;
- (c) Any other existing taking and using of water;
- (d) The 7-day mean annual low flow;
- (e) Proposed minimum flow regime;
- (f) Possible sources of water;
- (g) Acceptable duration and frequency of rationing among consented water users; and
- (h) Social and economic benefits of taking and using water.

Note: For catchments not included in Schedule 2A, refer to Policy 6.4.4 for determining minimum flows and Policy 6.4.2 for identification of primary allocation.

SCHEDULE 3: HUMAN USE VALUES OF AQUIFERS

3. Schedule of human use values of Otago's aquifers

Schedule 3A identifies the uses of groundwater from particular aquifers in Otago. These aquifers are identified on the C-series maps. Schedule 3B identifies the location of groundwater takes for the purpose of community water supply. The identification of these human use values provides a mechanism for recognising the existence of values which need to be taken into account and given appropriate protection in managing the taking of water and discharge of contaminants (see Policy 9.4.1). The opportunity to provide such protection will arise when considering applications for resource consents for these activities.

Those that utilise the groundwater do take the risk that it may not be suitable for human consumption due to the presence of contaminants.

3A Schedule of human uses of particular aquifers

Aquifer	Map	Values
Lower Waitaki Plains Aquifer	C15, C16 & C17	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Human consumption without treatment – Stock drinking water supply and farm dairy water.
Papakaio Aquifer	C15 & C17	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Irrigation
North Otago Volcanic Aquifer	C15, C16, C17 & C18	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Irrigation
Kakanui-Kauru Alluvium Aquifer	C17 & C18	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Human consumption without treatment – Stock drinking water supply and farm dairy water – Irrigation
Shag Alluvium Aquifer	C19	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Human consumption without treatment – Human consumption with treatment – Stock drinking water supply – Irrigation
Ettrick Basin Aquifer	C21	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Human consumption without treatment – Stock drinking water supply and farm dairy water – Irrigation
Roxburgh Basin Aquifer	C20	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Human consumption without treatment – Stock drinking water supply – Irrigation – Industrial
Lower Taieri Aquifer	C24 & C25	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Human consumption without treatment – Stock drinking water supply and farm dairy water – Irrigation – Industrial

SCHEDULE 3: HUMAN USE VALUES OF AQUIFERS

3B Schedule of groundwater takes for the purpose of community water supply

Site No.	Community Water Supply Takes (at NZMS 260 Series Map Grid Reference)	Rate (litres per second) and volume (cubic metres per day) authorised
1*	Glenorchy Water Supply at E41:459-841.	63 l/s; 5400 m ³ /day
2*	Arthurs Point Water Supply at E41:686-713.	49 l/s; 3385 m ³ /day
3*	Dalefield Water Supply at F41:739-724.	6 l/s; 300 m ³ /day
4*	Arrowtown Water Supply at: F41:806-773; F41:808-774; and F41:809-774.	108 l/s; 7800 m ³ /day
5*	Cromwell Water Supply at G41:119-671.	210 l/s; 18,000 m ³ /day
6*	Alexandra Water Supplies at: G42:253-444; G42:263-454; and G42:271-442	420 l/s; 21,600 m ³ /day 12.5 l/s; 675 m ³ /day 4 l/s; 345 m ³ /day
7*	Roxburgh Water Supply at G43:210132.	58 l/s; 3000 m ³ /day
8*	Dunedin and Outram Water Supplies at: I44:956-803; I44:956-805; and I44:956-804.	Combined total take of 382 l/s; 33,000 m ³ /day
11	Owaka Water Supply at H46:533-124.	4.4 l/s; 380 m ³ /day
12	Mosgiel Water Supply at: I44:048-789; I44:042-779; I44:036-776; I44:048-789; I44:036-788*; I44:051-787; I44:032-782; I44:051-789; and I44:042-784.	The combined total take shall not exceed 10,104 m ³ /day.
13*	Clydevale-Pomahaka Water Supply at G45:417-507.	60 l/s; 5160 m ³ /day

* Point of take located within 100 metres of a surface water body.

SCHEDULE 4: ALLOCATION AND RESTRICTION REGIME
FOR GROUNDWATER

4. Schedule of the allocation and restriction regime for groundwater

This schedule sets out restrictions that apply to the taking of groundwater from certain aquifers in Otago.

Schedule 4A identifies maximum allocation limits for the taking of groundwater from aquifers identified in the C-series maps, in accordance with Policy 6.4.10A2(a) of this Plan. Schedule 4B identifies water levels at which the taking of groundwater will be restricted in accordance with Policy 6.4.10A1(b) of this Plan. Schedule 4C identifies matters to be considered when making additions to these schedules through a plan change.

4A Maximum allocation limits for groundwater takes from aquifers

Aquifer Name	Map Reference	Maximum Allocation Limit (million cubic metres per year)
Cromwell Terrace Aquifer	C7	4
North Otago Volcanic Aquifer	C15, C16, C17 & C18	7

4B Restrictions for groundwater takes

4B.1 Restriction levels for groundwater takes

Schedule 4B.1 identifies water levels at which the taking of groundwater will be restricted, and identifies the nature of the restriction, in terms of a reduction in the take of water authorised by water permits.

The aquifer maximum height refers to the historic record of the water level or pressure head after the recharge season. Note that the areas over which the restrictions apply are shown on Maps D1-D4.

Aquifer See Maps D1–D4	Aquifer Reference Bore See Maps D1–D4	Aquifer maximum height (metres above datum)	Restriction levels (metres above datum)		
			25% restriction or response in terms of Council recognised rationing regime*	50% restriction	100% restriction
North Otago Volcanic	Websters Well	130.8	126.0	125.5	125.0
Lower Taieri – West	Momona Bore	101.24	100	99.5	99
Lower Taieri – East	Harleys Well, Piezo. 2	112.5	110.5	110.0	109.5
Ettrick Basin	Cemetery Bore	172.29	170.29	169.79	169.29
Roxburgh Basin (Coal Creek Terrace)	White-Hall Bore	189.5	188	187.8	187.5

* When the aquifer reaches this level there shall be either a 25% restriction or a water allocation committee, appointed by the Otago Regional Council, will implement a protocol to take all practical steps to curb the decline in the aquifer level so as to avoid a 50% restriction. If there is no water allocation committee or the water allocation committee does not use a protocol approved by the Council, the 25% water restriction

SCHEDULE 4: ALLOCATION AND RESTRICTION REGIME
FOR GROUNDWATER

will apply.

4B.2 Restrictions for Cromwell Terrace Aquifer

There shall be no takes from the Cromwell Terrace Aquifer for irrigation purposes between 1 May and 31 August inclusive in each year.

Because the Cromwell Terrace Aquifer is hydraulically connected to Lake Dunstan, other restrictions may be imposed on resource consents to take water, to help maintain lake levels.

4C **Schedule of matters to be considered when setting maximum allocation limits and restriction levels for aquifers**

Maximum allocation limits and restriction levels for aquifers in Schedules 4A and 4B give effect to the objectives and policies in this Plan. Additional aquifers are added through the plan change process following scientific investigation and consultation with the community and affected parties. The lists in 4C.1 and 4C.2 identify matters to which consideration will be given when setting these volumes and levels. The lists are not exhaustive and consideration will be given to these and any other relevant matters. Restriction levels may not be needed for all aquifers.

4C.1 When setting maximum allocation limits in Schedule 4A for an aquifer, consideration will be given to the following matters:

- (a) Physical properties of the aquifer;
- (b) The amount and characteristics of recharge to the aquifer;
- (c) Interaction with other aquifers;
- (d) Interaction with surface water bodies and their values;
- (e) The potential for contamination (including seawater intrusion);
- (f) The effects of taking groundwater on the aquifer (including results of computer modelling, where available);
- (g) Demand for water and existing water uses, including community water supplies;
- (h) Environmental, social, cultural, recreational and economic benefits of taking and using water; and
- (i) Any other relevant matter in giving effect to Part 2 of the Resource Management Act.

4C.2 When setting restriction levels in Schedule 4B for an aquifer, consideration will be given to the following matters:

- (a) Physical properties of the aquifer;
- (b) Variance of groundwater levels in the aquifer;
- (c) The amount and characteristics of recharge to the aquifer;
- (d) The proposed or existing maximum allocation limit;
- (e) Interaction with surface water bodies and their values;
- (f) Any actual or potential effect of drawdown on groundwater quality; and

SCHEDULE 4: ALLOCATION AND RESTRICTION REGIME
FOR GROUNDWATER

- (g) The environmental, social, cultural and economic effects of the restriction level on existing users of groundwater from the aquifer.

Note: For aquifers not included in Schedule 4A, refer to Policy 6.4.10A2(b) for determining a maximum allocation limit.

4D Matters to be considered in calculating mean annual recharge

For any aquifer not included in Schedule 4A the setting of the maximum allocation limit will involve calculating the mean annual recharge of the aquifer (see Policy 6.4.10.A2(b)). The mean annual recharge is a statistical value based on the past climate, aquifer hydrology, soil properties, irrigation practice and other factors with direct influence over groundwater recharge.

This schedule sets out the matters to which consideration will be given when calculating the mean annual recharge of an aquifer.

4D.1 Sources of aquifer recharge

Sources of aquifer recharge may include:

- (a) Land surface recharge due to rainfall excess.
- (b) Land surface recharge due to irrigation excess, which should be based on the application of irrigation at an efficient rate.
- (c) Land surface recharge due to intermittent runoff flowing over the land surface.
- (d) Surface water recharge due to river infiltration.
- (e) Surface water recharge due to wetland, pond or lake infiltration.
- (f) Through-flow from any other aquifer.

The mean annual recharge can arise from a single recharge source or a combination of recharge sources, in which case the mean annual recharge is based on the combined recharge from all relevant sources.

4D.2 Methods for calculating aquifer recharge

Methods for calculating aquifer recharge from various recharge sources may include:

- (a) Daily soil moisture balance for the calculation of land surface recharge.
- (b) Daily soil moisture balance for calculation of irrigation recharge.
- (c) Differences between surface water flows measured at different flow monitoring sites for the determination of bed infiltration passing to an aquifer.
- (d) Direct measurement of land surface recharge using subsoil measuring devices such as lysimeters.
- (e) Calibrated recharge estimation using unsaturated zone matric potential or saturated zone water table height fluctuation.
- (f) Environmental tracers such as isotopes (radioactive or stable) and conservative anions.
- (g) Groundwater computer modelling, especially where calibration and parameter estimation can be used to constrain initial estimates of surface water contributions and land surface recharge.

SCHEDULE 5: LIMITS TO INSTANTANEOUS
GROUNDWATER TAKES

5. Schedule of limits to instantaneous take of groundwater

5A Schedule of equations to determine stream depletion effects of the take of groundwater

Requirement to determine stream depletion on surface water

The Bekesi and Hodges¹ equations are used to determine whether a proposed groundwater take may have an effect on nearby surface water that is greater than 5 litres per second.

The Bekesi and Hodges equations are preferred to other equations reported in the literature as they are less demanding of hydrogeological data, and allow a reasonable relationship to be calculated empirically, which can be transposed to determine the threshold distance between the point of groundwater take and the surface water body. These equations consider pumping occurs over 30 days, and assumes a 90 percentile confidence. Which equation is used depends on the proposed maximum rate of take (Q in litres per second):

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{Where } 5 \text{ l/s} \leq Q \leq 25 \text{ l/s} & r = 65 \times Q \\ \text{Where } Q > 25 \text{ l/s} & r = 1138 \times \log Q \end{array}$$

r = distance between abstraction structure and surface water body (metres)

If r is greater than the actual distance from the point of groundwater take to the surface water body, then the stream depletion effect is considered to be greater than 5 litres per second. However, there may be exceptions to the empirical relationship (see below).

Calculation of stream depletion effect and allocation to surface water

The Jenkins² equations are used to calculate the stream depletion effects (or Q_s) which will be considered against the available allocation of the relevant surface water body.

$$Q_s = Q_w \text{erfc}(U)$$

$$U = -(r^2 S / 4 T t)$$

Where:

- Q_s is the rate of stream depletion (cubic length per time)
- Q_w is the pumping rate of the well (cubic length per time)
- r is the perpendicular distance from the point of groundwater take to the surface water body (length)
- S is the storativity (or specific yield) of the aquifer (dimensionless)
- T is the transmissivity of the aquifer (square length per time)
- t is time
- 'erfc(U)' refers to the Complementary Error Function of U

SCHEDULE 5: LIMITS TO INSTANTANEOUS
GROUNDWATER TAKES

Where subsurface intake structures have a bore head in a different location from the position of the intake screen, the closest part of the intake screen or gallery should be used for the purpose of measuring the distance to the surface water body in terms of Policy 6.4.1A(c) and the equations set out above.

Situations where stream depletion effect is unlikely

There are a number of situations where the stream depletion effect of groundwater is not likely to be valid; these include hydrological factors related to the depth of the bore screen. In addition, the Bekesi and Hodges, or Jenkins equations have situations where they are less valid or have violated their basic assumptions. The situations referred to above are summarised as follows:

Where the adjacent surface water body;

- (a) Has an impermeable bed; or
- (b) Is ephemeral, or dry for extended periods, containing or conveying water only in episodes of high runoff; or
- (c) Is separated from the underlying water table by an unsaturated zone, decoupling the interaction into a one-way loss of surface water from the surface water body.

Where the groundwater system;

- (a) Has very low permeability (e.g. schist fractured rock aquifers. Although the low permeability will calculate a very low stream depletion effect in the Jenkins equation, this is not considered in the empirical Bekesi and Hodges equations); or
- (b) Has very steep gradients or perched water tables adjacent to surface water body boundaries; or
- (c) Does not influence surface water due to the depth of the bore or well screen.

These situations are often not immediately discernable and may require a higher level of assessment to distinguish the nature of connection between groundwater and surface water. Where an applicant seeks that Policy 6.4.1A should not apply, and that the take should be considered as a full groundwater take under the provisions of 12.2, then the applicant may apply to take groundwater as a discretionary activity under Rule 12.2.4.1.

Use of analytical equations other than the Jenkins Equation:

The use of analytical equations will be accepted over the equations given above, when an applicant can clearly demonstrate:

- 1) That the analytical equation is derived from, or is otherwise comparable to, the Jenkins Equation; and
- 2) That this equation is in common use for the purpose, and shares a degree of acceptance in such use amongst groundwater professionals.

SCHEDULE 5: LIMITS TO INSTANTANEOUS
GROUNDWATER TAKES

Use of numerical groundwater flow models:

The use of numerical groundwater flow models will be accepted over the equations given above, when an applicant can clearly demonstrate:

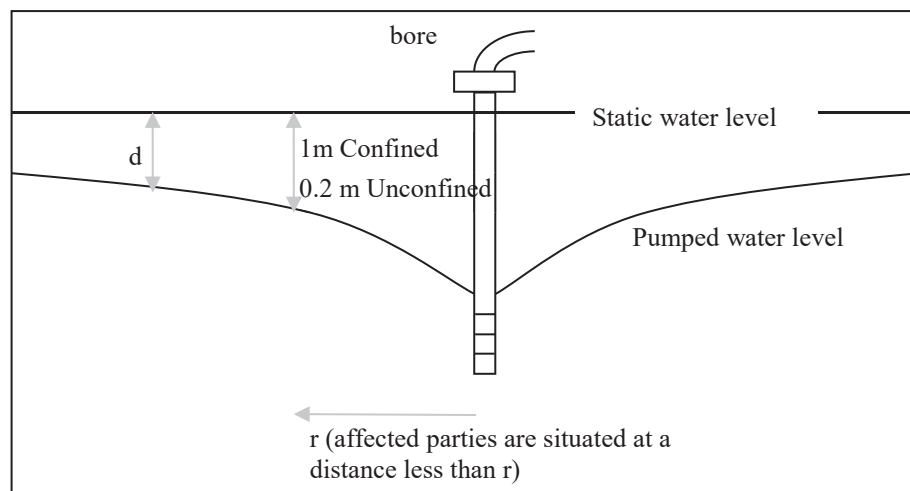
- 1) That the numerical method is validated or potentially validated at a generic level against either the Theis Equation or the Jenkins Equation; and
- 2) That the model is in common use for the purpose, and shares a degree of acceptance in such use among groundwater professionals.

¹ Bekesi, G; and Hodges, S. 2006: The protection of groundwater dependent ecosystems in Otago, New Zealand. Hydrogeology Journal. Vol. 14, No 8, December 2006, pp 1696–1701.

² Jenkins, C T, 1977: Computation of rate and volume of stream depletion by wells. In “Techniques of Water Resource Investigations of the United States Geological Survey”. Chapter D1, Book 4, 3rd Edition. USGS, Department of Interior, Washington DC.

5B Schedule of method for identifying groundwater takes potentially affected by bore interference

This schedule is the method for identifying parties likely to be affected by bore interference when a new application to take groundwater is received. The significance of any interference may result in limits being placed through conditions on permits to take groundwater, depending on distance from another bore, and may limit the instantaneous take of groundwater from any one bore in order to maintain existing access to water.



The radius will be determined using a significant interference of $d \geq 1$ m for confined aquifers or $d \geq 0.2$ m for unconfined aquifers, and the ‘Theis’ equation:

$$d = QW(u)/4\pi T \text{ where } u=r^2S/4Tt$$

Also where:

d is the interference

SCHEDULE 5: LIMITS TO INSTANTANEOUS
GROUNDWATER TAKES

- Q** is the pumping rate from the bore
W(u) is the "well equation", approximated by a Taylor series:

$$-0.5772 - \ln(u) + u - u^2/2 \cdot 2! + u^3/3 \cdot 3! - \dots$$

r is the distance from the pumping bore
S is specific yield/storativity of the unconfined/confined aquifer
t is the time or duration of pumping
T is the transmissivity of the aquifer

For clarification, the variables required for the 'Theis' equation will be quantified as follows:

- Q** from the consent application: maximum daily volume
r from maps, aerial photos, or preferably GPS coordinates
T and S from pumping tests or conservative estimates
t (in days) from consent application: maximum annual volume divided by the maximum daily volume

If a variable cannot be estimated from the consent application or the applicant did not supply the information, the Council will estimate it on an environmentally conservative basis.

SCHEDULE 6: WATER BODIES WHERE DAMMING IS PROHIBITED

6. Schedule of water bodies where damming is prohibited

This schedule identifies water bodies in Otago, or parts of water bodies, in which the damming of water is prohibited in accordance with Policy 8.5.2, and Rules 12.3.1.1, 12.3.1.2, and 12.3.1.3 of this Plan. Note that the damming of water for stockwater supply purposes is not prohibited in some of the identified water bodies. Such management of these water bodies is required by the Water Conservation (Kawarau) Order 1997.

Water body	Grid references	Type of dam prohibited
Kawarau River main stem from Scrubby Stream to the Lake Wakatipu control gates.	F41:035680 to F41:738667	Any dam.
Shotover River main stem	At or about F41:765680 to E40:662173	Any dam.
Dart River/Te Awa Whakatipu main stem from Lake Wakatipu to its confluence with Beans Burn.	At or about E41:438853 to E40:375077	Any dam.
Rees River main stem from Lake Wakatipu to its confluence with Hunter Creek.	At or about E41:448852 to E40:499117	Any dam.
Diamond Lake, Diamond Creek and Lake Reid.	At or about E40:435975; E41:444963 to E40:450918	Any dam.
Lake Wanaka and Upper Clutha River/Mata-Au	F40:050089 to F40:088067	All dams other than for the duration of an emergency.
Pomahaka River, including its tributaries, from its sources to its confluence with the Clutha River/Mata-Au.	Confluence at G45:447453	All dams other than for stockwater supply purposes.
Waipahi River from its source to its confluence with the Pomahaka River.	Confluence at G45:194520	All dams other than for stockwater supply purposes.
Lower Clutha River/Mata-Au from its confluence with the Pomahaka River to the sea at the mouths of the Matau and Koau Branches.	G45:447453 to H46:667263 and H46:642239	All dams other than for stockwater supply purposes.

SCHEDULE 7: WATER BODIES SENSITIVE TO SUCTION
DREDGE MINING

7. Schedule of water bodies sensitive to suction dredge mining

This schedule identifies water bodies in Otago, or parts of water bodies, that are sensitive to bed disturbance caused by suction dredge mining due to their unique value for fish spawning or rearing, or their importance for water supply. Suction dredge mining in the identified water bodies, and during any identified time period, will require a resource consent under Rule 13.5.3.1 of this Plan (see Policy 8.6.3). The water bodies identified support values that need to be taken into account when considering consent applications to suction dredge. See Maps E1-E9 for areas affected and their numbers.

North Otago subregion			
Water body	Values	Grid References	Area No.
Waianakarua River	Native fish diversity	Catchment upstream of J42:370472	1

Maniototo subregion			
Water body	Values	Grid References	Area No.
Ewe Burn	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H42:808587	2
Kye Burn	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of I42:946585	3
Sow Burn	Fisheries values	Catchment upstream of H42:785532	4
Pig Burn	Fisheries values	Catchment upstream of H42:828532	5
Taieri River (Between Hore's Bridge and Long Point) <i>From 1 March to 31 October</i>	Fisheries values	Main stem between H42:713380 and H42:744352	6
Waimonga Creek	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H42:542308	7
Waimonga Creek	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H43:542299	8
Totara Creek	Native fish habitat	Main stem between H42:620342 and 553304	9
Linn Burn	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H42:655323	10
McPhees Creek	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H43:729211	11
McHardys Creek	Fisheries values	Catchment upstream of H43:710151	12
Shepherds Hut Creek	Fisheries values	Catchment upstream of H43:645123	13
Unnamed tributary of the Logan Burn	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H43:614115	14
Taieri River	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H43:549027	15

Central Otago subregion			
Water body	Values	Grid References	Area No.
Cardrona River	Fisheries values	Catchment upstream of F40:087067	16
Unnamed tributary of the Clutha River/Mata-Au	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of G40:207933	17
Cluden Stream	Fisheries values	Catchment upstream of G40:342942	18
Dunstan Creek	Fisheries values	Catchment upstream of H41:545745	19
Manuherikia River	Fisheries values	Catchment upstream of H41:661902	20
Gate Creek	Fisheries values	Catchment upstream of H41:664901	21

SCHEDULE 7: WATER BODIES SENSITIVE TO SUCTION
DREDGE MINING

Central Otago subregion			
Water body	Values	Grid References	Area No.
Earnsclough or Fraser River	Fisheries values	Catchment upstream of G42:160507	22
Earnsclough or Fraser River	Fisheries values	Main stem between G42:200490 and Clutha River/Mata-Au	23
Cranky Woman Creek	Fisheries values	Catchment upstream of H42:572378	24
Manor Burn Creek	Fisheries values	Catchment upstream of G43:447243	25

Lakes subregion			
Water body	Values	Grid References	Area No.
All rivers flowing into Lake Wakatipu	Fisheries values	-	26
All rivers flowing into Lake Wanaka	Fisheries values	-	27
All rivers flowing into Lake Hawea	Fisheries values	-	28
Skippers Creek	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of E41:690896	29
Moke Creek	Fisheries values	Catchment upstream of E41:609701 (both branches)	30
Lake Kirkpatrick outlet stream	Fisheries values	Main stem between Lake Kirkpatrick and Moke Lake	31
Mill Creek	Fisheries values	Catchment upstream of Lake Hayes	32
Hayes Creek	Fisheries values	Main stem between Lake Hayes and Kawarau River	33
Nevis River	Fisheries values	Catchment upstream of F41:979644	34

Roxburgh subregion			
Water body	Values	Grid References	Area No.
Benger Burn	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of G43:253006	35
Tima Burn	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of G44:293999	36
Unnamed tributary of Lake Onslow	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of G43:451133	37

Strath Taieri subregion			
Water body	Values	Grid References	Area No.
Cap Burn	Fisheries values	Main stem between I42:959462 and 955462	38
Mare Burn	Fisheries values	Main stem between I42:971432 and 975432	39
Lug Creek	Fisheries values	Catchment upstream of H43:880257	40
Stoney Creek	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H43:712088	41
Nenthorn Stream	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of I43:944054	42

SCHEDULE 7: WATER BODIES SENSITIVE TO SUCTION
DREDGE MINING

Waikouaiti/Lammermoor subregion			
Water body	Values	Grid References	Area No.
Deep Creek	Water Supply	Catchment upstream of H43:665037	43
Deep Stream	Native fish habitat Water Supply	Catchment upstream of H44:683996	44
Lee Stream/Canton Stream	Native fish habitat	Main stem between H44:761909 and 701915	45
Black Rock Stream	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H44:744883	46
Smugglers Creek	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of I44:936830	47
Taieri River	Water supply values (land instability threat to water pipeline)	Main stem between I44:009868 and 976830	48
Christmas Creek	Fisheries values	Main stem between I44:038953 and 039955	49
Three O'clock Stream	Fisheries values	Main stem between I44:024974 and Taieri River	50
Three O'clock Stream	Native fish habitat	Main stem between I43:111096 and 077138	51
Waikouaiti River	Native fish habitat Water Supply	Catchment upstream of I43:232079	52

Coastal subregion			
Water body	Values	Grid References	Area No.
Burns Creek	Water Supply	Catchment upstream of I44:158883	53
Jeffersons Creek	Water Supply	Catchment upstream of I44:160873	54
Williams Creek	Water Supply	Catchment upstream of I44:159870	55
Sullivans Dam intake	Water Supply	Catchment upstream of I44:172863	56
Water of Leith, West Branch	Water Supply	Catchment upstream of I44:164857	57
Morrisons Creek	Water Supply	Catchment upstream of I44:160843	58
Nicols Creek	Water Supply	Catchment upstream of I44:153833	59
Ross Creek	Water Supply	Catchment upstream of I44:152820	60
Orokonui Creek	Native fish diversity	Catchment upstream of I44:221921	61
Wetherstons Creek (Waitati River tributary)	Water Supply	Catchment upstream of I44:201882	62
Rossville reservoir intake	Water Supply	Catchment upstream of I44:233865	63
Sawyers Bay Stream	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of I44:235851	64
Unnamed tributary of Otago Harbour	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of I44:277825	65
Weipers Creek	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of I44:281792	66
Big Creek	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H45:864482	67

Taieri/Clutha Plains subregion			
Water body	Values	Grid References	Area No.
Unnamed tributary of Waipori River	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H44:553814	68
Unnamed tributary of Waipori River	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H44:563813	69
Stony Creek	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H44:606839	70

SCHEDULE 7: WATER BODIES SENSITIVE TO SUCTION
DREDGE MINING

Taieri/Clutha Plains subregion			
Water body	Values	Grid References	Area No.
Taieri/Clutha Plains subregion			
Water body	Values	Grid References	Area No.
Nardoo Stream	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H44:649831	71
North West Stream	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H44:697840	72
Unnamed tributary of Pioneer Stream	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H44:703752	73
Unnamed tributary of Lake Mahinerangi	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H44:722768	74
Shepherd Stream	Native fish habitat	Main stem between H44:737737 and 725736	75
Unnamed tributary of Shepherd Stream	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H44:724728	76
Unnamed tributary of Shepherd Stream	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H44:732732	77
Unnamed tributary of Waipori River	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H44:749756	78
Unnamed tributary of Waipori River	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H44:765750	79
Unnamed tributary of Waipori River	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H44:780741	80
Unnamed tributary of Waipori River	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H44:777756	81
Unnamed tributary of Waipori River	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H44:782746	82
Mill Creek	Water Supply	Catchment upstream of H44:833730	83
Verter Burn	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H44:794799	84
Silver Stream	Native fish diversity Water Supply	Catchment upstream of I44:039789	85
Meggat Burn	Water Supply	Catchment upstream of H45:744693	86
Tokomairiro River West Branch	Fisheries values	Catchment upstream of H45:747487	87
Lake Tuakitoto	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H45:647407	88
Unnamed tributary of Lake Tuakitoto	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H46:660392	89
Saddle Stream	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H46:657389	90
McCrosties Drain	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H46:654372	91
Lake Tuakitoto	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H46:687369	92

Southwest Otago subregion			
Water body	Values	Grid References	Area No.
Tuapeka River	Water Supply	Catchment upstream of G44:491742	93
All streams flowing into the Phoenix Dam	Water Supply	Catchment upstream of Dam at H44:545755	94
Waitahuna River	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H44:624790	95
Tuapeka Creek	Fisheries values	Main stem between H44:508721 and Tuapeka River	96
Tuapeka River	Fisheries values	Catchment between G45:471669 and Clutha River/Mata-Au, including all tributaries of this reach	97
Waitahuna River	Fisheries values	Main stem between H45:619659 and Clutha River/Mata-Au	98

SCHEDULE 7: WATER BODIES SENSITIVE TO SUCTION
DREDGE MINING

Pomahaka River	Native fish habitat Fisheries values Water Supply	Catchment upstream of G45:445453	99
Waiwera River	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of G46:283301	100

Catlins subregion			
Water body	Values	Grid References	Area No.
Unnamed tributary of Mokoreta River	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of G46:214247	101
Catlins River	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of G46:274228	102
Unnamed tributary of Catlins River	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of G46:380169	103
Frank Stream	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of G46:400141	104
Matai Stream	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of G47:404059	105
Unnamed Creek	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of G47:457046	106
MacKenzie Stream	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of G47:469051	107
Waitere Stream	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of G47:485043	108
Unnamed tributary of Catlins Lake	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H47:561074	109
Unnamed tributary of Owaka River	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H46:553143	110
Burnt Scrub Creek	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H46:595183	111
Unnamed Creek	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H46:600175	112
Nugget Stream	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H46:631160	113

SCHEDULE 8: REQUIREMENTS FOR DISCHARGE OF ANIMAL WASTE

8. Schedule of requirements for discharge of animal wastes

This schedule establishes requirements for the discharge of contaminants from any waste collection system onto production land. If these requirements are met, in addition to the conditions set out in Rules 12.C.1.1 and 12.C.1.1A, and the discharge is not prohibited under 12.C.0.2, such a discharge is a permitted activity under this Plan.

The schedule specifies a maximum application depth, a maximum application rate and a minimum return period.

- The **maximum application depth** is the amount of animal waste that can be applied at any one time.
- The **maximum application rate** is the speed at which animal waste can be applied.
- The **minimum return period** is the time which should expire before animal waste is reapplied to the same land.

These requirements vary depending on the soil type as each soil type has a different capacity to assimilate contaminants. The requirements will ensure that this assimilative capacity is not exceeded by the discharge of animal waste.

ANIMAL WASTE APPLICATION FOR VARIOUS SOIL TYPES UNDER PASTURE COVER			
Soil Type	Maximum Application Depth at any One Time	Maximum Application Rate	Minimum Return Period
Sand and loamy sand	25mm	32mm/hr	15 days
Sandy loam and fine sandy loam	25mm	20mm/hr	15days
Silt and sandy silt loam	25mm	17mm/hr	20 days
Clay and clay loam	25mm	10mm/hr	20 days
Peat	25mm	17mm/hr	15 days

Note: The values in this table are based on soil moisture under 50% saturation. Any person applying animal waste on soils exceeding 50% saturation will need to adjust their application depth and rate accordingly, to avoid breaching rule conditions.

The following conversions may be useful:

- Amounts in mm to litres per hectare: multiply by 10,000.
- Amounts in mm/hr to litres per hectare per hour: multiply by 10,000.

SCHEDULE 9: IDENTIFIED REGIONALLY SIGNIFICANT
WETLANDS AND WETLAND MANAGEMENT AREAS

9 Schedule of identified Regionally Significant Wetlands and Wetland Management Areas

This schedule lists Otago's identified Regionally Significant Wetlands and Wetland Management Areas. An identified Regionally Significant Wetland or Wetland Management Area is one that has been mapped in Maps F1–F63 and contains one or more regionally significant wetland values (see Chapter 10).

The ORC holds an inventory on wetlands, including all Regionally Significant Wetlands listed in Schedule 9, as well as some wetlands that are not included in this Schedule. The inventory is available on the ORC website. The inventory is intended for information purposes only. It is not incorporated by reference in this plan and does not form part of this plan or any other regulatory document. It is a stand-alone repository for data and information and has no legal effect.

In addition, GIS (geographical information systems) data on wetland extents can be made available on request.

SCHEDULE 9: IDENTIFIED REGIONALLY SIGNIFICANT
WETLANDS AND WETLAND MANAGEMENT AREAS

**Index to Otago's Identified Regionally Significant Wetlands and Wetland
Management Areas**

#	Wetland Name	Map
1	Akatore Creek Swamp	F42
2	All Day Bay Lagoon	F60
3	Andersons Pond Margins	F52
4	Aramoana Saltmarsh	F53
6	Belmont Inland Saline Wetland Management Area	F22
7	Bendigo Wetland	F16
8	Big Boggy Swamp	F1
9	Black Rock Marshes	F63
10	Black Swamp	F29
11	Blackcleugh Burn Swamp	F28
12	Blackmans Inland Saline Wetland Management Area	F12
13	Blair Fen	F31
14	Blair Swamp	F31
15	Boundary Creek Fen	F27
16	Braeside Swamp	F57
17	Bungtown Bog	F47
18	Butterfield Wetland	F2
172	Cairn Road Bog	F35
19	Camp Stream Swamp	F40
20	Campbells Reserve Pond Margins	F3
21	Cannibal Bay Road Swamp	F36
22	Catlins River Wetland	F33
23	Chapman Road Inland Saline Wetland	F16
24	Cheetwood Road Wetlands	F38
25	Church Hill Wetland Complex	F6
26	Clachanburn Marsh	F22
27	Clifton Hill Marshes	F29
28	Clutha Matau Wetlands	F37
29	Clutha River Mouth Lagoon	F37
30	Conroys Dam Inland Saline Wetland Management Area	F16
31	Conroys Road Inland Saline Wetland Complex	F16
87	Coutts Gully Swamp	F42
32	Cross Eden Creek Marsh Complex	F14
33	Culcairn Oxbow Marsh	F38
34	Devils Bridge Wetland	F59
35	Diamond Lake Wetland	F3
36	Dingle Lagoon	F1
37	Dunard Inland Saline Wetland Management Area	F11
38	Dunvegan Fen Complex	F34
39	East Benhar Swamp	F39
40	Ellison Saltmarsh	F56
41	False Islet Wetland Management Area	F36
42	Fernhill Marsh	F51
43	Finegand Lagoon Marsh	F38

SCHEDULE 9: IDENTIFIED REGIONALLY SIGNIFICANT
WETLANDS AND WETLAND MANAGEMENT AREAS

#	Wetland Name	Map
44	Flat Top Hill Ephemeral Wetlands	F17
45	Fortification Creek Wetland Management Area	F27
46	Fortification Stream Headwaters Swamp	F52
47	Frasers Stream Headwaters Marsh Complex	F40
48	Galloway No. 1 Inland Saline Wetland Complex	F12
49	Galloway No. 2 Inland Saline Wetland Management Area	F12
50	Gilmour Road Marsh	F13
51	Glendhu Swamp	F28
52	Glenorchy Lagoon Wetland	F8
53	Glyn Wye Wetland Management Area	F51
54	Governors Point Swamp	F43
55	Great Moss Swamp	F26
56	Harrington Mill Road Swamp	F31
57	Hawkdun Runs Road Marsh	F18
58	Hawksbury Lagoon	F56
59	Hazeldale Fens	F49
60	Henley Swamp	F44
61	Hoopers Inlet Swamp	F54
62	Hukihuki Swamp	F32
63	Hungerford Point Saltmarsh	F32
64	Hut Creek Swamps	F18
65	Island Block Pond Marshes	F15
66	Jennings Creek Marsh	F53
67	John O'Groats Hill Fen	F28
68	Kaikorai Lagoon Swamp	F57
69	Kakaho Creek Swamp	F60
70	Kemp Road Lagoon	F60
71	Kinloch Wetland	F3
72	Kirk Creek Headwaters Marsh Complex	F15
73	Kirkwoods Creek Wetland Management Area	F14
74	Kuriwao Saddle Fen Complex	F49
75	Lake Hayes Margins	F7
76	Lake Reid Wetland	F3
77	Lake Tuakitoto Wetland	F39
78	Lake Wilkie Swamp	F32
79	Lamb Hill Fen Complex	F53
80	Laws Road Swamp	F11
81	Lenz Reserve Wetlands	F32
82	Little Boggy Swamp	F51
83	Little Stoney Bog	F4
84	Loch Loudon Fen Complex	F46
85	Loch Luella Fen Complex	F46 & F47
86	Long Gully Marsh	F12
88	Lower Manorburn Dam Margins	F13
89	Lower Otokia Creek Marsh	F54
91	Macfarlane Road Oxbow Swamp	F30
92	Maclennan River Podocarp Swamp Complex	F50

SCHEDULE 9: IDENTIFIED REGIONALLY SIGNIFICANT
WETLANDS AND WETLAND MANAGEMENT AREAS

#	Wetland Name	Map
93	Makarora Flat Swamp Complex	F1
94	Malones Dam Margins	F28
95	Marana Swamp	F30
96	Matakauri Wetland	F4
97	Matukituki Bluff Ephemeral Wetland Management Area	F2
98	Matukituki Valley Wetland Management Area	F5
99	Maungatua Summit Wetland Management Area	F58
100	McGregor Swamp	F56
101	McKays Triangle Wetland	F54
102	McLachlan Road Marsh	F56
103	Measly Beach Wetland Complex	F41
104	Middle Swamp	F27
105	Minaret Bay Swamp	F1
106	Moa Creek Inland Saline Wetland	F12
107	Moke Creek Swamp	F4
108	Moke Lake Bog	F4
109	Molyneux Bay Swamp	F37
110	Mount Nicholas Lagoon	F7
111	Murrays Road Inland Saline Wetland Management Area	F51
112	Nenthorn Ridge Wetland Management Area	F59
113	Nevis Red Tussock Fen	F17
114	Office Creek Seepage	F58
115	Okia Flat Wetland Management Area	F63
116	Old Dunstan Road Swamp	F52
117	Otanomomo Tuatiki Reserve	F33
118	Otokia Swamp	F57
119	Paddys Rock Ephemeral Tarn	F59
120	Papanui Inlet Saltmarsh	F61
121	Patearoa Inland Saline Wetland	F22
122	Peat Moss Hills Fen Complex	F55
123	Pleasant River Estuary Wetland Complex	F62
124	Pomahaka River Oxbow Marsh (Dalvey School Road)	F29
125	Pomahaka River Oxbow Marsh (Koi Creek)	F29
126	Ratanui Swamp	F33
127	Red Bank Wetland Management Area	F62
128	Reefs Pond Margins	F52
129	Rigney Pond Margins	F15
130	Rockdale Inland Saline Wetland Management Area	F11
131	Rocky Hill Tidal Marshes	F43
132	Samson Hill Marshes	F31
133	Scaifes Lagoon	F2
134	Schoolhouse Flat Red Tussock Fen	F17
135	Shag Point Dam Margins	F59
136	Shag River Estuary Swamp	F59
137	Shotover River Confluence Swamp	F8
138	Signal Hill Swamp	F8
139	Stirling Marsh Complex	F39

SCHEDULE 9: IDENTIFIED REGIONALLY SIGNIFICANT
WETLANDS AND WETLAND MANAGEMENT AREAS

#	Wetland Name	Map
140	Stuarts Marsh	F50
141	Styx Ephemeral Wetland Management Area	F13
142	Sutton Salt Lake Wetland Management Area	F55
143	Swampy Summit Swamp	F53
144	Tahakopa Bay Podocarp Swamp	F50
145	Tahakopa Marsh Complex	F36
146	Tahakopa River Bogs	F50
147	Takitoa Swamp	F43
148	Tautuku River Mouth Marsh	F32
173	Tavora Wetland	F61
171	Te Hua Taki Wetland	F61
149	Te Matai Marsh Complex	F63
150	The Neck Wetlands	F2
151	Three Stones Fen Complex	F49
152	Timber Creek Seepage	F11
153	Tokomairiro River Swamp	F48
154	Tomahawk Lagoon	F54
155	Totara Creek Inland Saline Wetland	F22
157	Trig Y Bogs	F30
158	Two Stone Hill Stream Swamp	F40
159	Upper Black Stream Marshes	F13
160	Upper Tahakopa Swamps	F31
161	Upper Taieri Wetlands Complex	F19 to F25
162	Upper Waiareka Creek Swamp	F61
163	Von Valley Wetland Complex	F9 & F10
164	Waianakarua River Estuary Swamp	F60
165	Waikouaiti River Estuary Wetland Complex	F56
166	Waipori Boot Swamp	F44 & F45
167	Waipori/Waihola Wetlands Complex	F44 & F45
168	Wairepo Creek Marsh Complex	F34
169	Whareakeake Marsh	F53
170	Willowburn Bog	F30

SCHEDULE 10: [REPEALED]

10 *[Repealed – 1 October 2013]*

11 *[Repealed – 1 March 2012]*

SCHEDULE 12: COASTAL MARINE AREA BOUNDARIES

12 Schedule of coastal marine area boundaries

This schedule, and the accompanying maps, identify the boundary of the coastal marine area at Otago's river mouths. Water on the landward side of the identified boundary is subject to the provisions of this Plan, while water on the coastal side is subject to the provisions of the Regional Plan: Coast.

Waitaki District

Water body	Description of mouth and boundary *	Mouth grid reference	Boundary grid reference
1. Waitaki River	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" five times the width of the mouth upstream.	J41 (Edition 1 1984):636837, 636835	J41 (Edition 1 1984):630844, 628837
2. Awamoia Creek	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" at the downstream side of the Beach Road bridge.	J41 (Edition 1 1984):47608, 476608	J41 (Edition 1 1984):475608, 476608
3. Kakanui River	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" at the downstream side of the Kakanui Point Road bridge.	J42 (Edition 1 1984):449559, 448555	J42 (Edition 1 1984):443564, 445564
4. Orore Creek	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" at the downstream side of the Waianakarua Road bridge.	J42 (Edition 1 1984):437531, 437530	J42 (Edition 1 1984):436531, 437530
5. Bow Alley Creek	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" at the downstream side of the Waianakarua Road bridge.	J42 (Edition 1 1984):424503, 425504	J42 (Edition 1 1984):423505, 423506
6. Waianakarua River	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" five times the width of the mouth upstream.	J42 (Edition 1 1984):421482, 421484	J42 (Edition 1 1984):419483, 419484
7. Kurinui Creek a.k.a. Big Kuri Creek	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" five times the width of the mouth upstream.	J42 (Edition 1 1984):395403, 396404	J42 (Edition 1 1984):393404, 394405
8. Kuriiti Creek a.k.a. Little Kuri Creek	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" five times the width of the mouth upstream.	J42 (Edition 1 1984):394401, 394399	J42 (Edition 1 1984):393399, 393400
9. Waiwhero-whero Creek	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" at the downstream side of the footbridge.	J42 (Edition 1 1984):397375, 398375	J42 (Edition 1 1984):397374, 398374
10. "Kemp Road" Creek	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" at the lower limit of the lagoon.	J42 (Edition 1 1984):421330, 420330	J42 (Edition 1 1984):419322, 421323
11. Trotters Creek	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" five times the width of the mouth upstream.	J42 (Edition 1 1984):412325, 414327	J42 (Edition 1 1984):412325, 413326
12. Back Creek	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" at the downstream side of the State Highway 1 Road bridge.	J42 (Edition 1 1984):404315, 405316	J42 (Edition 1 1984):404315, 405316
13. Tarapuke Creek	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" at the downstream side of the State Highway 1 Road bridge.	J42 (Edition 1 1984):397305, 398306	J42 (Edition 1 1984):397305, 398306
14a. Shag River - northern arm	The "mouth" where it enters the estuary, the "boundary" five times the width of the mouth upstream.	J43 (Edition 1 1980):377240, 377239	J43 (Edition 1 1980):376238, 377237
14b. Shag River - southern arm	The "mouth" where it enters the estuary, the "boundary" five times the width of the mouth upstream.	J43 (Edition 1 1980):377231, 377230	J43 (Edition 1 1980):374 230, 375 229

SCHEDULE 12: COASTAL MARINE AREA BOUNDARIES

Water body	Description of mouth and boundary *	Mouth grid reference	Boundary grid reference
15. Stony Creek	The “mouth” where it enters the estuary, the “boundary” five times the width of the mouth upstream.	J43 (Edition 1 1980):358200, 359201	J43 (Edition 1 1980):357201, 357200

* Taken from the NZMS 260 series of 1:50,000 scale maps.

SCHEDULE 12: COASTAL MARINE AREA BOUNDARIES



1 Waitaki River



2 Awamoa Creek



3 Kakanui River



4 Orore Creek



5 Bow Alley Creek



6 Waianakarua River

SCHEDULE 12: COASTAL MARINE AREA BOUNDARIES



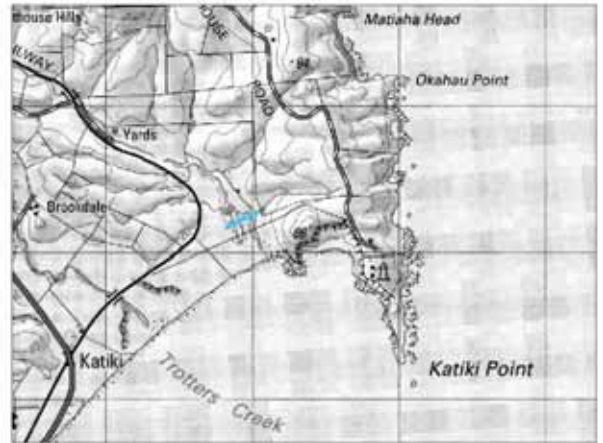
7 Kurinui Creek a.k.a. Big Kuri Creek



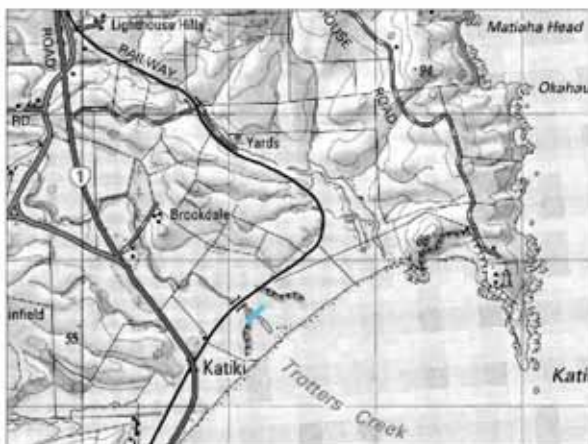
8 Kuriiti Creek a.k.a. Little Kuri Creek



9 Waiherowhero Creek



10 "Kemp Road" Creek



11 Troppers Creek



12 Back Creek

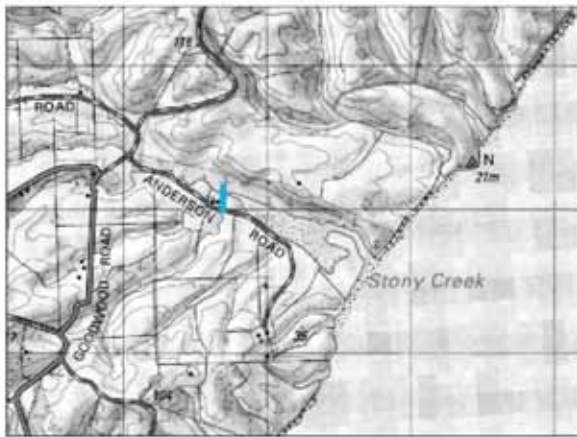
SCHEDULE 12: COASTAL MARINE AREA BOUNDARIES



13 Tarapuke Creek



14 Shag River



15 Stony Creek

SCHEDULE 12: COASTAL MARINE AREA BOUNDARIES

Dunedin City

Water body	Description of mouth and boundary *	Mouth grid reference	Boundary grid reference
16. Pleasant River	The “mouth” where it enters the estuary, the “boundary” adjacent to the south end of the railway bridge.	J43 (Edition 1 1980):315156, 315157	J43 (Edition 1 1980):311155, 312155
17. Hawksbury Inlet	The “mouth” where it enters the sea, the “boundary” running along the causeway edge to include the Eastern arm in the coastal marine area.	I43 (Edition 1 1981):437531, 437530	I43 (Edition 1 1981):286091, 289086
18. Waikouaiti River	The “mouth” where it enters the estuary, the “boundary” at the downstream side of the State Highway 1 Road bridge.	I43 (Edition 1 1981):265085, 267085	I43 (Edition 1 1981):266087, 266089
19. Careys Creek	The “mouth” where it enters Blueskin Bay, the “boundary” adjacent to the northern end of the railway bridge.	I44/J44 (Edition 2 1987):208954, 209954	I44/J44 (Edition 2 1987):208956, 209956
20. Waitati River	The “mouth” where it enters Orokonui Inlet, the “boundary” five times the width of the mouth upstream.	I44/J44 (Edition 2 1987):216926, 21 925	I44/J44 (Edition 2 1987):214924, 215923
21. Drivers Creek	The “mouth” where it enters the sea, the “boundary” at the downstream side of the metalled road bridge parallel to Long Beach.	I44/J44 (Edition 2 1987):269923, 270922	I44/J44 (Edition 2 1987):268921, 269920
22. Water of Leith	The “mouth” where it enters the sea, the “boundary” at the downstream side of the railway bridge.	I44/J44 (Edition 2 1987):178787, 179788	I44/J44 (Edition 2 1987):176789, 178789
23. ‘Marne Street’ Creek	The “mouth” where it enters Anderson’s Bay Inlet, the “boundary” at the downstream side of the Marne Street Road bridge.	I44/J44 (Edition 2 1987):179766, 180765	I44/J44 (Edition 2 1987):179766, 180765
24. Tomahawk Lagoon	The “mouth” where it enters the sea, the “boundary” at the downstream side of the Tomahawk Road bridge.	I44/J44 (Edition 2 1987):189750, 191750	I44/J44 (Edition 2 1987):189751, 190751
25. Kaikorai Stream	The “mouth” where it enters the estuary, the “boundary” five times the width of the mouth upstream. The boundary around the estuary is mean high water spring.	I44/J44 (Edition 2 1987):082733, 082735	I44/J44 (Edition 2 1987):084736, 083737
26. Taylors Creek	The “mouth” where it enters the sea, the “boundary” at the downstream side of the Brighton Road bridge.	I44/J44 (Edition 2 1987):041708, 043709	I44/J44 (Edition 2 1987):039708, 040709
27. Otokia Creek	The “mouth” where it enters the sea, the “boundary” at the downstream side of the Brighton Road bridge.	I45 (Edition 1 1980):031701, 031699	I45 (Edition 1 1980):030699, 030700
28. Tutu Stream	The “mouth” where it enters the sea, the “boundary” at the downstream side of the road bridge DCC 47.	I45 (Edition 1 1980):981652, 982654	I45 (Edition 1 1980):980652, 981654
29. Reids Stream	The “mouth” where it enters the sea, the “boundary” at the downstream side of the road bridge DCC 48.	I45 (Edition 1 1980):966633, 967634	I45 (Edition 1 1980):966633, 967634
30. Unnamed	The “mouth” where it enters the sea, the “boundary” at the downstream side of the road bridge DCC 49.	I45 (Edition 1 1980):954612, 955614	I45 (Edition 1 1980):954612, 955614

* Taken from the NZMS 260 series of 1:50,000 scale maps.

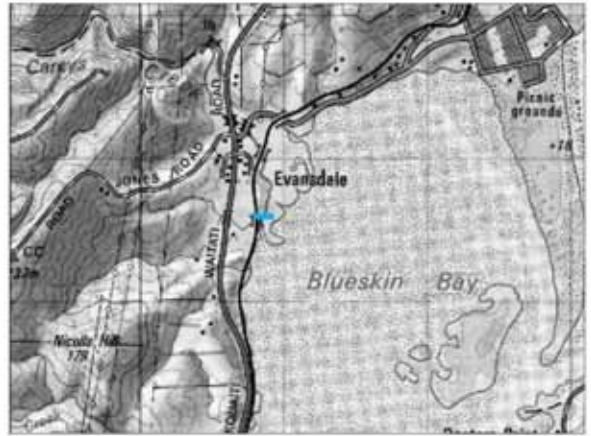
SCHEDULE 12: COASTAL MARINE AREA BOUNDARIES



16 Pleasant River



17 Hawksbury Inlet



19 Careys Creek

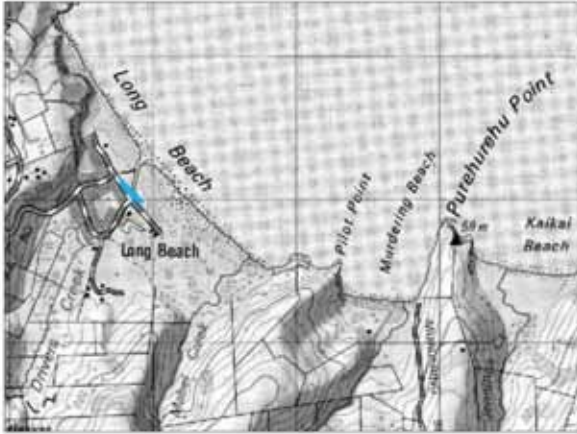


18 Waikouaiti River

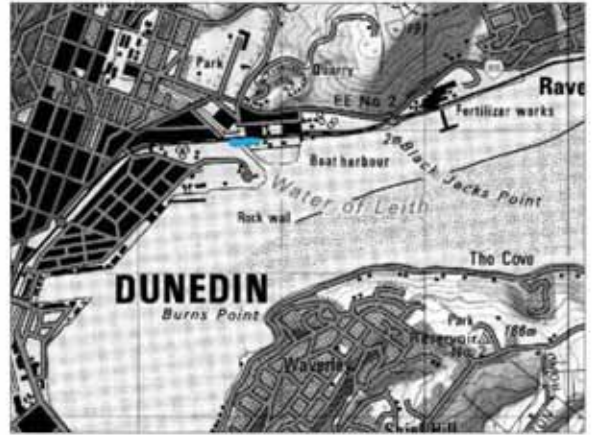


20 Waitati River

SCHEDULE 12: COASTAL MARINE AREA BOUNDARIES



21 Drivers Creek



22 Water of Leith



23 "Marne Street" Creek



24 Tomahawk Lagoon



25 Kaikorai Stream



26 Taylors Creek

SCHEDULE 12: COASTAL MARINE AREA BOUNDARIES

Clutha District

Water body	Description of mouth and boundary *	Mouth grid reference	Boundary grid reference
31. Taieri River	The “mouth” where it enters the sea, the “boundary” at the downstream side of the road bridge at Taieri Mouth.	I45 (Edition 1 1980):930575, 936582	I45 (Edition 1 1980):923581, 925582
32. Duckbend Creek	The “mouth” where it enters the sea, the “boundary” at the downstream side of the road Sawmill Road bridge.	I45 (Edition 1 1980):930570, 930568	I45 (Edition 1 1980):926567, 927569
33. Akatore Creek	The “mouth” where it enters the estuary, the “boundary” five times the width of the mouth upstream.	I45 (Edition 1 1980):905516, 906515	I45 (Edition 1 1980):904516, 905515
34. Bull Creek	The “mouth” where it enters the sea, the “boundary” at the picnic area.	H45 (Edition 1 1981):882439, 884440	H45 (Edition 1 1981):882439, 883441
35. Tokomairiro River	The “mouth” where it enters the sea, the “boundary” five times the width of the mouth upstream.	H45 (Edition 1 1981):882439, 884440	H45 (Edition 1 1981):882439, 883441
36. Wangaloa Creek	The “mouth” at the first constriction, the “boundary” at the second constriction.	H45 (Edition 1 1981):785357, 786356	H45 (Edition 1 1981):782353, 781354
37. Washpool Creek	The “mouth” where it enters the sea, the “boundary” at the downstream side of the Wangaloa Mouth Road bridge.	H46 (Edition 1 1981):752324, 754325	H46 (Edition 1 1981):751326, 752326
38. Clutha River/Mata-Au - Matau Branch	The “mouth” where it enters the sea, the “boundary” five times the width of the mouth upstream.	H46 (Edition 1 1981):665262, 668263	H46 (Edition 1 1981):660264, 660267
39. Clutha River/Mata-Au - Koau Branch	The “mouth” where it enters the sea, the “boundary” along the causeway and five times the width of the mouth upstream.	H46 (Edition 1 1981):639239, 641241	H46 (Edition 1 1981):639247, 642249, 640242, 639245
40. Karoro Creek	The “mouth” where it enters the sea, the “boundary” at the downstream side of the Kaka Point road bridge.	H46 (Edition 1 1981):623184, 624183	H46 (Edition 1 1981):621185, 623184
41. Nugget Stream	The “mouth” where it enters the sea, the “boundary” at the Nuggets Road bridge.	H46 (Edition 1 1981):635162, 636164	H46 (Edition 1 1981):634162, 635164
42. Owaka River	The “mouth” where it enters the Catlins River, the “boundary” at the downstream side of the Pounaweia bridge.	H46 (Edition 1 1981):552110, 554110	H46 (Edition 1 1981):551113, 553113
43. Catlins River	The “mouth” where it enters the Catlins ‘Lake’, the “boundary” at the downstream side of the Ratanui bridge.	G46 (Edition 1 1981):500495, 501493	G46 (Edition 1 1981):491082, 490083
44. Maclellan River	The “mouth” where it enters the Maclellan River, the “boundary” at the downstream side of the State Highway 92 Road bridge between Centre Road and Puaho Road.	G47 (Edition 1 1983):392011, 391013	G47 (Edition 1 1983):393013, 392015
45. Tahakopa River	The “mouth” where the Maclellan River enters, the “boundary” five times the width of the mouth upstream.	G47 (Edition 1 1983):390014, 390011	G47 (Edition 1 1983):385014, 385015
46. Fleming River	The “mouth” where it enters the Tautuku River, the “boundary” five times the width of the mouth upstream.	G47 (Edition 1 1983):346961, 347962	G47 (Edition 1 1983):346962, 347963

SCHEDULE 12: COASTAL MARINE AREA BOUNDARIES

Water body	Description of mouth and boundary *	Mouth grid reference	Boundary grid reference
47. Tautuku River	The “mouth” where the Fleming River enters, the “boundary” at the constriction upstream.	G47 (Edition 1 1983):346962, 347961	G47 (Edition 1 1983):345960, 346961
48. Hukihuki Creek	The “mouth” where it enters the Waipati estuary, the “boundary” five times the width of the mouth upstream.	G47 (Edition 1 1983):291927, 292926	G47 (Edition 1 1983):293928, 294927
49. Waipati River	The “mouth” where it enters Waipati estuary, the “boundary” five times the width of the mouth upstream.	G47 (Edition 1 1983):284925, 294924	G47 (Edition 1 1983):281924, 291924

* Taken from the NZMS 260 series of 1:50,000 scale maps.

SCHEDULE 12: COASTAL MARINE AREA BOUNDARIES



31 Taieri River



32 "Sawmill Road" Creek



33 Akatore Creek



34 Bull Creek



35 Tokomairiro Stream



36 Wangaloa Creek

SCHEDULE 12: COASTAL MARINE AREA BOUNDARIES



37 Washpool Creek



38 Clutha River/Mata-Au – Matau Branch



39 Clutha River/Mata-Au – Koau Branch



40 Karoro Creek



41 Nugget Stream



42 Owaka River

SCHEDULE 12: COASTAL MARINE AREA BOUNDARIES



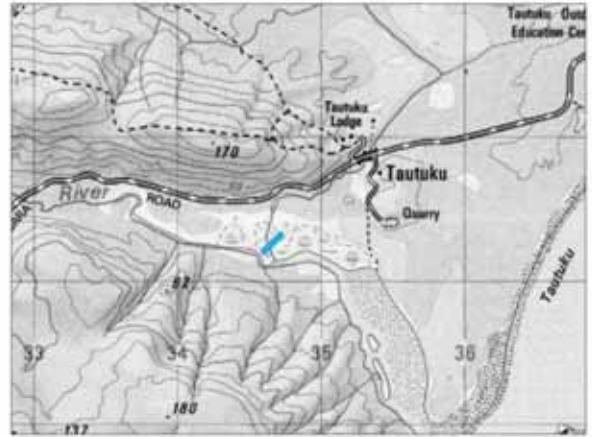
43 Catlins River



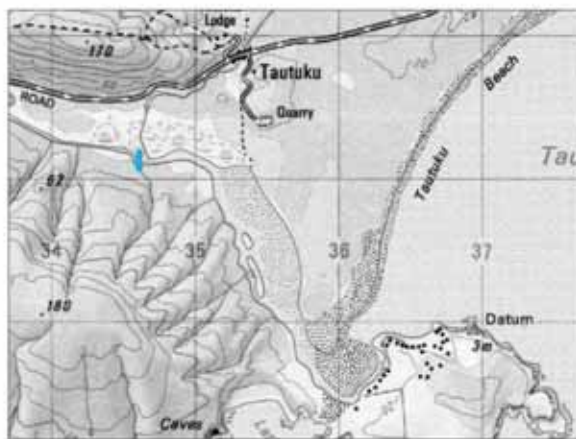
44 Macleannan River



45 Tahakopa River



46 Fleming River

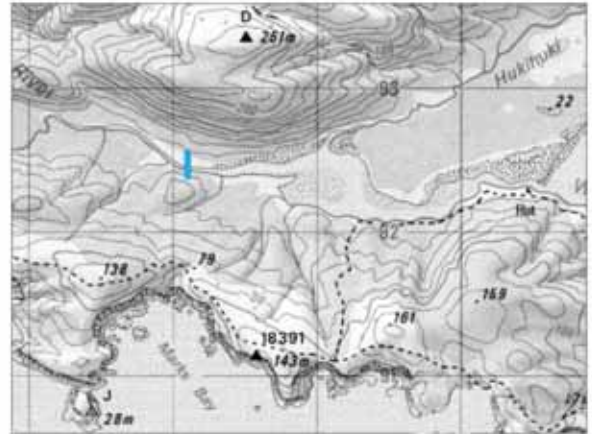


47 Tautuku River



48 Hukihuki Creek

SCHEDULE 12: COASTAL MARINE AREA BOUNDARIES



49 Waipati River

SCHEDULE 13: TRANSITIONAL PROVISIONS REPEALED

13 Schedule of transitional provisions repealed by this Regional Plan: Water

The Otago Regional Council had an existing Regional Plan for Otago (commonly referred to as the Transitional Regional Plan), constituted by Section 368 of the Resource Management Act 1991. The Transitional Regional Plan was made up of notices, authorisations, bylaws, determinations, and resolutions in operation at the time of the enactment of the Resource Management Act (1 October 1991). These instruments were deemed to form rules in the Transitional Regional Plan, some of which related to the management of Otago's water bodies.

This Plan deletes the provisions of the Transitional Regional Plan relating to water management within Otago, as identified in this schedule.

Repealed provision of Transitional Regional Plan	Regional Plan: Water provision replacing
Local Water Conservation (Lake Tuakitoto) Notice 1991: 3 "Regionally Significant Features"	Schedule 1A; Schedule 9.
Local Water Conservation (Lake Tuakitoto) Notice 1991: 4 "Minimum Lake Level"	Policy 6.5.1; Rules 12.1.1.1 and 12.3.1.4.
Local Water Conservation (Lake Tuakitoto) Notice 1991: 5.(1) "Water Rights and General Authorisations"	Policy 5.4.2.
Local Water Conservation (Lake Tuakitoto) Notice 1991: 5.(2) "Water Rights and General Authorisations"	No equivalent provision.
Local Water Conservation (Lake Tuakitoto) Notice 1991: 5.(3) "Water Rights and General Authorisations"	No equivalent provision.
Local Water Conservation (Lake Tuakitoto) Notice 1991: 6 "Limit of Notice"	Rule 12.1.2.1; covered by Section 14(3) of the Resource Management Act 1991.
Local Water Conservation (Pomahaka River and tributaries, and Lower Clutha River) Notice 1989: 3 "Regionally Significant Features"	Schedule 1A.
Local Water Conservation (Pomahaka River and tributaries, and Lower Clutha River) Notice 1989: 4 "Right to dam not to be granted"	Rule 12.3.1.3; Schedule 6.
Local Water Conservation (Pomahaka River and tributaries, and Lower Clutha River) Notice 1989: 5 "Water Rights (General):-(1)"	Policy 5.4.2.
Local Water Conservation (Pomahaka River and tributaries, and Lower Clutha River) Notice 1989: 5 "Water Rights (General):-(2)"	No equivalent provision.
Local Water Conservation (Pomahaka River and tributaries, and Lower Clutha River) Notice 1989: 5 "Water Rights (General):-(3)"	No equivalent provision.
Local Water Conservation (Pomahaka River and tributaries, and Lower Clutha River) Notice 1989: 6 "Limit of Notice"	Rule 12.1.2.1; covered by Section 14(3) of the Resource Management Act 1991.
Record of Determination of Appeal: Kakanui River minimum flow 4 September 1991	Schedule 2; Policies 6.4.2 and 6.4.3; Rule 12.1.4.3.
Otago Catchment Board and Regional Water Board, General Authorisations 1988:	
General Authorisation 1: "Minor Agricultural Uses"	Rules 12.1.2.2 to 12.1.2.5 and 12.2.2.2.
General Authorisation 2: "Irrigation Scheme Distribution"	Rules 12.1.4.1, 12.2.2.2, 12.11.2.1 and 12.11.2.3.

SCHEDULE 13: TRANSITIONAL PROVISIONS REPEALED

Repealed provision of Transitional Regional Plan	Regional Plan: Water provision replacing
General Authorisation 3: "School Supply"	Rules 12.1.2.2 to 12.1.2.5 and 12.2.2.2.
General Authorisation 4: "Spray Mixing"	Rules 12.1.2.2 to 12.1.2.5 and 12.2.2.2.
General Authorisation 5: "Earthworks"	Rules 12.1.2.2 to 12.1.2.5 and 12.2.2.2.
General Authorisation 6: "Septic Tank Effluent"	Rules 12.6.1.3 and 12.6.1.4.
General Authorisation 7: "Tracer Dye Discharge"	Rule 12.11.3.1.
General Authorisation 8: "Swimming Pool Discharge"	Rule 12.11.2.1.
General Authorisation 9: "Prospecting and Casual Mining"	Rules 12.1.2.2 to 12.1.2.5, 12.2.2.2, and 12.11.2.3.
General Authorisation 10: "Stormwater/ Drainage Discharges"	Rules 12.1.2.6, 12.3.2.2, 12.4.1.1, 12.4.1.2 and 12.5.1.1.
General Authorisation 11: "Herbicides"	Rules 12.7.1.1 to 12.7.1.4.
General Authorisation 12: "Drilling"	Rules 12.1.2.2 to 12.1.2.5, 12.2.2.2, 12.2.2.3 and 12.9.1.1.
General Authorisation 13: "Minor Dams"	Rule 12.3.2.1.
General Authorisation 14: "Farm Wastes Disposal"	Rules 12.8.1.2 to 12.8.1.4.
General Authorisation 15: "Incidental Damming and Diversion"	Rules 12.3.2.1 and 12.3.2.3.
General Authorisation 16: "Land Stability Drainage"	Rules 12.1.2.6, 12.3.2.2, 12.5.1.1 and 12.11.2.3.
Otago Catchment Board and Regional Water Board, Bylaw 1988:	
Clause 1, "General", except as it relates to Section 3	No equivalent provision
Clause 2.1, "Maintenance of watercourses and defences against water"	No equivalent provision
Clause 2.2, "Crossings"	Rules under 13.1 to 13.3, 13.5 (as it applies to the bed of a lake or river); Rules under 14.3 and 14.4 (as it applies to land outside of the bed of a lake or river, but within seven metres of the margin of any lake, or of the top of the bank of any river), otherwise no equivalent provision.
Clause 2.3, "Alteration to Watercourse"	Rules under 13.4 and 13.5 (as it applies to the bed of a lake or river), otherwise no equivalent provision.
Clause 2.4, "Construction of a defence against water"	Rules under 13.2 and 13.3 (as it applies to the bed of a lake or river); Rules under 14.3 (as it applies to land outside of the bed of a lake or river).
Clause 2.5, "Removal of shingle, sand, or other material"	Rules under 13.5 (as it applies to the bed of a lake or river), otherwise no equivalent provision.
Clause 2.6, "Vegetation"	Rules under 13.6 (as it applies to the bed of a lake or river), otherwise no equivalent provision.
Clause 2.7, "Obstructions and impairment of efficiency": 2.7.1	Rules under 12.3; and 13.1 to 13.6, (as it applies to the bed of a lake or river), otherwise no equivalent provision; Rules under 14.3 and 14.4 (as it applies to land outside of the bed of a lake or river, but within seven metres of the margin of any lake, or of the top of the bank of any river), otherwise no equivalent provision.
Clause 2.7, "Obstructions and impairment of efficiency": 2.7.2	Rules under 13.2 (as it applies to the bed of a lake or river); Rules under 14.4 (as it applies to land outside of the bed of a lake or river, but within seven metres of the margin of any lake, or of the top

SCHEDULE 13: TRANSITIONAL PROVISIONS REPEALED

Repealed provision of Transitional Regional Plan	Regional Plan: Water provision replacing
	of the bank of any river), otherwise no equivalent provision.
Clause 2.7, "Obstructions and impairment of efficiency": 2.7.3	Rules under 13.5 (as it applies to the bed of a lake or river), otherwise no equivalent provision; Rules under 14.3 and 14.4 (as it applies to land outside of the bed of a lake or river, but within seven metres of the margin of any lake, or of the top of the bank of any river), otherwise no equivalent provision.
Clause 2.7, "Obstructions and impairment of efficiency": 2.7.4	Rules under 13.5 (as it applies to the bed of a lake or river), otherwise no equivalent provision; Rules under 14.3 and 14.4 (as it applies to land outside of the bed of a lake or river, but within seven metres of the margin of any lake, or of the top of the bank of any river), otherwise no equivalent provision.
Clause 2.8, "Access, damage etc."	No equivalent provision.
Clause 4, "Dams": 4.1, "Construction and alteration"	Rules under 12.3, 13.2 and 13.3.
Clause 4, "Dams": 4.2, "Maintenance and removal"	Rules under 13.3 and 13.4.
Clause 5, "Underground water": 5.1 to 5.7	Rules under 12.2 and 14.1.
Clause 5, "Underground water": 5.8, "Control of pile driving, dredging etc"	As it applies to the bed of a lake or river, Rules under 13.5. Rules under 14.2.
Clause 5, "Underground water": 5.9, "Pollution of underground water": 5.9.1	Rules under 12.4 to 12.13.
Clause 5, "Underground water": 5.9, "Pollution of underground water": 5.9.2	Rules under 14.1 and 14.2.
First Schedule	No equivalent provision.
Second Schedule	No equivalent provision.
Fifth Schedule	No equivalent provision.
Sixth Schedule	No equivalent provision.
Eighth Schedule	No equivalent provision.
Waitaki Catchment Board and Regional Water Board, Bylaw Confirming Resolution, Hilderthorpe Floodway Bylaw 1988	
Clauses 1 to 10	No equivalent provision
Taieri River Trust Bylaw No.1 1960	
Clauses 1 to 30	No equivalent provision

SCHEDULE 14: [REPEALED]

14 *[Repealed – 1 March 2012]*

SCHEDULE 15: GOOD QUALITY WATER

15 Schedule of characteristics and numerical limits and targets for good quality water in Otago lakes and rivers

Table 15.1 Characteristics indicative of good quality water

Characteristic	Description	Contaminant effect
Clarity	When standing in knee-deep water, the bed is easily and clearly seen.	Sediment reduces the clarity of water, and has an adverse effect on freshwater fish and invertebrate habitat.
Colour	Water-colour is not altered by contamination. Some rivers have natural colour such as tannin-stain.	A change in colour can be indicative of contamination by sediment or organic matter, linked to potentially high concentrations of DRP, NNN, ammoniacal nitrogen or <i>E coli</i> .
Sediment	Riffles and runs are free of obvious clay and silt deposits. Walking across a riffle or run should not produce an obvious plume. Some rivers are naturally high in sediment.	Sediment affects the colour of water, and has an adverse effect on freshwater fish and invertebrate habitat, and can result in high concentrations of phosphorus, and allow <i>E coli</i> to persist.
Smell	Water is odourless.	Smell can be indicative of contamination from a source high in ammoniacal nitrogen or <i>E coli</i> or the decay of excessive amounts of algae which limits people's opportunity to appreciate water.
Algae	Filamentous algae in rivers should cover less than 30% of the river bed. Floating algae occurring in lakes and rivers should not reduce water clarity. Algal growth in rivers or lakes should not cause slime on the surface of the water.	Excessive nitrogen and phosphorus contribute to algal growth which has an adverse effect on freshwater fish and invertebrate habitat, amenity and recreation values, and angling opportunities.
Bank appearance	Functioning riparian margins: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Vegetation is healthy. ▪ Banks are stable. ▪ No obvious livestock disturbance. 	Healthy riparian margins mitigate sediment and nutrient discharges, and provide habitat for invertebrates.

SCHEDULE 15: GOOD QUALITY WATER

Table 15.2 Receiving water numerical limits and targets for achieving good quality water

The limits for Groups 1, 2 and 3 are achieved when 80% of samples collected at a site, when flows are at or below median flow, over a rolling 5-year period, meet or are better than the limits in Schedule 15.

A target date of 31 March 2025 is set when the contaminant concentration does not meet the limit as at 31 March 2012.

Table 15.2.1: Receiving Water Group 1

	Nitrate-nitrite nitrogen	Dissolved reactive phosphorus	Ammoniacal nitrogen	<i>Escherichia coli</i>	Turbidity
	0.444 mg/l	0.026 mg/l	0.1 mg/l	260 cfu/100 ml	5 NTU
Catlins	31 March 2025	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2025
Careys Creek	31 March 2012				
Kaikorai	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2025	31 March 2012
Leith	31 March 2025	31 March 2025	31 March 2012	31 March 2025	31 March 2012
Mokoreta (within Otago)	31 March 2025	31 March 2025	31 March 2012	31 March 2025	31 March 2012
Owaka	31 March 2025	31 March 2025	31 March 2012	31 March 2025	31 March 2025
Pomahaka , downstream of Glenken	31 March 2025	31 March 2025	31 March 2012	31 March 2025	31 March 2025
Tahakopa	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2025	31 March 2025
Tokomairiro	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2025	31 March 2012
Tuapeka	31 March 2025	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2012
Waitahuna	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2025	31 March 2012
Waitati	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2025	31 March 2012
Waiwera	31 March 2025	31 March 2025	31 March 2012	31 March 2025	31 March 2012
Any unlisted tributary on the true right bank of the Clutha/Mata-Au , south of Judge Creek	31 March 2012				
Any unlisted tributary on the true left bank of the Clutha/Mata-Au , south of the Tuapeka catchment					
Any unlisted catchment that discharges to the coast , south of Taieri Mouth					

SCHEDULE 15: GOOD QUALITY WATER

Table 15.2.2: Receiving Water Group 2

	Nitrate-nitrite nitrogen	Dissolved reactive phosphorus	Ammoniacal nitrogen	<i>Escherichia coli</i>	Turbidity
	0.075 mg/l	0.01 mg/l	0.1 mg/l	260 cfu/100 ml	5 NTU
Cardrona	31 March 2012				
Clutha/Mata-Au and any unlisted tributary (Luggate to mouth, including Lake Roxburgh, and excluding tributaries described in Group 1)	31 March 2025	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2025
Fraser	31 March 2012				
Kakanui	31 March 2025	31 March 2025	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2012
Kawarau downstream of the Shotover confluence	31 March 2025	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2012
Lake Dunstan	31 March 2012				
Lindis	31 March 2025	31 March 2025	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2012
Luggate	31 March 2012				
Manuherikia	31 March 2012	31 March 2025	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2012
Mill Creek (tributary to Lake Hayes)	31 March 2025	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2012
Pomahaka , upstream of Glenken	31 March 2012				
Shag	31 March 2025	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2012
Shotover	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	Exempt
Taieri	31 March 2025	31 March 2025	31 March 2012	31 March 2025	31 March 2025
Trotters	31 March 2025	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2012
Waianakarua	31 March 2025	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2012
Waikouaiti	31 March 2012				
Waipori	31 March 2012				
Waitaki tributaries within Otago	31 March 2025	31 March 2025	31 March 2012	31 March 2025	31 March 2012
Any unlisted catchment that discharges to the coast, north of Taieri Mouth	31 March 2012				

SCHEDULE 15: GOOD QUALITY WATER

Table 15.2.3: Receiving Water Group 3

	Nitrate-nitrite nitrogen	Dissolved reactive phosphorus	Ammoniacal nitrogen	<i>Escherichia coli</i>	Turbidity
	0.075 mg/l	0.005 mg/l	0.01 mg/l	50 cfu/100 ml	3 NTU
Clutha/Mata-Au, above Luggate	31 March 2012				
Dart	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	Exempt
Kawarau, upstream of the Shotover confluence	31 March 2012				
Matukituki	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	Exempt
Tributaries to Lakes Hawea, Wakatipu, & Wanaka	31 March 2012				

The limits for Groups 4 and 5 are achieved when 80% of samples collected at a site, over a rolling 5-year period, meet or are better than the limits in Schedule 15.

A target date of 31 March 2025 is set when the contaminant concentration does not meet the limit as at 31 March 2012.

Table 15.2.4: Receiving Water Group 4

	Total nitrogen	Total phosphorus	Ammoniacal nitrogen	<i>Escherichia coli</i>	Turbidity
	0.55 mg/l	0.033 mg/l	0.1 mg/l	126 cfu/100 ml	5 NTU
Lake Hayes	31 March 2012	31 March 2025	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2012
Lake Johnson	31 March 2025	31 March 2025	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2012
Lake Onslow	31 March 2012	31 March 2025	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2025
Lake Tuakitoto	31 March 2025	31 March 2025	31 March 2012	31 March 2025	31 March 2025
Lake Waipori & Waihola	31 March 2025	31 March 2025	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2025

Table 15.2.5: Receiving Water Group 5

	Total Nitrogen	Total Phosphorus	Ammoniacal nitrogen	<i>Escherichia coli</i> ³	Turbidity
	0.1 mg/l	0.005mg/l	0.01 mg/l	10 cfu/100 ml	3 NTU
Lake Hawea	31 March 2012				
Lake Wakatipu	31 March 2012	31 March 2025	31 March 2012	31 March 2012	31 March 2012
Lake Wanaka	31 March 2012				

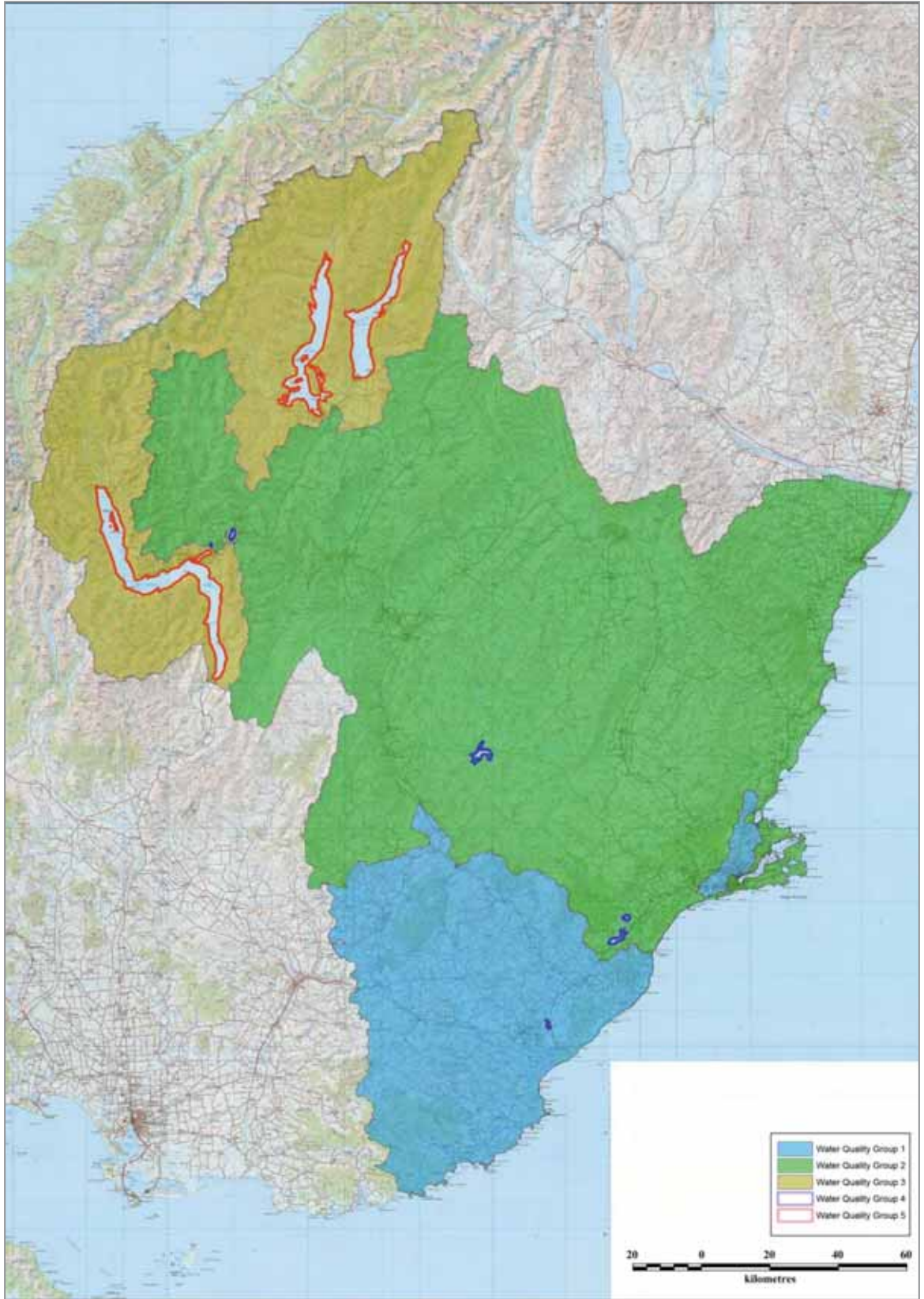
mg/l = milligrams per litre

cfu/100 ml = colony-forming units per 100 millilitres

NTU = nephelometric turbidity units

SCHEDULE 15: GOOD QUALITY WATER

Map 15.1 Receiving Water Groups



SCHEDULE 15: GOOD QUALITY WATER

Table 15.3 Aquifer Concentration Limits

Aquifer/Zone	Aquifer N concentration limit (mg/l)	Reason for Limit
*	*	*

* To be populated following aquifer studies

SCHEDULE 16: DISCHARGE THRESHOLDS

16 Schedule of permitted activity discharge thresholds for water quality

Schedule 16 describes the thresholds that apply to discharges permitted under Rule 12.C.1.1A in the catchments of each discharge threshold area. Discharge Threshold Areas 1 and 2 catchments are shown on the J-series Maps.

16A Permitted activity discharge thresholds for water quality by discharge threshold area

Discharge Threshold Area 1 Catchments	Nitrate-nitrite nitrogen	Dissolved reactive phosphorus	Ammoniacal nitrogen	<i>Escherichia coli</i>
Timeframe	1 April 2020			
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Catlins ▪ Careys Creek ▪ Kaikorai ▪ Leith ▪ Mokoreta (within Otago) ▪ Owaka ▪ Pomahaka, downstream of Glenken ▪ Tahakopa ▪ Tokomairiro ▪ Tuapeka ▪ Waitahuna ▪ Waitati ▪ Waiwera ▪ Any unlisted tributary on the true right bank of the Clutha/Mata-Au, south of Judge Creek ▪ Any unlisted tributary on the true left bank of the Clutha/Mata-Au, south of the Tuapeka ▪ Any unlisted catchment that discharges to the coast, south of Taieri Mouth 	3.6 mg/l	0.045 mg/l	0.2 mg/l	550 cfu/100 ml

SCHEDULE 16: DISCHARGE THRESHOLDS

Discharge Threshold Area 2 Catchments	Nitrate-nitrite nitrogen	Dissolved reactive phosphorus	Ammoniacal nitrogen	<i>Escherichia coli</i>
Timeframe	1 April 2020			
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Cardrona ▪ Clutha/Mata-Au (above Luggate) ▪ Clutha/Mata-Au and any unlisted tributary (Luggate to mouth, including Lake Roxburgh, and excluding tributaries described in Discharge Threshold Catchment Area 1) ▪ Fraser ▪ Kakanui ▪ Kawarau ▪ Lake Dunstan ▪ Lake Hayes ▪ Lake Hawea and any tributary ▪ Lake Johnson ▪ Lake Onslow ▪ Lake Tuakitoto ▪ Lake Waipori & Waihola ▪ Lake Wakatipu and any tributary ▪ Lake Wanaka and any tributary ▪ Lindis ▪ Luggate ▪ Manuherikia ▪ Mill Creek (tributary to Lake Hayes) ▪ Pomahaka, upstream of Glenken ▪ Shag ▪ Shotover ▪ Taieri ▪ Trotters ▪ Waianakarua ▪ Waikouaiti ▪ Waipori ▪ Waitaki tributaries within Otago ▪ Any unlisted catchment that discharges to the coast, north of Taieri Mouth 	1.0 mg/l	0.035 mg/l	0.2 mg/l	550 cfu/100 ml

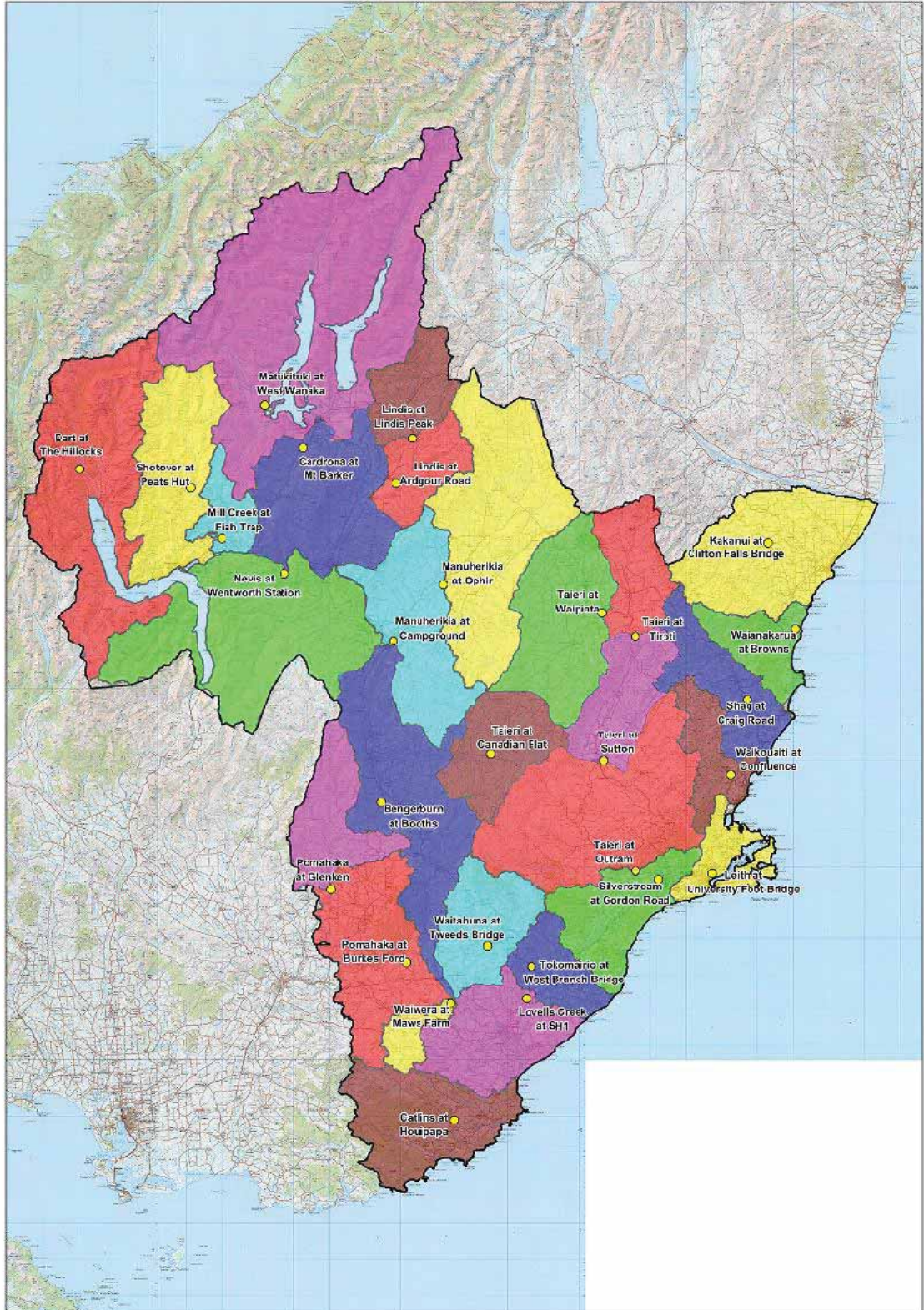
mg/l = milligrams per litre

cfu/100 ml = colony-forming units per 100 millilitres

SCHEDULE 16: DISCHARGE THRESHOLDS

16B Representative flow monitoring sites and reference flows

Map 16B Representative flow monitoring sites for every part of Otago
 Representative flow monitoring sites are shown on the Water Info website (<http://water.orc.govt.nz/WaterInfo/Default.aspx>).



SCHEDULE 16: DISCHARGE THRESHOLDS

Table 16B Reference flows at each representative flow monitoring site

Reference flows are fixed and have been calculated using median flow data from 01/01/2007 to 01/01/2013. River flows for Otago are available on the Water Info website (<http://water.orc.govt.nz/WaterInfo/Default.aspx>).

Monitoring Flow Site	Reference flow (cumecs)
Bengerburn at Booths	0.37
Cardrona at Mt Barker	1.95
Catlins at Houipapa	2.34
Dart at The Hillocks	51.49
Kakanui at Clifton Falls Bridge	1.29
Leith at University Foot Bridge	0.34
Lindis at Ardgour Road	3.50
Lindis at Lindis Peak	3.51
Lovells Creek at SH1	0.14
Manuherikia at Campground	11.60
Manuherikia at Ophir	8.01
Matukituki at West Wanaka	44.99
Mill Creek at Fish Trap	0.35
Nevis at Wentworth Station	7.25
Pomahaka at Burkes Ford	15.48
Pomahaka at Glenken	7.00
Shag at Craig Road	0.65
Shotover at Peats	18.12
Silverstream at Gordon Road	0.30
Taieri at Canadian Flat	2.45
Taieri at Outram	15.86
Taieri at Sutton	10.52
Taieri at Tiroiti	7.88
Taieri at Waipiata	6.02
Tokomairiro at West Branch Bridge	0.44
Waiakarua at Browns	0.78
Waikouaiti at Confluence	1.34
Waitahuna at Tweeds Bridge	1.55
Waiwera at Maws Farm	1.58

SCHEDULE 17: RULES APPLYING TO PLANTATION
FORESTRY IN OTAGO**17 Schedule of rules applying to plantation forestry in Otago**

The Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Plantation Forestry) Regulations 2017 (NES-PF) came into effect on 1 May 2018. The regulation set out rules for core plantation forestry activities and apply to any forest larger than one hectare, planted specifically for commercial activities and harvest. In general, the standards prevail over rules in regional and district plans, however, in some cases stricter rules in this Plan may apply.

The standards are online here:

<http://www.legislation.govt.nz/regulation/public/2017/0174/latest/whole.html>¹

In this Plan, stricter rules apply that give effect to Objective A1 of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management: *To safeguard the life-supporting capacity, ecosystem processes and indigenous species including their associated ecosystems of fresh water, in sustainably managing the use and development of land, and of discharges of contaminants.*

Stricter Water Plan rules are applied:

- In accordance with Regulation 6 of the NES-PF;
- To achieve Objective 7.A.2 in the Water Plan, in accordance with Policy 7.B.2 in the Water Plan; and
- In particular, to protect indigenous non-migratory fish such as galaxiid species, which are classified as threatened and are particularly vulnerable to habitat disturbance and sedimentation.

For this reason, some rules in sections 12.C and 13.5 of this Plan prevail over the NES-PF in accordance with Section 43A(1) of the RMA.

A summary of the rules that apply to plantation forestry in Otago is in Table 17.1 below.

¹ Link to *Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Plantation Forestry) Regulations 2017*, retrieved 29 March 2018.

SCHEDULE 17: RULES APPLYING TO PLANTATION
FORESTRY IN OTAGO

Table 17.1 Rules for Plantation Forestry in Otago

National Environmental Standards for Plantation Forestry (Part 2)	Regional Plan: Water for Otago
Subpart 1 – Afforestation All regulations apply	Not applicable.
Subpart 8 – Replanting All regulations apply	
Subpart 2 – Pruning and thinning to waste All regulations apply	Chapter 12: Rules Water Take, Use & Management 12.C Other discharges 12.C.1 Permitted activities: No resource consent required 12.C.1.1 (d) (e) (f), excluding (iii) 12.C.2 Restricted discretionary activities: Resource consent required 12.C.2.1 12.C.2.2 12.C.2.4 12.C.3 Discretionary activities: Resource consent required 12.C.3.2
Subpart 3 – Earthworks All regulations apply, except 26 replaced (see opposite and 13.5 rules below in relation to ephemeral rivers)	
Subpart 5 – Forest quarrying All regulations apply, except 56 (1) replaced (see opposite)	
Subpart 6 – Harvesting All regulations apply, except 65 replaced (see opposite).	
Subpart 7 – Mechanical land preparation All regulations apply, except 74 (6) replaced (see opposite)	
Subpart 9 – Ancillary activities All regulations apply, except 90 replaced (see opposite)	

Table continues next page.

SCHEDULE 17: RULES APPLYING TO PLANTATION
FORESTRY IN OTAGO

Table 17.1 Rules for Plantation Forestry in Otago *continued*

National Environmental Standards for Plantation Forestry (Part 2)	Regional Plan: Water for Otago
<p>Subpart 3 – Earthworks</p> <p>All regulations apply (except 26 replaced, see above). In addition to 28(2), 13.5.3.1 rule opposite also applies for ephemeral flow paths.</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">Chapter 13: Rules: Land Use on Lake or River Beds or Regionally Significant Wetlands</p> <p>13.5 Alteration of the bed of a lake or river, or of a Regionally Significant Wetland</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">13.5.1 Permitted activities: No resource consent required.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">13.5.1.1 (g)</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">13.5.3 Discretionary activities: Resource consent required</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">13.5.3.1</p>
<p>Subpart 4 – River Crossings</p> <p>All regulations apply. In addition to 44, 13.5.1.1(g) rule opposite applies, if this rule cannot be met then 13.5.3.1 applies.</p>	
<p>Subpart 6 – Harvesting</p> <p>All regulations apply. In addition to 68(3), rule 13.5.3.1 opposite applies if logs are to be dragged through streams less than 3 metres wide.</p>	
<p>Subpart 9 – Ancillary activities</p> <p>All regulations apply. In addition to 89, 13.5.1.1(g) rule opposite applies, if this rule cannot be met then 13.5.3.1 applies.</p>	
<p>Subpart 10 – General provisions</p> <p>All regulations apply. In addition to 97, rule 13.5.3.1 opposite also applies to any bed disturbance outside fish spawning seasons as defined by the Fish Spawning Indicator.²</p>	

² This is an online mapping tool developed by the Ministry for Primary Industries, which can be found on its website: <https://www.mpi.govt.nz/growing-and-harvesting/forestry/national-environmental-standards-for-plantation-forestry/fish-spawning-indicator/>

21

Glossary

G L O S S A R Y

Terms marked with an asterisk * are terms defined by the Resource Management Act 1991.

In this Plan, the spelling of Māori words using ng and k is interchangeable (for example Ngāi Tahu and Kāi Tahu).

Abandoned structure	A structure that is no longer required or utilised for the purpose for which it was erected or placed.
Access strip*	Means a strip of land created by the registration of an easement in accordance with Section 237B (of the Resource Management Act 1991) for the purpose of allowing public access to or along any river, or lake, or the coast, or to any esplanade reserve, esplanade strip, other reserve, or land owned by the local authority or by the Crown (but excluding all land held for a public work except land held, administered or managed under the Conservation Act 1987 and the Acts named in the First Schedule to that Act).
Adverse effect	A detrimental effect.
Aerial discharge	The discharge of any agrichemical from any aircraft.
Agricultural and horticultural activities <i>(definition only applies where term is underlined in this Plan)</i>	All activities involved with the primary industries of agriculture and horticulture, including common stock drinking-water schemes, but excludes processing agricultural and horticulture produce.
Agricultural waste	Waste from an agricultural process or premises that is derived from primary agricultural production. This includes animal waste and animal dip material.
Allocation limit	The maximum flow or quantity of water in a water body, which is able to be allocated to resource consents for taking.
Alluvium	Sediment including rock, gravel, sand or silt material deposited by flowing water on floodplains and in lake and river beds, as a result of alluvial processes.
Alteration of the bed	Any bed disturbance, reclamation or deposition.
Amenity values*	Means those natural or physical qualities and characteristics of an area that contribute to people's appreciation of its pleasantness, aesthetic coherence, and cultural and recreational attributes.
Animal waste	Faeces or urine from any animal.
Animal waste system	Includes collection, storage, treatment, disposal or application of liquid or solid animal waste.

Annual renewable yield	<i>[Repealed – 1 March 2012]</i>
Annual volume <i>(definition only applies where term is underlined in this Plan)</i>	The volume of water that can be taken or diverted in any 12-month period.
Anticipated environmental result	The intended result or outcome on the environment as a consequence of implementing the policies and methods.
Any other activities <i>(definition only applies where term is underlined in this Plan)</i>	Activities that are not agricultural and horticultural activities, hydro-electricity generation, industrial and commercial activities, tourism and recreation facilities, or town and community water supplies.
Aquatic plant	Any plant species that grows in water and is either totally or predominantly submerged in water.
Aquifer	A geological formation capable of holding water.
Aquifer compression	A reduction in an aquifer's capacity to hold water.
Archaeological site	Any place in New Zealand that <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) EITHER – <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) Was associated with human activity that occurred before 1900; or (ii) Is the site of the wreck of any vessel where that wreck occurred before 1900; and (b) Is or may be able through investigation by archaeological methods to provide evidence relating to the history of New Zealand. <p>- defined by Section 2 of the Historic Places Act 1993.</p>
Artesian pressure	The pressure of water in a confined aquifer resulting in water level rise above the bottom of the confining layer.
Assessed maximum annual take	The sum of the takes of groundwater as calculated under Method 15.8.3.1
Assimilative capacity	The ability of a water body to assimilate contaminants without adversely affecting the natural and human use values supported by the water body.

G L O S S A R Y

Augmentation	Increasing the supply of available water through the active management of water resources.
Back-flow	The return of water to the source water body, through the device used to take water, including back-siphoning.
Bed*	Means, - <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) In relation to any river- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) For the purposes of esplanade reserves, esplanade strips, and subdivision, the space of land which the waters of the river cover at its annual fullest flow without overtopping its banks: (ii) In all other cases, the space of land which the waters of the river cover at its fullest flow without overtopping its banks; and (b) In relation to any lake, except a lake controlled by artificial means, - <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) For the purposes of esplanade reserves, esplanade strips, and subdivision, the space of land which the waters of the lake cover at its annual highest level without exceeding its margin: (ii) In all other cases, the space of land which the waters of the lake cover at its highest level without exceeding its margin; and (c) In relation to any lake controlled by artificial means, the space of land which the waters of the lake cover at its maximum permitted operating level; and (d) In relation to the sea, the submarine areas covered by the internal waters and the territorial sea.
Bed disturbance	Any activity which affects the bed or bank of a water body and includes any excavation, dredging, drilling, tunnelling, and any widening, deepening or altering of the course of the water body.
Bedform	The topography or shape of the bed of a lake or river.
Bed material	The sand, gravel or other alluvium forming part of the bed of a lake or river.
Benthic invertebrate	An animal without a backbone (e.g. snail, crustacean, worm, insect) living on, under, or within the bed material of a water body.
BOD₅	The quantity of oxygen consumed by microbial and chemical processes over a five day period at 20 degrees.
Bore	Every device or means, including any well or pit, which is drilled or constructed for the purpose of taking groundwater, or which results in groundwater being taken, other than piezometers or other monitoring devices used for water sampling purposes only.

Bore interference	The reduced ability of users in a localised area to take water from a bore, due to the taking of water from another bore, reducing the pressure and/or the level of groundwater.
Bunding	Constructing an embankment or low wall (usually concrete) designed to contain accidental spillage of a stored liquid.
CFU	Colony-Forming Units, an indication of faecal contamination.
Cleanfill	A natural material such as sand, gravel and rock, and such other materials as concrete, brick or demolition products that are free of soluble materials and are therefore not subject to biological or chemical breakdown.
Coastal marine area*	Means the foreshore, seabed, and coastal water, and the air space above the water - <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Of which the seaward boundary is the outer limits of the territorial sea: (b) Of which the landward boundary is the line of mean high water springs, except that where that line crosses a river, the landward boundary at that point shall be whichever is the lesser of - <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) One kilometre upstream from the mouth of the river; or (ii) The point upstream that is calculated by multiplying the width of the river mouth by 5.
Conditions*	In relation to plans and resource consents, includes terms, standards, restrictions, and prohibitions.
Consent authority*	Means a regional council, a territorial authority, or a local authority that is both a regional council and a territorial authority, whose permission is required to carry out an activity for which a resource consent is required under the Resource Management Act 1991.
Conspicuous change in visual clarity	A visual change in water clarity of more than 40%.
Consumptive use	Where a use results in a net loss of water from the water body.
Contact recreation	Recreational activities involving contact with water; either primary (full immersion) or secondary (that which may result in some form of contact with water).
Contaminant*	Includes any substance (including gases, odorous compounds, liquids, solids, and micro-organisms) or energy (excluding noise) or heat, that either by itself or in combination with the same, similar, or other substances, energy or heat - <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) When discharged into water, changes or is likely to change the physical, chemical, or biological condition of water; or

	(b) When discharged onto or into land or into air, changes or is likely to change the physical, chemical, or biological condition of the land or air onto or into which it is discharged.
Contaminated land	Land at which hazardous substances occur at concentrations above background levels and where assessment indicates that that land poses, or is likely to pose, an immediate or long-term hazard to human health or the environment.
Contravene*	Includes fail to comply with.
Controlled activity*	<p>If an activity is described in the Resource Management Act 1991, regulations (including any national environmental standard), a plan, or a proposed plan as a controlled activity, a resource consent is required for the activity and -</p> <p>(a) The consent authority must grant a resource consent (except if Section 106 of the Act applies); and</p> <p>(b) The consent authority's power to impose conditions on the resource consent is restricted to the matters over which control is reserved (whether in its plan or proposed plan, a national environmental standard, or otherwise); and</p> <p>(c) The activity must comply with the requirements, conditions, and permissions, if any, specified in the Act, regulations, plan, or proposed plan.</p>
Controlled lake	A lake where structures are used to manage the quantity of water leaving the lake.
Dam	A structure used or to be used for the damming of any water, or water body.
Datum	The fixed level for basing subsequent level measurements, in this case datum means Otago Metric Datum, which is the Dunedin Vertical Datum (DVD 1958) plus 100 metres.
Deemed permit	A mining privilege in respect of water (see Appendix 2).
Defence against water	Any dam, weir, bank, carriageway, groyne, or reservoir, and any structure or appliance of any kind which has or may have the effect of stopping, diverting, controlling, restricting, or otherwise regulating the flow or spread or subsidence, in or out of a water body, of water including flood waters, which is specifically established for the purpose of flood hazard mitigation.
Deposition	The deposit of any substance, other than water or waterborne contaminants (discharge), or fill material (reclamation).
Discharge*	Includes emit, deposit, and allow to escape.

Discretionary activity*	<p>If an activity is described in the Resource Management Act 1991, regulations (including any national environmental standard), a plan, or a proposed plan as a discretionary activity, a resource consent is required for the activity and -</p> <p>(a) The consent authority may decline the consent or grant the consent with or without conditions; and</p> <p>(b) If granted, the activity must comply with the requirements, conditions, and permissions, if any, specified in the Act, regulations, plan, or proposed plan.</p>
Disposal field	That part of a constructed on-site waste water treatment system where the effluent is discharged to land.
District plan*	<p>(a) Means an operative plan approved by a territorial authority under Schedule 1 of the Resource Management Act 1991; and</p> <p>(b) Includes all operative changes to the plan (whether arising from a review or otherwise).</p>
Divert	In relation to the diversion of water, is the process of redirecting the flow of water from its existing course to another.
Down-hole pump test	A test conducted to determine aquifer or bore characteristics.
Drain	Artificial channel or subsurface conduit (e.g. mole drain, tile drain or drainage tunnel) constructed to either lower the watertable or divert water, excluding a water race.
Drainage water	Water collected by and discharged from a drain.
Drilling	<p>The process of creating a hole in the ground with a drill to a depth greater than 1 metre. This does not include hole creation for the purpose of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The construction of a bore; • The erection of fences or overhead utilities; or • The placement of building foundations.
Drill hole	The hole created by drilling.
Drinking-water supply reservoir	A reservoir which is used primarily for the purpose of storing a supply of drinking water.
Ecosystem	A dynamic complex of plant, animal and micro-organism communities and their non-living environment interacting as a functional unit.
Effect*	<p>In the Resource Management Act 1991, unless the context otherwise requires, the term effect includes -</p> <p>(a) Any positive or adverse effect; and</p>

- (b) Any temporary or permanent effect; and
 - (c) Any past, present, or future effect; and
 - (d) Any cumulative effect which arises over time or in combination with other effects -
regardless of the scale, intensity, duration, or frequency of the effect, and also includes -
 - (e) Any potential effect of high probability; and
 - (f) Any potential effect of low probability which has a high potential impact.
- Effluent** Liquid waste, including liquid leaching from solid waste.
- Enforcement order*** Means an order made under Section 319 of the Resource Management Act 1991 for any purposes set out in Section 314 of the Act; and includes an interim enforcement order made under Section 320 of the Act.
- Environment*** Includes -
- (a) Ecosystems and their constituent parts, including people and communities; and
 - (b) All natural and physical resources; and
 - (c) Amenity values; and
 - (d) The social, economic, aesthetic, and cultural conditions which affect the matters stated in paragraphs (a) to (c) of this definition or which are affected by those matters.
- Environmental flow and level regimes** *(definition only applies where term is underlined in this Plan)* The flow-sharing, allocation limits and minimum flows and levels established by the Water Plan as specified in Rule 12.1.4.4A.
- Erosion** The processes of the wearing away of the land surface (including the land that forms the bed of a lake or river) by natural agents and the transport of the material that results.
- Esplanade reserve*** Means a reserve within the meaning of the Reserves Act 1977 -
- (a) Which is either -
 - (i) A local purpose reserve within the meaning of Section 23 of that Act, if vested in the territorial authority under Section 239 of the Resource Management Act 1991; or
 - (ii) A reserve vested in the Crown or a regional council under Section 237D of the Resource Management Act 1991; and
 - (b) Which is vested in the territorial authority, regional council, or the Crown for a purpose or purposes set out in Section 229 of the Resource Management Act 1991.

Esplanade strip* Means a strip of land created by the registration of an instrument in accordance with Section 232 of the Resource Management Act 1991 for a purpose or purposes set out in Section 229 of the Act.

Excavation over a groundwater protection zone	The digging and removal of a volume of earth material from below the topsoil horizon in excess of 10 cubic metres, or to a depth of greater than 1 metre, but does not include that required for bore construction, or for the erection of fences, overhead utilities or foundations for buildings, or for land cultivation.
Exotic plant	A plant which is not native to New Zealand. These may include introduced plants which have been brought in by accident or design.
Extraction	Removal of material from the lake or river system.
Faecal coliform	A type of bacteria associated with animal excrement that indicates faecal pollution. If the faecal coliform count is high there may be disease-causing organisms present.
Fauna	All the animal life of a given place.
Feed pad	Any confined, uncovered structure, located on production land, which is designed for the purpose of controlled intensive feeding of stock with supplementary feed.
Fertiliser	Any proprietary substance specifically manufactured for use in increasing the nutrient status of land. Excludes compost, effluent or seaweed.
Financial contribution	A contribution as set out in Section 108(9) of the Resource Management Act.
Fisheries and wildlife (<i>definition only applies where term is underlined in this Plan</i>)	Activities relating to the management and enhancement of habitats of fish and indigenous wildlife.
Flood carrying capacity	The capacity of any channel to convey flood waters.
Flooding of any other person's property	Where a discharge of water or contaminants on one property causes inundation on another property.
Flora	All the plant life of a given place.
Flushes	Wet or damp areas of ground where the watertable intersects the land surface. Characterised by the presence of wetland species such as Sphagnum, and a greener, more lush appearance than surrounding vegetation.
Ford	Any modification of the bed to establish a crossing by which any vehicle, livestock, or persons may traverse through any water body.

Galaxias	The genus name of members of the native fish family Galaxiidae, which includes inanga (whitebait) and banded kokopu.
Galaxiid	A member of the native fish family Galaxiidae.
Grassed swale	An open artificial water body or drain with gently-sloping walls of permeable material that conducts water only when the substrate is saturated.
Groundwater	Water that occupies or moves through openings, cavities or spaces in geological formations under the ground.
Groundwater protection zone	An area of land in which land use and water use activities are to be managed to protect the underlying groundwater resource.
Hapu	Sub-tribe, extended whanau.
Hazardous substance	<p>Unless expressly provided otherwise by regulations, any substance -</p> <p>(a) With one or more of the following intrinsic properties:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) Explosiveness: (ii) Flammability: (iii) A capacity to oxidise: (iv) Corrosiveness: (v) Toxicity (including chronic toxicity): (vi) Ecotoxicity, with or without bioaccumulation; or <p>(b) Which on contact with air or water (other than air or water where the temperature or pressure has been artificially increased or decreased) generates a substance with any one or more of the properties specified in paragraph (a) of this definition.</p> <p>- defined by Section 2 of the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996.</p>
Herbicide	Substance toxic to plants and used to kill or control plants.
High degree of naturalness	Retaining characteristics not significantly modified by human beings or non-indigenous plants or animals.
Historic place	Any land (including an archaeological site); or any building or structure (including part of a building or structure); or any combination of land and a building or structure that forms part of the historical and cultural heritage of New Zealand and lies within the territorial limits of New Zealand; and includes anything that is in or fixed to such land.
Hydrological values	The natural processes of an ecosystem in providing regulated water flow and enhanced water quality.

Impervious strata	A layer of soil, rock or other natural material which does not allow the percolation of water.
In-catchment needs (<i>definition only applies where term is underlined in this Plan</i>)	Water requirements of users where the water is taken or diverted for use within the Waitaki catchment.
Indigenous species	A New Zealand native species that is, or is thought to have been, naturally existing within the catchment.
Industrial and commercial activities (<i>definition only applies where term is underlined in this Plan</i>)	Industrial and commercial activities (but excluding hydro-electricity generation) that are not served by a reticulated town and community water supply.
Industrial or trade premises*	Means - <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Any premises used for any industrial or trade purposes; or (b) Any premises used for the storage, transfer, treatment, or disposal of waste materials or for other waste-management purposes, or used for composting organic materials; or (c) Any other premises from which a contaminant is discharged in connection with any industrial or trade process - but does not include any production land. In this plan, the phrase ‘industrial or trade premises’ includes any structure associated with electricity generation.
Industrial or trade process*	Includes every part of a process from the receipt of raw material to the dispatch or use in another process or disposal of any product or waste material, and any intervening storage of the raw material, partly processed matter, or product.
Industrial or trade waste	Waste from an industrial or trade premises, that is derived from an industrial or trade process.
Instantaneous take	All takes of water occurring at a particular time.
Intake structure	The device by which water is taken from a water body.
Intrinsic values*	In relation to ecosystems, means those aspects of ecosystems and their constituent parts which have value in their own right, including - <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Their biological and genetic diversity; and (b) The essential characteristics that determine any ecosystem’s integrity, form, functioning, and resilience.

Issue	A matter of concern to the region's community regarding activities affecting some aspect of natural and physical resources and the environment of the region.
Iwi	Tribe.
Iwi authority*	Means the authority which represents an iwi and which is recognised by that iwi as having authority to do so. (The iwi authority for the Otago region is Te Runanga O Ngai Tahu).
Iwi management plan	A relevant planning document, such as the Kai Tahu Ki Otago Natural Resource Management Plan, recognised by an iwi authority affected by this Plan, to which local authorities shall have regard.
Kai Tahu	Descendants of Tahu, the tribe. The manawhenua of the Otago region. (Also known as Ngai Tahu).
Kāi Tahu or Ngāi Tahu (<i>definition only applies where term is underlined in this Plan</i>)	The collection of individuals who descend from the primary hapū of Waitaha, Ngāti Mamoe, and Ngāi Tahu, namely Kāti Kurī, Kāti Irakehu, Kāti Huirapa, Ngāi Tuahuriri and Kai Te Ruahikihiki.
Kaitiaki	Guardians.
Kaitiakitanga*	Means the exercise of guardianship by the tangata whenua of an area in accordance with tikanga Maori in relation to natural and physical resources; and includes the ethic of stewardship.
Kanakana	The primitive parasitic native fresh water lamprey, <i>Geotria australis</i> .
Kokopu	Native fish species of the Galaxiid family, including banded kokopu (<i>Galaxias fasciatus</i>) and giant kokopu (<i>G. argenteus</i>), sometimes referred to as 'native trout'.
Koura	Native fresh water crayfish of the genus <i>Paranephrops</i> .
Lake Tuakitoto	The variable and more or less continuous body of water commonly known as Lake Tuakitoto, including Robson's Lagoon, situated at and about map reference NZMS260 H46:650370. The shoreline of the lake is defined as the variable extent of surface water, as it is observed at any particular time, whether of natural extent or whether restricted by any floodbank.
Lake*	Means a body of fresh water which is entirely or nearly surrounded by land.
Land*	(a) Includes land covered by water and the air space above land; and (b) In a national environmental standard dealing with a regional council function under Section 30 of the Resource Management

	Act 1991 or a regional rule, does not include the bed of a lake or river; and
	(c) In a national environmental standard dealing with a territorial authority function under Section 31 of the Act or a district rule, includes the surface of water in a lake or river.
Land-based discharge	The discharge of any agrichemical from any thing other than any aircraft.
Land drainage	The removal of water from in or on land.
Landholder	Includes land owner, lessee and occupier.
Landholding	(1) For land subject to the Land Transfer Act 1952, land in: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) A single certificate of title; or (ii) Two or more adjoining certificates of title, with a common occupier. (2) For land not subject to the Land Transfer Act 1952, all contiguous land last acquired under one instrument of conveyance and occupied by a common occupier.
Lawful take of water	Any take under Section 14(3) of the Resource Management Act, any take exercised under Rules 12.1.2.1 to 12.1.2.6, or 12.2.2.1 to 12.2.2.3 of this Plan, any take exercised under the Transitional Regional Plan rule constituted by General Authorisations 1 to 5, 9 and 12, and any take under any resource consent or deemed permit under the Resource Management Act 1991.
Leachate	A liquid contaminant resulting from the liquid being exuded from or percolated through some more-or-less solid matter.
Legal public access	Includes legal roads, marginal strips, esplanade reserves, esplanade strips, access strips and Walkways.
Line	A wire or conductor (including a fibre optic cable) used or intended to be used for telecommunication or transmission of electricity.
Local authority	A term that collectively describes regional councils, city councils, and district councils.
Long-drop toilet	An unlined hole or pit excavated for the disposal of human sewage, which is not subject to any treatment or flushing.
Macro-invertebrate Community Index (MCI)	An index of the proportion of sensitive to tolerant species (designed to assess the effects of nutrient enrichment in stoney streams, but also affected by dissolved oxygen, temperature and physical habitat features), among the community of benthic invertebrates that can be seen with the naked eye (see Appendix 1).

Mahika kai	Places where food is procured or produced, examples in the case of waterborne mahika kai include eels, whitebait, kanakana, kokopu, koura, fresh water mussels, indigenous waterfowl, watercress and raupo.
Main stem	The principal course of a river (i.e. does not include tributaries).
Mana	Authority, influence or prestige.
Manawhenua*	Means customary authority exercised by an iwi or hapu in an identified area.
Margin	Land alongside a river or lake.
Mauri	Life force; for example the mauri of a river is most recognisable when there is abundance of water flow and the associated ecosystems are healthy and plentiful; a most important element in the relationship that Kai Tahu have with the water bodies of Otago.
Maximum allocation limit	The quantity of groundwater as established under Policy 6.4.10A2.
MCI	See Macroinvertebrate Community Index.
Mean annual recharge	The quantity of groundwater recharge as calculated by Schedule 4D.
Mean high water springs	The average line of spring high tide.
Method	The practical action by which a policy is implemented.
Micro hydro-electricity generation <i>(definition only applies where term is underlined in this Plan)</i>	The generation of hydro-electricity not exceeding a capacity of 50 Kilowatts continuous output.
Minimum flow	The flow below which the holder of any resource consent to take water must cease taking water.
Mining privilege	See Appendix 2.
Mixing zone	An area of water associated with a discharge within which any standards or requirements relating to water quality are set aside to enable reasonable mixing to occur. (See Reasonable mixing).
Mouth*	For the purpose of defining the landward boundary of the coastal marine area, means the mouth of a river either -

- (a) As agreed and set between the Minister of Conservation, the regional council, and the appropriate territorial authority in the period between consultation on, and notification of, the proposed regional coastal plan; or
- (b) As declared by the Environment Court under Section 310 of the Resource Management Act 1991 upon application made by the Minister of Conservation, the regional council, or the territorial authority prior to the plan becoming operative, -
- and once so agreed and set or declared shall not be changed in accordance with Schedule 1 of the Act or otherwise varied, altered, questioned, or reviewed in any way until the next review of the regional coastal plan, unless the Minister of Conservation, the regional council, and the appropriate territorial authority agree.
- Natural and human use values** Characteristics of a water body which are important to, or are an essential part of, ecological communities, or are enjoyed or utilised by people and communities. While some of these values are identified in Schedule 1, natural character, amenity values, existing lawful uses, and archaeological sites will be identified on a case-by-case basis.
- Natural and physical resources*** Includes land, water, air, soil, minerals, and energy, all forms of plants and animals (whether native to New Zealand or introduced), and all structures.
- Natural hazard*** Means any atmospheric or earth or water related occurrence (including earthquake, tsunami, erosion, volcanic and geothermal activity, landslip, subsidence, sedimentation, wind, drought, fire, or flooding) the action of which adversely affects or may adversely affect human life, property, or other aspects of the environment.
- Noa** Free from tapu or other restriction.
- Non-biodegradable** Unable to be decomposed by living organisms present in the particular receiving environment.
- Non-complying activity*** If an activity is described in the Resource Management Act 1991, regulations (including a national environmental standard), a plan, or a proposed plan as a non-complying activity, a resource consent is required for the activity and the consent authority may -
- (a) Decline the consent; or
- (b) Grant the consent, with or without conditions, but only if the consent authority is satisfied that the requirements of Section 104D of the Act are met and the activity must comply with the requirements, conditions, and permissions, if any, specified in the Act, regulations, plan, or proposed plan.
- Non-consumptive take **** A take is non-consumptive when:
- (1) The same amount of water is returned to the same water body at or near the location from which it was taken; and

	(2) There is no significant delay between the taking and the returning of the water.
	** as defined in the Resource Management (Measurement and Reporting of Water Takes) Regulations 2010
Non-point source discharge	A discharge of water or contaminant that enters a water body from a diffuse source, such as land runoff or infiltration.
Notified use	Any right in respect of natural water which was notified under Section 21 (2) or 21 (2A) of the Water and Soil Conservation Act 1967 (an 'existing authority' under Section 386(1)(b) of the Resource Management Act 1991).
Objective	The desired result, end state, situation or condition that is aimed for.
Occupier*	Means - <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) The inhabitant occupier of any property; and (b) <i>[Repealed]</i> (c) For the purposes of Section 16 of the Resource Management Act 1991, in relation to any land (including any premises and any coastal marine area), includes any agent, employee, or other person acting or apparently acting in the general management or control of the land, or any plant or machinery on that land.
On-site waste water treatment system	Any system, such as a septic tank, designed to treat household liquid effluent including sewage within the boundary of the property on which the effluent was generated, and includes the treatment system and any attached disposal field.
Open pile(d)	The nature of a structure's supporting piles whereby no significant hindrance to the passage of water or sediment is caused.
Operative*	In relation to a policy statement or plan, or a provision of a policy statement or plan, means that the policy statement, plan, or provision - <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Has become operative - <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) In terms of clause 20 of Schedule 1 of the Resource Management Act 1991; or (ii) Under Section 86F of the Act; and (b) Has not ceased to be operative.
Papatipu Runanga	The Papatipu Runanga and their takiwa for the Otago Region are described in the schedule to the Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu Act 1996.
Percent probability flood	A flood event which has a particular probability of being exceeded in any 12 month period.
Permitted activity*	If an activity is described in the Resource Management Act 1991, regulations (including any national environmental standard), a plan,

or a proposed plan as a permitted activity, a resource consent is not required for the activity if it complies with the requirements, conditions, and permissions, if any, specified in the Act, regulations, plan, or proposed plan.

Person*	Includes the Crown, a corporation sole, and also a body of persons, whether corporate or unincorporate.
Pest plant	Any plant specified as a pest in a pest management strategy written under the Biosecurity Act 1993.
Pesticide	A substance or mixture of substances used to kill or control unwanted species of plants, animals or other organisms.
Policy	The course of action to achieve the objective.
Point source discharge	A discharge of water or contaminant that enters a water body at a definable point, often through a pipe or drain.
Primary allocation	The quantity of water established under Policy 6.4.2.
Production land*	<p>(a) Means any land and auxiliary buildings used for the production (but not processing) of primary products (including agricultural, pastoral, horticultural, and forestry products):</p> <p>(b) Does not include land or auxiliary buildings used or associated with prospecting, exploration, or mining for minerals - and “production” has a corresponding meaning.</p>
Prohibited activity*	<p>If an activity is described in the Resource Management Act 1991, regulations (including a national environmental standard), a plan, or a proposed plan as a prohibited activity, -</p> <p>(a) No application for a resource consent may be made for the activity; and</p> <p>(b) The consent authority must not grant a consent for it.</p>
Proposed plan*	<p>In the Resource Management Act 1991, unless the context otherwise requires, proposed plan -</p> <p>(a) Means a proposed plan, a variation to a proposed plan or change, or a change to a plan proposed by a local authority that has been notified under clause 5 of Schedule 1 but has not become operative in terms of clause 20 of Schedule 1; and</p> <p>(b) Includes a proposed plan or a change to a plan proposed by a person under Part 2 of Schedule 1 that has been adopted by the local authority under clause 25(2)(a) of Schedule 1.</p>
Protective soil mantle	A layer of soil, rock or other natural material which reduces the percolation of water.

Public notice*	<p>(a) Means a notice published in a newspaper circulating in the entire area likely to be affected by the proposal to which the notice relates; and</p> <p>(b) If a local authority also publishes a notice on an Internet site to which the public have free access, includes that notice.</p>
Rahui	Restrictions.
Reasonable mixing	The process where undiluted effluent disperses through receiving waters. Mixing results in a mixing zone where the concentration of contaminants varies from that in the effluent to that of the fully mixed receiving water. Reasonable mixing may be said to have occurred at some point between the point of discharge and the point at which the effluent is completely mixed with the receiving water. Beyond the reasonable mixing zone, the effluent and water mix complies with any water quality standards for the water body.
Reclamation	The permanent infilling of a water body or part of a water body with sand, rock, quarry material, concrete, or other similar material, for any purpose, and includes any embankment or causeway, but does not include any structure above water where that structure is supported by piles, or any deposition of material or infilling that is not permanent.
Regional plan*	<p>(a) Means an operative plan approved by a regional council under Schedule 1 (including all operative changes to the plan (whether arising from a review or otherwise)); and</p> <p>(b) Includes a regional coastal plan.</p>
Regionally Significant Wetland	See Policy 10.4.1A
Regionally significant wetland value	See Policy 10.4.1.
Registered community drinking water supply	A drinking water supply, which is registered under Section 69J of the Health Act and serves a community of more than 25 people for more than 60 days a year.
Registered Historic Place	Any Historic Place registered under Part II of the Historic Places Act 1993.
Residual flow	Refer to Policy 6.4.7.
Resource consent	A consent for an activity as set out in Section 87 of the Resource Management Act 1991; and includes all conditions to which the consent is subject.

Restricted discretionary activity*	<p>If an activity is described in the Resource Management Act 1991, regulations (including any national environmental standard), a plan, or a proposed plan as a restricted discretionary activity, a resource consent is required for the activity and -</p> <p>(a) The consent authority's power to decline a consent, or to grant a consent and to impose conditions on the consent, is restricted to the matters over which discretion is restricted (whether in its plan or proposed plan, a national environmental standard, or otherwise); and</p> <p>(b) The activity must comply with the requirements, conditions, and permissions, if any, specified in the Act, regulations, plan, or proposed plan.</p>
Reticulated system, or reticulation	The means by which water, stormwater, sewage or other waterborne contaminant is collected and delivered prior to discharge.
Riparian vegetation	The terrestrial plants growing on the bed or margin of a water body.
River*	Means a continually or intermittently flowing body of fresh water; and includes a stream and modified watercourse; but does not include any artificial watercourse (including an irrigation canal, water supply race, canal for the supply of water for electricity power generation, and farm drainage canal).
Runanga	Local representative groups or community system of organisation.
Sacrifice paddock	Any paddock which is set aside for the prolonged confinement and the controlled, intensive feeding of stock with supplementary feed, in order to avoid damage to their usual pasture.
Seven-day ("7-day") mean annual low flow	<p>The seven-day low flow in any year is determined by calculating the average flow over seven consecutive days for every seven consecutive day period in the year, and choosing the lowest.</p> <p>When this is done for every year of record, the seven-day mean annual low flow can be determined by adding the lowest seven-day low flows for every year of record and dividing by the number of years in the record.</p>
Small dam	<p>A dam:</p> <p>(a) Where the size of the catchment upstream of the dam is no more than 50 hectares; and</p> <p>(b) where the water stored immediately upstream of the dam is no more than 3 metres deep; and</p> <p>(c) where the volume of water stored by the dam is no more than 20,000 cubic metres.</p>

Soil contamination	Occurs where the discharge of a contaminant reduces the primary productive capacity of soil.
Stand-off pad	Any purpose-built uncovered area, located on production land, for the confinement of stock in order to avoid damage to their usual pasture.
Stormwater	The water running off from any impervious surface such as roads, carparks, roofs, and sealed runways.
Structure*	Means any building, equipment, device, or other facility made by people and which is fixed to land; and includes any raft.
Suction dredging; Suction dredge mining	Any activity utilising a motor, pump, and hose within a river bed.
Sullage	The waste water from sinks, basins, baths, showers and similar appliances, but not including toilet wastes (sometimes referred to as grey water).
Supplementary allocation	A volume of water established under Policies 6.4.9 or 6.4.10 which is able to be taken subject to a supplementary allocation minimum flow set under those policies.
Suspended solids	Particulate matter carried in suspension within water.
Taking	In relation to the taking of water, is the process of extracting the water for any purpose and for any period of time.
Taoka	Treasures.
Tapu	Sacred.
Tarn	Small mountain lake or pool, often formed in a cirque basin.
Technical efficiency <i>(definition only applies where term is underlined in this Plan)</i>	Using a resource in a way that any given output is produced at least cost, including avoiding waste.
Territorial local authority	A term that collectively describes city councils and district councils, but not regional councils.
The Act	The Resource Management Act 1991.
To Dam	In relation to the damming of water, is the process of impounding the water for any purpose and for any period of time, as in a reservoir.

Tourism and recreation facilities <i>(definition only applies where term is underlined in this Plan)</i>	Tourism and recreation facilities that are not served by a reticulated town and community supply, such as hotels, lodges, restaurants and ski fields.
Town and community water supply <i>(definition only applies where term is underlined in this Plan)</i>	Reticulated water supplies servicing urban areas, rural-residential and residential subdivisions including all commercial and industrial premises and schools and other educational facilities located within the reticulated area.
Trace amount of any contaminant	A contaminant is present in a quantity that is incapable of practicable measurement.
Transmissivity	The degree to which an aquifer allows water to pass through it.
Treaty of Waitangi (Te Tiriti o Waitangi)	The same meaning as the word “Treaty” as defined in Section 2 of the Treaty of Waitangi Act 1975.
Upland bogs	A wet or spongy high altitude area of ground chiefly composed of decaying vegetable matter or peat.
Use	<i>[Repealed – 1 March 2012]</i>
Vegetation	Includes any trees, shrubs, plants or grasses.
Vessel	Every description of ship, boat, ferry, or craft used in navigation, whether or not it has any means of propulsion, and regardless of that means; and includes: a barge, lighter, or other like vessel; a hovercraft or other thing deriving full or partial support in the atmosphere from the reactions of air against the surface of the water over which it operates; a submarine or other thing used in navigation whilst totally submerged.
Waahi taoka	Treasured resource; values, sites and resources that are valued and reinforce the special relationship Kai Tahu have with Otago’s water resources.
Waahi tapu	Sacred places; sites, areas and values associated with water bodies that hold spiritual values of importance to Kai Tahu.
Waitaki catchment <i>(definition only applies where term</i>	(a) Means the area of land bounded by watersheds draining into the Waitaki River; and (b) Includes aquifers wholly or partially within that area of land.

is underlined in this Plan)

Walkway	A formal Walkway created under the New Zealand Walkways Act 1975.
Water*	<p>(a) Means water in all its physical forms whether flowing or not and whether over or under the ground:</p> <p>(b) Includes fresh water, coastal water, and geothermal water:</p> <p>(c) Does not include water in any form while in any pipe, tank, or cistern.</p>
Water allocation committee	Refer to Policy 6.4.12.
Water body*	Means fresh water or geothermal water in a river, lake, stream, pond, wetland, or aquifer, or any part thereof, that is not located within the coastal marine area.
Water conservation order*	Has the meaning set out in Section 200 of the Resource Management Act 1991.
“Water Info” phone	The telephone service by which the Otago Regional Council provides frequently-updated information on water body condition including river flows.
Water race	An artificial channel used for conveying water for various uses, but not for the drainage of land.
Water supply values	The existence of a take for human consumption, which people and communities have come to depend upon.
Water user group	Refer to Policy 5.4.12.
Wet bed	That part of the bed of a lake or river which is covered by water.
Wetland*	<p>Includes permanently or intermittently wet areas, shallow water, and land water margins that support a natural ecosystem of plants and animals that are adapted to wet conditions.</p> <p>In this plan, ‘wetland’ excludes any wetland constructed for the purpose of water quality management.</p>
Whanau	Family.
Whanui	Large, extended, broad.

22

Appendices

1 The Macroinvertebrate Community Index

The most widely used and effective form of biological monitoring in streams and rivers is the sampling and analysis of the invertebrate life (aquatic insects, crustaceans, snails, worms etc) living on the bed or amongst aquatic plants. These invertebrates are almost always found in abundance in such habitats, they are easy to collect, and with suitable resources they are easy to identify.

Typically there are 15 to 30 distinct “species” (or taxa) of invertebrates at most stream or river sites. The composition of these communities is dependent on physical habitat characteristics, water quality and biological factors. If physical habitat quality is kept consistent (eg sampling is undertaken in fast-flowing, shallow stony “riffles” rather than slow flowing pools or backwaters) water quality tends to become the factor determining community composition.

Some “tolerant” invertebrate species are able to inhabit degraded waters such as algae-smothered habitats or nutrient enriched or low oxygen waters. Other species are highly sensitive to such conditions and are almost always found in cool, “clean” (low-nutrient), high-oxygen waters.

The fresh water biological index referred to in this Plan (see Policy 7.6.2) is the Macroinvertebrate Community Index (MCI). The MCI was developed for New Zealand stony streams by Dr John Stark in 1985, using a British system (the BMWP Index) which assigned sensitivity scores to particular fresh water invertebrate species. These scores relate to the ability of each species to tolerate nutrient enrichment and associated water quality degradation. The scores range from one (for the most tolerant species) to ten (for the most sensitive species). For example, the “swimming mayfly” has a sensitivity score of 9, while the common sandfly has a sensitivity score of 3.

An MCI value is calculated simply by averaging the sensitivity scores for the species found at one site, and multiplying this average by a scaling factor of 20. A high MCI value (over 100) is generally indicative of good water quality, although it will vary depending upon the river type, as shown in Table 5.

Table 5: MCI ranges for different stream and river habitat types

River type	Habitat quality (MCI score)		
	High quality	Medium quality	Low quality
Stony riffle	100 - 130	80 - 100	60 - 80
Fine sandy/gravelly runs	90 - 110	70 - 90	50 - 70
Weedy/muddy runs/pools	80 - 100	60 - 80	40 - 60

The MCI value can therefore be used to indicate the state of water quality in Otago’s streams and rivers.

The expected MCI scores for the water bodies identified in Policy 7.6.2, as well as the actual observed MCI scores, are shown in Table 5. The expected MCI scores become the target for enhancing water quality in the identified water bodies.

APPENDIX 1: MACROINVERTEBRATE COMMUNITY
INDEX

Table 6: Water bodies with degraded water quality for aquatic habitats.

Water body	Habitat type	Average observed MCI score	Expected MCI score
Hayes Creek	Weedy/muddy runs	67	> 70
Lower Horne Creek	Stony riffle	76	> 80
Lower Kaikorai Stream	Stony riffle	70	> 80
Lower Taieri River	Weedy/muddy pools	69	> 70
Lower Waipori River	Weedy/muddy pools	68	> 70
Lower Tokomairiro River	Weedy/muddy pools	69	> 70
Lower Owaka River	Stony run	76	> 80
Lower Waiareka Creek	Weedy/muddy pools	68	> 70
Lower Kaihiku Stream	Stony riffle	74	> 80
Lower Wairuna River	Stony riffle	79	>80

APPENDIX 2: MINING PRIVILEGES IN RESPECT OF WATER (DEEMED PERMITS)

2 Mining privileges in respect of water (deemed permits)

A number of Otago water bodies are subject to the taking of water through the exercising of mining privileges in respect of water (“mining privileges” for short, but now known as “deemed permits”). Mining privileges were issued under the Mining Act 1926, and earlier mining legislation, and provided for the taking, damming and discharging of water. However, as gold mining declined, this water was increasingly used for irrigation. The Crown acquired a number of the higher priority, significant mining privileges which were being used for irrigation schemes, and these were then disposed of to the community irrigation groups.

Under Section 413 of the Resource Management Act, all mining privileges were deemed to become either a water permit (for the taking or damming of water), or a discharge permit (for the discharge of contaminants) on the same terms and conditions as the original mining privilege. Under Section 415 and 416 of the Act, compensation must be paid for the acquisition of any such deemed permit, or any restriction of its ability to be exercised.

As provided by Section 413(3), deemed permits expire on 1 October 2021, the thirtieth anniversary of the date of commencement of the Act, at which time they will lose their priority and there shall no longer be any liability for compensation as a result of loss or restriction of the rights. After 1 October 2021, resource consent is required in place of a deemed permit to take water and Section 124 of the Act applies.

Deemed permits can, however, be restricted by an abatement notice, enforcement order or by a Water Shortage Direction issued under Section 329 of the Resource Management Act.

2A Water management groups

Water management groups, established in terms of Policy 6.4.12A, provide the opportunity for groups to become more responsible for managing their taking by allowing for individual or shared consents to be managed by the group. Lists 2A.1 and 2A.2 set out the Council's requirements for the approval and features of such groups. The form of the group is not otherwise limited by the Council and the group may also exercise other roles to meet member needs.

2A.1 List of criteria for approval of a water management group

For a group to be approved by the Council as a water management group with authority and responsibility for specified resource consents (including deemed permits), the Council must be satisfied that:

- (a) A schedule has been provided that specifies the resource consents which are to be managed by the water management group; and
- (b) The water management group has an appropriate form and rules; and
- (c) The water management group seeks to be granted authority and responsibility to manage the specified consents; and
- (d) The water management group is able to provide documentary evidence that their members, including scheduled consents holders, agree to be bound by the group.

2A.2 Other features of a water management group

A water management group which has been approved by the Council in terms of List 2A.1 above:

- (a) May have a terminating date or criteria;
- (b) May apply to have other resource consents included within its management;
- (ba) May have the whole or any part of the interest in a consent transferred to it;
- (c) Must have amendments of its form and rules approved by the Council;
- (d) May have its authority to manage the specified consents revoked, in part or in full, either;
 - (i) On its request; or
 - (ii) On receipt of not less than 6 months' written notice by the Council;
- (e) Must report annually to the Council on the operation of the group; and
- (f) May have a rationing regime approved by the Council.

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

3 Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act Statutory Acknowledgements

Introduction

Statutory acknowledgements are recorded in the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 (the NTCS Act) for several water bodies, mountains and coastal features in the Otago Region.

The following pages contain the text from the Schedules to the NTCS Act (as extracted from Brookers New Zealand Statutes) that describe the statutory acknowledgement sites that occur in Otago. Each schedule contains:

- The statutory area involved,
- A standard preamble,
- A description of the Ngai Tahu association with the site, and
- Standard statements of purposes, and limitations on effect, of the statutory acknowledgement.

These acknowledgements comprise a statement made by Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu of the particular cultural, spiritual, historic and traditional association of Ngai Tahu (Kai Tahu) with these areas.

Part 12 of the NTCS Act provides details of statutory acknowledgements, and the responsibilities relating to them. Section 208 of that act requires that local authorities have regard to these statutory acknowledgements in resource consent processing under Sections 93 to 94(C) of the Resource Management Act 1991 (Notification of resource consents), in deciding whether Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu is a person who may be adversely affected by the granting of a resource consent for activities within, adjacent to or impacting directly on the statutory area.

Section 211 of the NTCS Act enables Ngai Tahu to cite these acknowledgements in submissions, or in proceedings before consent authorities or the Environment Court. In these proceedings, the contents of the 'Ngai Tahu association with the site' part of the acknowledgement in question is not binding on the consent authority (e.g. the Regional Council), but may be taken into account.

Section 220 of the NTCS Act requires that all regional policy statements, district plans and regional plans have information recording those statutory acknowledgements for areas covered by the policy statement or plan attached to them. The attachment of this information may be by way of reference, or be set out in full (as is the case here). This is for the purpose of public information only and does not form part of the policy statement or plan.

APPENDIX 3: NGAI TAHU CLAIMS SETTLEMENT
ACT STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

Index:

The statutory acknowledgement areas for Otago are arranged as follows –

Statutory Acknowledgement area	Page no.
Tititea (Mount Aspiring)	22-8
Pikirakatahi (Mount Earnslaw)	22-10
Lake Hawea	22-12
Lake Wanaka	22-14
Whakatipu Wai Maori (Lake Wakatipu)	22-17
Te Wairere (Lake Dunstan)	22-20
Ka Moana Haehae (Lake Roxburgh)	22-23
Mata-Au (Clutha River)	22-25
Pomahaka River	22-28
Kakaunui River	22-29
Waihola/Waipori Wetland	22-32
Te Tauraka Poti (Merton Tidal Arm)	22-35
Kuramea (Lake Catlins)	22-37
Matakaea (Shag Point)	22-39
Tokata (The Nuggets)	22-41
Te Tai O Arai Te Uru (Otago Coastal Marine Area)	22-44

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

SCHEDULE 62

Sections 205 and 206

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGEMENT FOR TITITEA (MOUNT ASPIRING)

Statutory Area

The statutory area to which this statutory acknowledgement applies is the mountain known as Tititea (Mount Aspiring), located in the Mount Aspiring National Park, as shown on Allocation Plan MS 2 (SO 24665).

Preamble

Under section 206, the Crown acknowledges Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu's statement of Ngai Tahu's cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional association to Tititea as set out below.

Ngai Tahu Association with Tititea

As with all principal maunga (mountains), Tititea is imbued with the spiritual elements of Raki and Papa, in tradition and practice regarded as an important link to the primeval parents. Tititea is a prominent and majestic peak, clearly visible from a number of vantage points in the south, and its role in Ngai Tahu's creation stories gives rise to its tapu status. From the heights above Te Ana-au (Lake Te Anau), it is a particularly impressive sight when the sun is setting.

The most common Ngai Tahu name for the mountain known to Pakeha as Mount Aspiring is Tititea, referring to the mountain's white peak. It is not unusual, however, for places and physical features to have more than one name, reflecting the traditions of the successive iwi who peopled the land. Other names for the mountain include 'Makahi Ta Rakiwhanoa' (referring to a wedge belonging to Tu Te Rakiwhanoa) and 'Otapahu', which may refer to a type of dogskin cloak.

The Bonar Glacier is known as Hukairoroa Ta Parekiore (which refers to the long, hard glacial ice and crevasses formed by Parekiore). Parekiore was a giant who used to stalk up and down the South and North Islands taking titi (muttonbirds) northwards and returning with kumara. The lakes represent his footprints and the frozen splashes from his footsteps in the south were transformed into glaciers.

For Ngai Tahu, traditions such as this represent the links between the cosmological world of the gods and present generations, these histories reinforce tribal identity and solidarity, and continuity between generations and document the events which shaped the environment of Te Wai Pounamu and Ngai Tahu as an iwi.

The area was part of a network of trails which were used in order to ensure the safest journey and incorporated locations along the way that were identified for activities including camping overnight and gathering kai. Knowledge of these trails continues to be held by whanau and hapu and is regarded as taonga. The traditional mobile lifestyle of the people led to their dependence on the resources of the land.

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

The mauri of Tititea represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force, and all forms of life are related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship of Ngai Tahu Whanui with the area.

Purposes of Statutory Acknowledgement

Pursuant to section 215, and without limiting the rest of this schedule, the only purposes of this statutory acknowledgement are -

- (a) To require that consent authorities forward summaries of resource consent applications to Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu as required by regulations made pursuant to section 207 (clause 12.2.3 of the deed of settlement); and
- (b) To require that consent authorities, the Historic Places Trust, or the Environment Court, as the case may be, have regard to this statutory acknowledgement in relation to Tititea, as provided in sections 208 to 210 (clause 12.2.4 of the deed of settlement); and
- (c) To empower the Minister responsible for management of Tititea or the Commissioner of Crown Lands, as the case may be, to enter into a Deed of Recognition as provided in section 212 (clause 12.2.6 of the deed of settlement); and
- (d) To enable Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu and any member of Ngai Tahu Whanui to cite this statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of Ngai Tahu to Tititea as provided in section 211 (clause 12.2.5 of the deed of settlement).

Limitations on Effect of Statutory Acknowledgement

Except as expressly provided in sections 208 to 211, 213, and 215, -

- (a) This statutory acknowledgement does not affect, and is not to be taken into account in, the exercise of any power, duty, or function by any person or entity under any statute, regulation, or bylaw; and
- (b) Without limiting paragraph (a), no person or entity, in considering any matter or making any decision or recommendation under statute, regulation, or bylaw, may give any greater or lesser weight to Ngai Tahu's association to Tititea (as described in this statutory acknowledgement) than that person or entity would give under the relevant statute, regulation, or bylaw, if this statutory acknowledgement did not exist in respect of Tititea.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not affect the lawful rights or interests of any person who is not a party to the deed of settlement.

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not, of itself, have the effect of granting, creating, or providing evidence of any estate or interest in, or any rights of any kind whatsoever relating to, Tititea.

SCHEDULE 51

Sections 205 and 206

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGEMENT FOR PIKIRAKATAHI (MOUNT EARNSLAW)

Statutory Area

The statutory area to which this statutory acknowledgement applies is the area known as Pikirakatahi (Mount Earnslaw), as shown on Allocation Plan MS 4 (SO 24666).

Preamble

Under section 206, the Crown acknowledges Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu's statement of Ngai Tahu's cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional association to Pikirakatahi as set out below.

Ngai Tahu Association with Pikirakatahi

The creation of Pikirakatahi (Mt Earnslaw) relates in time to Te Waka o Aoraki, and the efforts of Tu Te Rakiwhanoa. It is said that during its formation a wedge of pounamu was inserted into this mountain, which is the highest and most prominent peak in this block of mountains. The mountain is also linked to the travels of Rakaihautu, who dug out the great lakes of the interior with his ko (a tool similar to a spade), known as Tu Whakaroria and later renamed Tuhiraki at the conclusion of the expedition.

The origins of the name 'Pikirakatahi' have been lost, but it is known that many places and physical features have more than one name, reflecting the traditions of the successive iwi who peopled the land. It is, however, likely that the name relates to Rakaihautu or subsequent people, as most of the prominent lakes, rivers and mountains of the interior take their name from the journey of Rakaihautu.

For Ngai Tahu, traditions such as this represent the links between the cosmological world of the gods and present generations, these histories reinforce tribal identity and solidarity, and continuity between generations, and document the events which shaped the environment of Te Wai Pounamu and Ngai Tahu as an iwi.

Pikirakatahi was of crucial significance to the many generations that journeyed to that end of Whakatipu-wai-maori (Lake Wakatipu) and beyond. Staging camps for the retrieval of pounamu were located at the base of the mountain, while semi-permanent settlements related to the pounamu trade were located closer to the lake.

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

Pikirakatahi stands as kaitiaki (guardian) over the pounamu resource and marks the end of a trail, with the tohu (marker) to the pounamu resource sitting opposite on Koroka (Cosmos Peak). The tupuna (ancestors) had considerable knowledge of whakapapa, traditional trails, places for gathering kai (food) and other taonga, ways in which to use the resources of the land, the relationship of people with the land and their dependence on it, and tikanga for the proper and sustainable utilisation of resources. All of these values remain important to Ngai Tahu today.

The retrieval of large amounts of pounamu from this source, so far inland and over a range of physical barriers, attests to the importance of this resource to the economy and customs of the iwi over many generations. The people would also gather native birds for kai, and firewood with which to cook and provide warmth, from the forests covering the lower flanks of Pikirakatahi. Strategic marriages between hapu strengthened the kupenga (net) of whakapapa and thus rights to use the resources of the mountain. It is because of these patterns of activity that Pikirakatahi continues to be important to runanga located in Otago, Murihiku and beyond. These runanga carry the responsibilities of kaitiaki in relation to the area, and are represented by the tribal structure, Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu.

The mauri of Pikirakatahi represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force, and all forms of life are related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship of Ngai Tahu Whanui with Pikirakatahi.

Purposes of Statutory Acknowledgement

Pursuant to section 212, and without limiting the rest of this schedule, the only purposes of this statutory acknowledgement are -

- (a) To require that consent authorities forward summaries of resource consent applications to Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu as required by regulations made pursuant to section 207 (clause 12.2.3 of the deed of settlement);
- (b) To require that consent authorities, the Historic Places Trust, or the Environment Court, as the case may be, have regard to this statutory acknowledgement in relation to Pikirakatahi, as provided in sections 208 to 210 (clause 12.2.4 of the deed of settlement);
- (c) To empower the Minister responsible for management of Pikirakatahi or the Commissioner of Crown Lands, as the case may be, to enter into a Deed of Recognition as provided in section 212 (clause 12.2.6 of the deed of settlement); and
- (d) To enable Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu and any member of Ngai Tahu Whanui to cite this statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of Ngai Tahu to Pikirakatahi as provided in section 211 (clause 12.2.5 of the deed of settlement).

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

Limitations on Effect of Statutory Acknowledgement

Except as expressly provided in sections 208 to 211, 213, and 215, -

- (a) This statutory acknowledgement does not affect, and is not to be taken into account in, the exercise of any power, duty, or function by any person or entity under any statute, regulation, or bylaw; and
- (b) Without limiting paragraph (a), no person or entity, in considering any matter or making any decision or recommendation under statute, regulation, or bylaw, may give any greater or lesser weight to Ngai Tahu's association to Pikirakatahi (as described in this statutory acknowledgement) than that person or entity would give under the relevant statute, regulation, or bylaw, if this statutory acknowledgement did not exist in respect of Pikirakatahi.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not affect the lawful rights or interests of any person who is not a party to the deed of settlement.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not, of itself, have the effect of granting, creating, or providing evidence of any estate or interest in, or any rights of any kind whatsoever relating to, Pikirakatahi.

SCHEDULE 30

Sections 205 and 206

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGEMENT FOR LAKE HAWEA

Statutory Area

The statutory area to which this statutory acknowledgement applies is the lake known as Hawea, the location of which is shown on Allocation Plan MD 37 (SO 24718).

Preamble

Under section 206, the Crown acknowledges Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu's statement of Ngai Tahu's cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional association to Lake Hawea, as set out below.

Ngai Tahu Association with Lake Hawea

Hawea is one of the lakes referred to in the tradition of 'Nga Puna Wai Karikari o Rakaihautu' which tells how the principal lakes of Te Wai Pounamu were dug by the rangatira (chief) Rakaihautu. Rakaihautu was the captain of the canoe, Uruao, which brought the tribe, Waitaha, to New Zealand. Rakaihautu beached his canoe at Whakatu (Nelson). From Whakatu, Rakaihautu divided the new arrivals in two, with his son taking one party to explore the coastline southwards and Rakaihautu

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

taking another southwards by an inland route. On his inland journey southward Rakaihautu used his famous ko (a tool similar to a spade) to dig the principal lakes of Te Wai Pounamu, including Hawea.

For Ngai Tahu, traditions such as this represent the links between the cosmological world of the gods and present generations, these histories reinforce tribal identity and solidarity, and continuity between generations, and document the events which shaped the environment of Te Wai Pounamu and Ngai Tahu as an iwi.

The name Hawea may derive from Hawea, tupuna (ancestor) of the Waitaha hapu, Ngati Hawea.

Hawea was traditionally noted as a rich tuna (eel) fishery, with many thousands of the fish once being caught, preserved and transported back to the kainga nohoanga (settlements) of coastal Otago.

The tupuna had considerable knowledge of whakapapa, traditional trails and tauranga waka, places for gathering kai and other taonga, ways in which to use the resources of Hawea, the relationship of people with the lake and their dependence on it, and tikanga for the proper and sustainable utilisation of resources. All of these values remain important to Ngai Tahu today.

The mauri of Hawea represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force, and all forms of Life are related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship of Ngai Tahu Whanui with the lake.

Purposes of Statutory Acknowledgement

Pursuant to section 215, and without limiting the rest of this schedule, the only purposes of this statutory acknowledgement are -

- (a) To require that consent authorities forward summaries of resource consent applications to Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu as required by regulations made pursuant to section 207 (clause 12.2.3 of the deed of settlement); and
- (b) To require that consent authorities, the Historic Places Trust, or the Environment Court, as the case may be, have regard to this statutory acknowledgement in relation to Lake Hawea, as provided in sections 208 to 210 (clause 12.2.4 of the deed of settlement); and
- (c) To empower the Minister responsible for management of Lake Hawea or the Commissioner of Crown Lands, as the case may be, to enter into a Deed of Recognition as provided in section 212 (clause 12.2.6 of the deed of settlement); and
- (d) To enable Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu and any member of Ngai Tahu Whanui to cite this statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of Ngai Tahu to Lake Hawea as provided in section 211 (clause 12.2.5 of the deed of

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

settlement).

Limitations on Effect of Statutory Acknowledgement

Except as expressly provided in sections 208 to 211, 213, and 215, -

- (a) This statutory acknowledgement does not affect, and is not to be taken into account in, the exercise of any power, duty, or function by any person or entity under any statute, regulation, or bylaw; and
- (b) Without limiting paragraph (a), no person or entity, in considering any matter or making any decision or recommendation under statute, regulation, or bylaw, may give any greater or lesser weight to Ngai Tahu's association to Lake Hawea (as described in this statutory acknowledgement) than that person or entity would give under the relevant statute, regulation, or bylaw, if this statutory acknowledgement did not exist in respect of Lake Hawea.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not affect the lawful rights or interests of any person who is not a party to the deed of settlement.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not, of itself, have the effect of granting, creating, or providing evidence of any estate or interest in, or any rights of any kind whatsoever relating to, Lake Hawea.

SCHEDULE 36

Sections 205 and 206

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGEMENT FOR LAKE WANAKA

Statutory Area

The statutory area to which this statutory acknowledgement applies is the Lake known as Wanaka, the location of which is shown on Allocation Plan MD 38 (SO 24719).

Preamble

Under section 206, the Crown acknowledges Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu's statement of Ngai Tahu's cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional association to Lake Wanaka, as set out below.

Ngai Tahu Association with Lake Wanaka

Wanaka is one of the lakes referred to in the tradition of 'Nga Puna Wai Karikari o Rakaihautu' which tells how the principal lakes of Te Wai Pounamu were dug by the rangatira (chief) Rakaihautu. Rakaihautu was the captain of the canoe, Uruao, which brought the tribe, Waitaha, to New Zealand. Rakaihautu beached his canoe

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

at Whakatu (Nelson). From Whakatu, Rakaihautu divided the new arrivals in two, with his son taking one party to explore the coastline southwards and Rakaihautu taking another southwards by an inland route. On his inland journey southward Rakaihautu used his famous ko (a tool similar to a spade) to dig the principal lakes of Te Wai Pounamu, including Wanaka.

For Ngai Tahu, traditions such as this represent the links between the cosmological world of the gods and present generations, these histories reinforce tribal identity and solidarity, and continuity between generations, and document the events which shaped the environment of Te Wai Pounamu and Ngai Tahu as an iwi.

The name ‘Wanaka’ is considered by some to be a South Island variant of the word ‘wananga’ which refers to the ancient schools of learning. In these schools Ngai Tahu tohunga (men of learning) would be taught whakapapa (genealogies) which stretched back to over a hundred generations and karakia incantations) for innumerable situations. All of this learning they would be required to commit to memory.

Wanaka was traditionally noted as a rich tuna (eel) fishery, with many thousands of the fish once being caught, preserved and transported back to the kainga nohoanga (settlements) of coastal Otago.

The tupuna had considerable knowledge of whakapapa, traditional trails and tauranga waka, places for gathering kai and other taonga, ways in which to use the resources of Wanaka, the relationship of people with the lake and their dependence on it, and tikanga for the proper and sustainable utilisation of resources. All of these values remain important to Ngai Tahu today.

In 1836 an eeling party was attacked by Te Puoho, a rangatira (chief) of the North Island Ngati Tama iwi. Te Puoho had plans of conquering Te Wai Pounamu, beginning his campaign at the southern end of the island. He compared his strategy to boning an eel which is started at the tail end of the fish. Having travelled down Te Tai Poutini (the West Coast) to Jackson Bay, Te Puoho crossed Haast Past into Wanaka and Lake Hawea where he found a Ngai Tahu eeling party which he captured at Makarora. Two infant girls were captured and eaten. Te Puoho suspected this family was an outpost and so he gave instructions for two guards to follow a young teenager called Pukuharuru who was ordered to show them where the main camp was. However, Pukuharuru managed to escape after dark and alert his father, Te Raki. Te Raki killed the two guards, who were lost without their guide, and the Wanaka families managed to escape the region.

Te Puoho continued his campaign at Tukurau where there were other families fishing. However, some of the people managed to escape to Tiwai Point near Bluff where they lit a warning fire. This fire alerted the southern forces and, under the leadership of Tuhawaiki, Ngai Tahu prepared to meet Te Puoho at Tukurau. After discussing the situation with the tohunga, Ngai Tahu were assured of victory. While

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

the priests chanted their karakia to the gods of war, the heart of the enemy chief appeared before Ngai Tahu in the firelight, carried by the wings of a bird. With this omen that the gods of war were on the side of Ngai Tahu, they attacked Te Puoho the next morning.

Te Puoho was shot by a young Ngai Tahu called Topi and his army was taken captive. The head of Te Puoho was cut from his body and stuck on a pole facing his home in the north. Wanaka is therefore noted in history for its part in what was to be the last battle between North and South Island tribes.

The mauri of Wanaka represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force, and all forms of life are related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship of Ngai Tahu Whanui with the lake.

Purposes of Statutory Acknowledgement

Pursuant to section 215, and without limiting the rest of this schedule, the only purposes of this statutory acknowledgement are -

- (a) To require that consent authorities forward summaries of resource consent applications to Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu as required by regulations made pursuant to section 207 (clause 12.2.3 of the deed of settlement); and
- (b) To require that consent authorities, the Historic Places Trust, or the Environment Court, as the case may be, have regard to this statutory acknowledgement in relation to Lake Wanaka, as provided in sections 208 to 210 (clause 12.2.4 of the deed of settlement); and
- (c) To empower the Minister responsible for management of Lake Wanaka or the Commissioner of Crown Lands, as the case may be, to enter into a Deed of Recognition as provided in section 212 (clause 12.2.6 of the deed of settlement); and
- (d) To enable Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu and any member of Ngai Tahu Whanui to cite this statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of Ngai Tahu to Lake Wanaka as provided in section 211 (clause 12.2.5 of the deed of settlement).

Limitations on Effect of Statutory Acknowledgement

Except as expressly provided in sections 208 to 211, 213, and 215, -

- (a) This statutory acknowledgement does not affect, and is not to be taken into account in, the exercise of any power, duty, or function by any person or entity under any statute, regulation, or bylaw; and
- (b) without limiting paragraph (a), no person or entity, in considering any matter or making any decision or recommendation under statute, regulation, or bylaw, may give any greater or lesser weight to Ngai Tahu's association to Lake Wanaka (as described in this statutory acknowledgement) than that

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

person or entity would give under the relevant statute, regulation, or bylaw, if this statutory acknowledgement did not exist in respect of Lake Wanaka.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not affect the lawful rights or interests of any person who is not a party to the deed of settlement.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not, of itself, have the effect of granting, creating, or providing evidence of any estate or interest in, or any rights of any kind whatsoever relating to, Lake Wanaka.

SCHEDULE 75

Sections 205 and 206

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGEMENT FOR WHAKATIPU WAI MAORI (LAKE WAKATIPU)

Statutory Area

The statutory area to which this statutory acknowledgement applies is the Lake known as Whakatipu-wai-maori (Lake Wakatipu), the location of which is shown on Allocation Plan MD 39 (SO 24720).

Preamble

Under section 206, the Crown acknowledges Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu's statement of Ngai Tahu's cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional association to Whakatipu-wai-maori, as set out below.

Ngai Tahu Association with Whakatipu-wai-maori

The name Whakatipu-wai-maori originates from the earliest expedition of discovery made many generations ago by the tupuna Rakaihautu and his party from the Uruao waka. Rakaihautu is traditionally credited with creating the great waterways of the interior of the island with his famous ko (a tool similar to a spade), known as Tu Whakaroria and renamed Tuhiraki at the conclusion of the expedition.

There are many traditions relating to the lake. One of the most famous tells that the hollow which forms the bed of the lake was created when the people known as Te Rapuwai came upon the giant tipua (ogre) Matau as he lay there in a deep sleep. Matau had been responsible for the disappearance of many small hunting parties and had entrapped a beautiful maiden, Manata. The father of Manata offered her in marriage to the man who could bring her safely home. Matakauri, who was in love with Manata ventured forth, discovering that Matau slept when the northwest wind blew. Matakauri selected a day when the wind was blowing the right way and set forth. He found Manata and, using his mere, he attempted to sever the bonds which

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

held her, but try as he would he failed. Manata began to sob bitterly, and as her tears fell on the cords, they melted away. Matakauri carried Manata back to the village where they became man and wife. However, Matakauri knew that while Matau lived no maiden was safe, so he set forth when again the northwest wind blew, and set fire to the large growth of bracken that acted as a bed for the giant. Matau was smothered in flames, the fat from his body augmenting the fire, until the blaze was so fierce that it burned a hole more than 1,000 feet deep. The snow on the surrounding hills melted and filled the hole, which is known today as Lake Wakatipu.

For Ngai Tahu, traditions such as this represent the links between the cosmological world of the gods and present generations, these histories reinforce tribal identity and continuity between generations, and document the events which shaped the environment of Te Wai Pounamu and Ngai Tahu as an iwi.

Whakatipu-wai-maori once supported nohoanga and villages which were the seasonal destinations of Otago and Murihiku (Southland) whanau and hapu for many generations, exercising ahi ka and accessing mahinga kai and providing a route to access the treasured pounamu located beyond the head of the lake. Strategic marriages between hapu strengthened the kupenga (net) of whakapapa and thus rights to use the resources of the lake. It is because of these patterns of activity that the lake continues to be important to runanga located in Murihiku, Otago and beyond. These runanga carry the responsibilities of kaitiaki in relation to the area, and are represented by the tribal structure Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu.

The lake also supported permanent settlements, such as the kaika (village) Tahuna near present-day Queenstown, Te Kirikiri Pa, located where the Queenstown gardens are found today, a Ngati Mamoe kaika near the Kawarau Falls called O Te Roto, and another called Takerehaka near Kingston. The Ngati Mamoe chief Tu Wiri Roa had a daughter, Haki Te Kura, who is remembered for her feat of swimming across the lake from Tahuna, a distance of some three kilometres.

The tupuna had considerable knowledge of whakapapa, traditional trails and tauranga waka, places for gathering kai and other taonga, ways in which to use the resources of the lake, the relationship of people with the lake and their dependence on it, and tikanga for the proper and sustainable utilisation of resources. All of these values remain important to Ngai Tahu today.

A key attraction of the lake was the access it provided to seasonal campsites and the pounamu located at the head of the lake at the Dart and Routeburn River catchments, from which countless generations gathered inaka and koko-takiwai pounamu and transported it back to coastal settlements for fashioning into tools, ornaments and weapons.

Waka and mokihi were the key modes of transport for the pounamu trade, travelling the length and breadth of Whakatipu-wai-maori. Thus there were numerous

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

tauranga waka (landing places) on the lake and the islands upon it (Matau and Wawahi-waka). The tupuna had an intimate knowledge of navigation, river routes, safe harbours and landing places, and the locations of food and other resources on the lake. The lake was an integral part of a network of trails which were used in order to ensure the safest journey and incorporated locations along the way that were identified for activities including camping overnight and gathering kai. Knowledge of these trails continues to be held by whanau and hapu and is regarded as a taonga. The traditional mobile lifestyle of the people led to their dependence on the resources of the roto (lake).

Whakatipu-wai-maori is an important source of freshwater, the lake itself being fed by hukawai (melt waters). These are waters with the highest level of purity and were accorded traditional classifications by Ngai Tahu that recognised this value. Thus it is a puna (spring) which sustains many ecosystems important to Ngai Tahu. The mauri of Whakatipu-wai-maori represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force, and all forms of life are related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship of Ngai Tahu Whanui with the lake.

Purposes of Statutory Acknowledgement

Pursuant to section 215, and without limiting the rest of this schedule, the only purposes of this statutory acknowledgement are -

- (a) To require that consent authorities forward summaries of resource consent applications to Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu as required by regulations made pursuant to section 207 (clause 12.2.3 of the deed of settlement); and
- (b) To require that consent authorities, the Historic Places Trust, or the Environment Court, as the case may be, have regard to this statutory acknowledgement in relation to Whakatipu-wai-maori as provided in sections 208 to 210 (clause 12.2.4 of the deed of settlement); and
- (c) To empower the Minister responsible for management of Whakatipu-wai-maori or the Commissioner of Crown Lands, as the case may be, to enter into a Deed of Recognition as provided in section 212 (clause 12.2.6 of the deed of settlement); and
- (d) To enable Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu and any member of Ngai Tahu Whanui to cite this statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of Ngai Tahu to Whakatipu-wai-maori as provided in section 211 (clause 12.2.5 of the deed of settlement).

Limitations on Effect of Statutory Acknowledgement

Except as expressly provided in sections 208 to 211, 213, and 215, -

- (a) This statutory acknowledgement does not affect, and is not to be taken into account in, the exercise of any power, duty, or function by any person or entity

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

under any statute, regulation, or bylaw; and

- (b) Without limiting paragraph (a), no person or entity, in considering any matter or making any decision or recommendation under statute, regulation, or bylaw, may give any greater or lesser weight to Ngai Tahu's association to Whakatipu-wai-maori (as described in this statutory acknowledgement) than that person or entity would give under the relevant statute, regulation, or bylaw, if this statutory acknowledgement did not exist in respect of Whakatipu-wai-maori.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not affect the lawful rights or interests of any person who is not a party to the deed of settlement.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not, of itself, have the effect of granting, creating, or providing evidence of any estate or interest in, or any rights of any kind whatsoever relating to, Whakatipu-wai-maori.

SCHEDULE 61

Sections 205 and 206

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGEMENT FOR TE WAIRERE (LAKE DUNSTAN)

Statutory Area

The statutory area to which this statutory acknowledgement applies is the lake known as Te Wairere (Lake Dunstan), the location of which is shown on Allocation Plan MD 490 (SO 24729)

Preamble

Under section 206, the Crown acknowledges Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu's statement of Ngai Tahu's cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional association to Te Wairere as set out below.

Ngai Tahu Association with Te Wairere

The name 'Te Wairere' refers to the speed with which the river once ran at this point.

The whole of the Mata-au (Clutha River), on which Te Wairere lies, was part of a mahinga kai trail that led inland and was used by Otago hapu including Kati Kuri, Ngati Ruahikihiki, Ngati Huirapa and Ngai Tuahuriri. The river was used as a highway into the interior, and provided many resources to sustain travellers on that journey. The river was a significant indigenous fishery, providing tuna (eels), kanakana (lamprey) and kokopu in the area over which Te Wairere now lies. Manu

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

(birds), including moa, were taken from areas adjoining the river, over which the lake now lies.

The tupuna had considerable knowledge of whakapapa, traditional trails and tauranga waka, places for gathering kai and other taonga, ways in which to use the resources of the river, the relationship of people with the river and their dependence on it, and tikanga for the proper and sustainable utilisation of resources. All of these values remain important to Ngai Tahu today.

The waterway was also very important in the transportation of pounamu from inland areas down to settlements on the coast, from where it was traded north and south. Because of its location at the confluence of Mata-au and Kawarau Rivers, Te Wairere was an important staging post on journeys inland and down-river. A tauranga waka and nohanga sited at the junction of the two rivers acted as such a staging post. As a result of this history of use and occupation there are a number of wahi taonga (including rock shelters and archaeological sites) in the area, some of which are now under the waters of the lake. Wahi tapu are important as places holding the memories and traditions of Ngai Tahu tupuna.

The tupuna had an intimate knowledge of navigation, river routes, safe harbours and landing places, and the locations of food and other resources on the river. The waterway was an integral part of a network of trails which were used in order to ensure the safest journey and incorporated locations along the way that were identified for activities including camping overnight and gathering kai. Knowledge of these trails continues to be held by whanau and hapu and is regarded as a taonga. The traditional mobile lifestyle of the people led to their dependence on the resources of the waterway.

The mauri of Te Wairere represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force, and all forms of life are related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship of Ngai Tahu Whanui with the lake.

Purposes of Statutory Acknowledgement

Pursuant to section 215, and without limiting the rest of this schedule, the only purposes of this statutory acknowledgement are -

- (a) To require that consent authorities forward summaries of resource consent applications to Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu as required by regulations made pursuant to section 207 (clause 12.2.3 of the deed of settlement); and
- (b) To require that consent authorities, the Historic Places Trust, or the Environment Court, as the case may be, have regard to this statutory acknowledgement in relation to Te Wairere, as provided in sections 208 to

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

210 (clause 12.2.4 of the deed of settlement); and

- (c) To empower the Minister responsible for management of Te Wairere or the Commissioner of Crown Lands, as the case may be, to enter into a Deed of Recognition as provided in section 212 (clause 12.2.6 of the deed of settlement); and
- (d) To enable Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu and any member of Ngai Tahu Whanui to cite this statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of Ngai Tahu to Te Wairere as provided in section 211 (clause 12.2.5 of the deed of settlement).

Limitations on Effect of Statutory Acknowledgement

Except as expressly provided in sections 208 to 211, 213, and 215, -

- (a) This statutory acknowledgement does not affect, and is not to be taken into account in, the exercise of any power, duty, or function by any person or entity under any statute, regulation, or bylaw; and
- (b) Without limiting paragraph (a), no person or entity, in considering any matter or making any decision or recommendation under statute, regulation, or bylaw, may give any greater or lesser weight to Ngai Tahu's association to Te Wairere (as described in this statutory acknowledgement) than that person or entity would give under the relevant statute, regulation, or bylaw, if this statutory acknowledgement did not exist in respect of Te Wairere.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not affect the lawful rights or interests of any person who is not a party to the deed of settlement.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not, of itself, have the effect of granting, creating, or providing evidence of any estate or interest in, or any rights of any kind whatsoever relating to, Te Wairere.

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

SCHEDULE 22

Sections 205 and 206

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGEMENT FOR KA MOANA HAEHAE (LAKE ROXBURGH)

Statutory Area

The statutory area to which this statutory acknowledgement applies is the lake known as Ka Moana Haehae (Lake Roxburgh), the location of which is shown on Allocation Plan MD 491 (SO 24730).

Preamble

Under section 206, the Crown acknowledges Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu's statement of Ngai Tahu's cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional association to Ka Moana Haehae, as set out below.

Ngai Tahu Association with Ka Moana Haehae

The name Ka Moana Haehae refers to the joining of two waterways. In this case it refers to the confluence of the Mata-au and Manuherikia Rivers over which the lake lies.

The whole of the Mata-au (Clutha River), on which Ka Moana Haehae lies, was part of a mahinga kai trail that led inland and was used by Otago hapu including Ngati Kuri, Ngati Ruahikihiki, Ngati Huirapa and Ngai Tuahuriri. The river was used as a highway into the interior, and provided many resources to sustain travellers on that journey. The river was a significant indigenous fishery, providing tuna (eels), kanakana (lamprey) and kokopu in the area over which Ka Moana Haehae now lies. Manu (birds), including moa, were taken from areas adjoining the river, over which the lake now lies.

The tupuna had considerable knowledge of whakapapa, traditional trails and tauranga waka, places for gathering kai and other taonga, ways in which to use the resources of the river, the relationship of people with the river and their dependence on it, and tikanga for the proper and sustainable utilisation of resources. All of these values remain important to Ngai Tahu today.

The waterway was also very important in the transportation of pounamu from inland areas down to settlements on the coast, from where it was traded north and south. Thus there were numerous tauranga waka (landing places) along it. The tupuna had an intimate knowledge of navigation, river routes, safe harbours and landing places, and the locations of food and other resources on the river. The waterway was an integral part of a network of trails which were used in order to ensure the safest journey and incorporated locations along the way that were identified for activities including camping overnight and gathering kai. Knowledge of these trails continues

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

to be held by whanau and hapu and is regarded as a taonga. The traditional mobile lifestyle of the people led to their dependence on the resources of the waterway.

The mauri of Ka Moana Haehae represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force, and all forms of life are related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship of Ngai Tahu Whanui with the lake.

Purposes of Statutory Acknowledgement

Pursuant to section 215, and without limiting the rest of this schedule, the only purposes of this statutory acknowledgement are -

- (a) To require that consent authorities forward summaries of resource consent applications to Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu as required by regulations made pursuant to section 207 (clause 12.2.3 of the deed of settlement); and
- (b) To require that consent authorities, the Historic Places Trust, or the Environment Court, as the case may be, have regard to this statutory acknowledgement in relation to Ka Moana Haehae, as provided in sections 208 to 210 (clause 12.2.4 of the deed of settlement); and
- (c) To empower the Minister responsible for management of Ka Moana Haehae or the Commissioner of Crown Lands, as the case may be, to enter into a Deed of Recognition as provided in section 212 (clause 12.2.6 of the deed of settlement); and
- (d) To enable Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu and any member of Ngai Tahu Whanui to cite this statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of Ngai Tahu to Ka Moana Haehae as provided in section 211 (clause 12.2.5 of the deed of settlement).

Limitations on Effect of Statutory Acknowledgement

Except as expressly provided in sections 208 to 211, 213, and 215, -

- (a) This statutory acknowledgement does not affect, and is not to be taken into account in, the exercise of any power, duty, or function by any person or entity under any statute, regulation, or bylaw; and
- (b) Without limiting paragraph (a), no person or entity, in considering any matter or making any decision or recommendation under statute, regulation, or bylaw, may give any greater or lesser weight to Ngai Tahu's association to Ka Moana Haehae (as described in this statutory acknowledgement) than that person or entity would give under the relevant statute, regulation, or bylaw, if this statutory acknowledgement did not exist in respect of Ka Moana Haehae.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not affect the lawful rights or interests of any person who is not a party to the deed of settlement.

APPENDIX 3: NGAI TAHU CLAIMS SETTLEMENT
ACT STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not, of itself, have the effect of granting, creating, or providing evidence of any estate or interest in, or any rights of any kind whatsoever relating to, Ka Moana Haehae.

SCHEDULE 40

Sections 205 and 206

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGEMENT FOR MATA-AU (CLUTHA RIVER)

Statutory Area

The statutory area to which this statutory acknowledgement applies is the River known as Mata-au (Clutha River), the location of which is shown on Allocation Plan MD 122 (SO 24727).

Preamble

Under section 206, the Crown acknowledges Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu's statement of Ngai Tahu's cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional association to the Mata-au, as set out below.

Ngai Tahu Association with the Mata-au

The Mata-au river takes its name from a Ngai Tahu whakapapa that traces the genealogy of water. On that basis, the Mata-au is seen as a descendant of the creation traditions. For Ngai Tahu, traditions such as this represent the links between the cosmological world of the gods and present generations, these histories reinforce tribal identity and solidarity, and continuity between generations, and document the events which shaped the environment of Te Wai Pounamu and Ngai Tahu as an iwi.

On another level, the Mata-au was part of a mahinga kai trail that led inland and was used by Otakou hapu including Ngati Kuri, Ngati Ruahikihiki, Ngati Huirapa and Ngai Tuahuriri. The tupuna had considerable knowledge of whakapapa, traditional trails and tauranga waka, places for gathering kai and other taonga, ways in which to use the resources of the river, the relationship of people with the river and their dependence on it, and tikanga for the proper and sustainable utilisation of resources. All of these values remain important to Ngai Tahu today.

The river was also very important in the transportation of pounamu from inland areas down to settlements on the coast, from where it was traded north and south. Thus there were numerous tauranga waka (landing places) along it. The tupuna had an intimate knowledge of navigation, river routes, safe harbours and landing places, and the locations of food and other resources on the river. The river was an integral part of a network of trails which were used in order to ensure the safest journey and incorporated locations along the way that were identified for activities including

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

camping overnight and gathering kai. Knowledge of these trails continue to be held by whanau and hapu and is regarded as a taonga. The traditional mobile lifestyle of the people led to their dependence on the resources of the river.

The Mata-au is where Ngai Tahu's leader, Te Hautapunui o Tu, established the boundary line between Ngai Tahu and Ngati Mamoe. Ngati Mamoe were to hold mana (authority) over the lands south of the river and Ngai Tahu were to hold mana northwards. Eventually, the unions between the families of Te Hautapunui o Tu and Ngati Mamoe were to overcome these boundaries. For Ngai Tahu, histories such as this represent the links and continuity between past and present generations, reinforce tribal identity, and document the events which shaped Ngai Tahu as an iwi.

Strategic marriages between hapu further strengthened the kupenga (net) of whakapapa, and thus rights to travel on and use the resources of the river. It is because of these patterns of activity that the river continues to be important to runanga located in Otago and beyond. These runanga carry the responsibilities of kaitiaki in relation to the area, and are represented by the tribal structure, Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu.

Urupa and battlegrounds are located all along this river. One battleground, known as Te Kauae Whakatoro (downstream of Tuapeka), recalls a confrontation between Ngai Tahu and Ngati Mamoe that led to the armistice established by Te Hautapunui o Tu. Urupa are the resting places of Ngai Tahu tupuna and, as such, are the focus for whanau traditions. These are places holding the memories, traditions, victories and defeats of Ngai Tahu tupuna, and are frequently protected by secret locations.

The mauri of Mata-au represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force, and all forms of life are related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship of Ngai Tahu Whanui with the river.

Purposes of Statutory Acknowledgement

Pursuant to section 215, and without limiting the rest of this schedule, the only purposes of this statutory acknowledgement are -

- (a) To require that consent authorities forward summaries of resource consent applications to Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu as required by regulations made pursuant to section 207 (clause 12.2.3 of the deed of settlement); and
- (b) To require that consent authorities, the Historic Places Trust, or the Environment Court, as the case may be, have regard to this statutory acknowledgement in relation to the Mata-au, as provided in sections 208 to 210 (clause 12.2.4 of the deed of settlement); and
- (c) To empower the Minister responsible for management of the Mata-au or the Commissioner of Crown Lands, as the case may be, to enter into a Deed of

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

Recognition as provided in section 212 (clause 12.2.6 of the deed of settlement); and

- (d) To enable Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu and any member of Ngai Tahu Whanui to cite this statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of Ngai Tahu to the Mata-au as provided in section 211 (clause 12.2.5 of the deed of settlement).

Limitations on Effect of Statutory Acknowledgement

Except as expressly provided in sections 208 to 211, 213, and 215, -

- (a) This statutory acknowledgement does not affect, and is not to be taken into account in, the exercise of any power, duty, or function by any person or entity under any statute, regulation, or bylaw; and
- (b) Without limiting paragraph (a), no person or entity, in considering any matter or making any decision or recommendation under statute, regulation, or bylaw, may give any greater or lesser weight to Ngai Tahu's association to the Mata-au (as described in this statutory acknowledgement) than that person or entity would give under the relevant statute, regulation, or bylaw, if this statutory acknowledgement did not exist in respect of the Mata-au.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not affect the lawful rights or interests of any person who is not a party to the deed of settlement.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not, of itself, have the effect of granting, creating, or providing evidence of any estate or interest in, or any rights of any kind whatsoever relating to, the Mata-au.

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

SCHEDULE 52

Sections 205 and 206

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGEMENT FOR POMAHAKA RIVER

Statutory Area

The statutory area to which this statutory acknowledgement applies is the River known as Pomahaka, the location of which is shown on Allocation Plan MD 12 (SO 24726).

Preamble

Under section 206, the Crown acknowledges Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu's statement of Ngai Tahu's cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional association to the Pomahaka River, as set out below.

Ngai Tahu Association with the Pomahaka River

The Pomahaka was an important mahinga kai for Ngati Mamoe and Ngai Tahu kainga (settlements) in the Catlins and Tautuku areas. The river was particularly noted for its kanakana (lamprey) fishery. Other mahinga kai associated with the river included weka and other manu (birds).

The tupuna had considerable knowledge of whakapapa, traditional trails and tauranga waka, places for gathering kai and other taonga, ways in which to use the resources of the Pomahaka, the relationship of people with the river and their dependence on it, and tikanga for the proper and sustainable utilisation of resources. All of these values remain important to Ngai Tahu today.

The mauri of the Pomahaka represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force, and all forms of life are related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship of Ngai Tahu Whanui with the river.

Purposes of Statutory Acknowledgement

Pursuant to section 215, and without limiting the rest of this schedule, the only purposes of this statutory acknowledgement are -

- (a) To require that consent authorities forward summaries of resource consent applications to Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu as required by regulations made pursuant to section 207 (clause 12.2.3 of the deed of settlement);
- (b) To require that consent authorities, the Historic Places Trust, or the Environment Court, as the case may be, have regard to this statutory acknowledgement in relation to the Pomahaka River, as provided in sections 208 to 210 (clause 12.2.4 of the deed of settlement);

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

- (c) To empower the Minister responsible for management of the Pomahaka River or the Commissioner of Crown Lands, as the case may be, to enter into a Deed of Recognition as provided in section 212 (clause 12.2.6 of the deed of settlement); and
- (d) To enable Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu and any member of Ngai Tahu Whanui to cite this statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of Ngai Tahu to the Pomahaka River as provided in section 211 (clause 12.2.5 of the deed of settlement).

Limitations on Effect of Statutory Acknowledgement

Except as expressly provided in sections 208 to 211, 213, and 215, -

- (a) This statutory acknowledgement does not affect, and is not to be taken into account in, the exercise of any power, duty, or function by any person or entity under any statute, regulation, or bylaw; and
- (b) Without limiting paragraph (a), no person or entity, in considering any matter or making any decision or recommendation under statute, regulation, or bylaw, may give any greater or lesser weight to Ngai Tahu's association to the Pomahaka River (as described in this statutory acknowledgement) than that person or entity would give under the relevant statute, regulation, or bylaw, if this statutory acknowledgement did not exist in respect of the Pomahaka River.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not affect the lawful rights or interests of any person who is not a party to the deed of settlement.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not, of itself, have the effect of granting, creating, or providing evidence of any estate or interest in, or any rights of any kind whatsoever relating to, the Pomahaka River.

SCHEDULE 23

Sections 205 and 206

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGEMENT FOR KAKAUNUI RIVER

Statutory Area

The statutory area to which this statutory acknowledgement applies is the River known as Kakaunui, the location of which is shown on Allocation Plan MD 120 (SO 24725).

Preamble

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

Under section 206, the Crown acknowledges Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu's statement of Ngai Tahu's cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional association to the Kakaunui River, as set out below.

Ngai Tahu Association with the Kakaunui River

The creation of the Kakaunui relates in time to Te Waka o Aoraki, and the further shaping of the island by Tu Te Rakiwhanoa and his assistants including Marokura who stocked the waterways and Kahukura, who stocked the forests. For Ngai Tahu, traditions such as this represent the links between the cosmological world of the gods and present generations, these histories reinforce tribal identity and solidarity, and continuity between generations, and document the events which shaped the environment of Te Wai Pounamu and Ngai Tahu as an iwi. The origin of the name 'Kakaunui' has been lost, but is likely to refer to swimming in the river.

There was a tauranga waka (landing place) at the mouth of the Kakaunui, which was an important part of the coastal trails north and south. The river was also a part of the seasonal trail of mahinga kai and resource gathering and hapu and whanau bonding. The tupuna had an intimate knowledge of navigation, river routes, safe harbours and landing places, and the locations of food and other resources on the river. The Kakaunui was an integral part of a network of trails which were used in order to ensure the safest journey and incorporated locations along the way that were identified for activities including camping overnight and gathering kai. Knowledge of these trails continues to be held by whanau and hapu and is regarded as a taonga. The traditional mobile lifestyle of the people led to their dependence on the resources of the river.

The Kakaunui was a noted indigenous fishery, offering tuna (eel), inaka (whitebait), kanakana (lamprey), kokopu and other species. Other materials provided by the river included raupo, harakeke and watercress. The tupuna had considerable knowledge of whakapapa, traditional trails and tauranga waka, places for gathering kai and other taonga, ways in which to use the resources of the Kakaunui, the relationship of people with the river and their dependence on it, and tikanga for the proper and sustainable utilisation of resources. All of these values remain important to Ngai Tahu today.

These mahinga kai resources supported both semi-permanent and seasonal occupations, including a kainga on the northern bank of the river near Maheno. The surviving rock art remnants and rock shelters are a particular taonga of the area, providing a unique record of the lives and beliefs of the people who travelled the river.

The mauri of the Kakaunui represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force, and all forms of life are related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship of Ngai Tahu Whanui with the river.

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

Purposes of Statutory Acknowledgement

Pursuant to section 215, and without limiting the rest of this schedule, the only purposes of this statutory acknowledgement are -

- (a) To require that consent authorities forward summaries of resource consent applications to Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu as required by regulations made pursuant to section 207 (clause 12.2.3 of the deed of settlement); and
- (b) To require that consent authorities, the Historic Places Trust, or the Environment Court, as the case may be, have regard to this statutory acknowledgement in relation to the Kakaunui River, as provided in sections 208 to 210 (clause 12.2.4 of the deed of settlement); and
- (c) To empower the Minister responsible for management of the Kakaunui River or the Commissioner of Crown Lands, as the case may be, to enter into a Deed of Recognition as provided in section 212 (clause 12.2.6 of the deed of settlement); and
- (d) To enable Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu and any member of Ngai Tahu Whanui to cite this statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of Ngai Tahu to the Kakaunui River as provided in section 211 (clause 12.2.5 of the deed of settlement).

Limitations on Effect of Statutory Acknowledgement

Except as expressly provided in sections 208 to 211, 213, and 215, -

- (a) This statutory acknowledgement does not affect, and is not to be taken into account in, the exercise of any power, duty, or function by any person or entity under any statute, regulation, or bylaw; and
- (b) Without limiting paragraph (a), no person or entity, in considering any matter or making any decision or recommendation under statute, regulation, or bylaw, may give any greater or lesser weight to Ngai Tahu's association to the Kakaunui River (as described in this statutory acknowledgement) than that person or entity would give under the relevant statute, regulation, or bylaw, if this statutory acknowledgement did not exist in respect of the Kakaunui River.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not affect the lawful rights or interests of any person who is not a party to the deed of settlement.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not, of itself, have the effect of granting, creating, or providing evidence of any estate or interest in, or any rights of any kind whatsoever relating to, the Kakaunui River.

SCHEDULE 70

Sections 205 and 206

APPENDIX 3: NGAI TAHU CLAIMS SETTLEMENT
ACT STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGEMENT FOR WAIHOLA/WAIPORI
WETLAND

Statutory Area

The statutory area to which this statutory acknowledgement applies is the Wetland known as Waihola/Waipori, the location of which is shown on Allocation Plan MD 55 (SO 24721).

Preamble

Under section 206, the Crown acknowledges Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu's statement of Ngai Tahu's cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional association to Waihola/Waipori, as set out below.

Ngai Tahu Association with Waihola/Waipori

The Waihola/Waipori wetlands were once one of the most significant food baskets in the Otago region, and featured in the seasonal activity of the coastal settlements as far away as the Otago Peninsula and harbour area, Purakaunui and Puketeraki. The wetlands were once much larger in water area and deeper than at present, connected by a labyrinth of waterways and having a gravel bed which has now been overlaid by silt and mud.

The names Waihola/Waipori are likely of Waitaha derivation, with 'hola' being the Waitaha form of 'hora' meaning flat, spread out or widespread. Waipori may in fact be a misrecording of Waipouri, which is used in many older manuscripts, being a reference to the dark, tanin-stained water the wetland receives from Waipori River, a heavily wooded catchment.

The Waihola/Waipori area was visited and occupied by Waitaha, Ngati Mamoe and Ngai Tahu in succession, who through conflict and alliance, have merged in the whakapapa (genealogy) of Ngai Tahu Whanui. The wetland supported a number of pa within its environs and nearby. For example, Whakaraupuka, the pa of the Ngati Mamoe chief Tukiauau was located in the area now known as Sinclair Wetlands, although Tukiauau eventually relocated further to the south as the southward movement of his Ngai Tahu foes became uncomfortably close.

There were also many nohoanga (temporary campsites) located within the complex, used by food gathering parties which would travel to the lakes and camp on the fringes for two to three days to gather kai; to eel, hunt water fowl and gather flax. There were also permanent or semi-permanent settlements located in a number of locations around the lakes, some on islands in the wetlands system.

A number of other settlements further afield were also dependent on the mahinga kai resources of Waihola/Waipori for sustenance, including Tu Paritaniwha Pa near Momona, Omoua Pa above Henley, Maitapapa (Henley area), the kaik south of Henley and Takaaihitau near the old Taieri Ferry bridge, in addition to other settlements adjacent to the Taieri River up and downstream of the wetlands. Otakou

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

and Puketeraki hapu would also make seasonal visits to gather resources and strengthen and maintain the kupenga (net) of whakapapa on which their rights to use those resources were based.

There is an account which tells of a sudden flood which required people trapped on the bank at a place called Whakaraupo, on the network of waterways that link Waihola with Waipori, to hastily construct a mokihi out of raupo to reach safety. A meeting place was opened here in 1901 by the locals, the house was named Te Waipounamu.

For Ngai Tahu, histories such as these reinforce tribal identity and solidarity and continuity between generations, and document the events which shaped the environment of Te Wai Pounamu and Ngai Tahu as an iwi.

Waihola/Waipori was a key mahinga kai resource for Ngai Tahu based along the Otago coastal region, where an abundance of tuna (eel), inaka (whitebait), patiki (flounder) and other indigenous fish were available. Waterfowl and fibre resources such as harakeke and raupo were also easily accessible from the wetlands. Spearing, setting hinaki and nets, and bobbing for eel were regular activities on the wetlands in the season. The gathering of young ducks in the moult, and the catching of herons, pukeko and other birds supplemented the broad range of kai available from the wetlands.

The tupuna had considerable knowledge of whakapapa, traditional trails and tauranga waka, places for gathering kai and other taonga, ways in which to use the resources of Waihola/Waipori, the relationship of people with the lake and their dependence on it, and tikanga for the proper and sustainable utilisation of resources. All of these values remain important to Ngai Tahu today.

The attractiveness of Waihola/Waipori as a mahinga kai was enhanced by their accessibility. With the direct link to the Taieri River, access via the Taieri to villages on the banks of the Taieri River, upstream and down, and access by waka to the coast and northward to Otakou, kai and other resources gathered from the wetlands could be transported back to these home bases with relative ease.

The tupuna had an intimate knowledge of navigation, river routes, safe harbours and landing places, and the locations of food and other resources on the wetlands. Knowledge of these trails continues to be held by whanau and hapu and is regarded as a taonga. The traditional mobile lifestyle of the people led to their dependence on the resources of the wetlands.

Because of the long history of use of Waihola/Waipori as a mahinga kai, supporting permanent and temporary settlements, there are numerous urupa, wahi tapu and wahi taonga associated with the wetlands. These are all places holding the memories, traditions, victories and defeats of Ngai Tahu tupuna, and are frequently

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

protected by secret locations. Urupa are the resting places of Ngai Tahu tupuna and, as such, are a particular focus for whanau traditions.

The mauri of Waihola/Waipori represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force, and all forms of life are related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship of Ngai Tahu Whanui with the wetlands. The wetlands represent, in their resources and characteristics, a strong element of identity for those who had manawhenua (tribal authority over the area) whose tupuna were nurtured on the food and resources of the wetlands for generations.

Purposes of Statutory Acknowledgement

Pursuant to section 215, and without limiting the rest of this schedule, the only purposes of this statutory acknowledgement are -

- (a) To require that consent authorities forward summaries of resource consent applications to Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu as required by regulations made pursuant to section 207 (clause 12.2.3 of the deed of settlement); and
- (b) To require that consent authorities, the Historic Places Trust, or the Environment Court, as the case may be, have regard to this statutory acknowledgement in relation to Waihola/Waipori, as provided in sections 208 to 210 (clause 12.2.4 of the deed of settlement); and
- (c) To empower the Minister responsible for management of Waihola/Waipori or the Commissioner of Crown Lands, as the case may be,) to enter into a Deed of Recognition as provided in section 212 (clause 12.2.6 of the deed of settlement); and
- (d) To enable Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu and any member of Ngai Tahu Whanui to cite this statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of Ngai Tahu to Waihola/Waipori as provided in section 211 (clause 12.2.5 of the deed of settlement).

Limitations on Effect of Statutory Acknowledgement

Except as expressly provided in sections 208 to 211, 213, and 215, -

- (a) This statutory acknowledgement does not affect, and is not to be taken into account in, the exercise of any power, duty, or function by any person or entity under any statute, regulation, or bylaw; and
- (b) Without limiting paragraph (a), no person or entity, in considering any matter or making any decision or recommendation under statute, regulation, or bylaw, may give any greater or lesser weight to Ngai Tahu's association to Waihola/Waipori (as described in this statutory acknowledgement) than that person or entity would give under the relevant statute, regulation, or bylaw, if this statutory acknowledgement did not exist in respect of Waihola/Waipori.

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not affect the lawful rights or interests of any person who is not a party to the deed of settlement.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not, of itself, have the effect of granting, creating, or providing evidence of any estate or interest in, or any rights of any kind whatsoever relating to, Waihola/Waipori.

SCHEDULE 60

Sections 205 and 206

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGEMENT FOR TE TAURAKA POTI (MERTON TIDAL ARM)

Statutory Area

The statutory area to which this statutory acknowledgement applies is the Wetland known as Te Tauraka Poti (Merton Tidal Arm), the location of which is shown on Allocation Plan MD 56 (SO 24722).

Preamble

Under section 206, the Crown acknowledges Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu's statement of Ngai Tahu's cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional association to Te Tauraka Poti, as set out below.

Ngai Tahu Association with Te Tauraka Poti

Te Tauraka Poti, fed by the streams known as Kirikiri Whakahoro and Kokonui, was a major mahinga kai for kainga and pa located on the coast north of the Otago Peninsula. The wetlands were a rich source of kai, including tuna (eels), mohoao (black flounder), giant kokopu and water fowl. The wetlands were particularly valued as a spawning ground for inaka (whitebait).

The tupuna had considerable knowledge of whakapapa, traditional trails and tauranga waka, places for gathering kai and other taonga, ways in which to use the resources of Te Tauraka Poti, the relationship of people with the wetland and their dependence on it, and tikanga for the proper and sustainable utilisation of resources. All of these values remain important to Ngai Tahu today.

As a result of this history of use, there are a number of wahi taonga within the wetland area, including middens and other evidence of occupation. These are important as places holding the memories of Ngai Tahu tupuna.

Te Tauraka Poti formed an integral part of a network of trails which were used in order to ensure the safest journey and incorporated locations along the way that were identified for activities including camping overnight and gathering kai.

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

Knowledge of these trails continues to be held by whanau and hapu and is regarded as a taonga. The traditional mobile lifestyle of the people led to their dependence on the resources of the wetland.

Much of Te Tauraka Poti's continuing significance to Ngai Tahu lies in the fact that it is the only remaining wetland area of any significance in the vicinity. The mauri of Te Tauraka Poti represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force, and all forms of life are related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship of Ngai Tahu Whanui with the wetland.

Purposes of Statutory Acknowledgement

Pursuant to section 215, and without limiting the rest of this schedule, the only purposes of this statutory acknowledgement are -

- (a) To require that consent authorities forward summaries of resource consent applications to Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu as required by regulations made pursuant to section 207 (clause 12.2.3 of the deed of settlement);
- (b) To require that consent authorities, the Historic Places Trust, or the Environment Court, as the case may be, have regard to this statutory acknowledgement in relation to Te Tauraka Poti, as provided in sections 208 to 210 (clause 12.2.4 of the deed of settlement);
- (c) To empower the Minister responsible for management of Te Tauraka Poti or the Commissioner of Crown Lands, as the case may be, to enter into a Deed of Recognition as provided in section 212 (clause 12.2.6 of the deed of settlement); and
- (d) To enable Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu and any member of Ngai Tahu Whanui to cite this statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of Ngai Tahu to Te Tauraka Poti as provided in section 211 (clause 12.2.5 of the deed of settlement).

Limitations on Effect of Statutory Acknowledgement

Except as expressly provided in sections 208 to 211, 213, and 215, -

- (a) This statutory acknowledgement does not affect, and is not to be taken into account in, the exercise of any power, duty, or function by any person or entity under any statute, regulation, or bylaw; and
- (b) Without limiting paragraph (a), no person or entity, in considering any matter or making any decision or recommendation under statute, regulation, or bylaw, may give any greater or lesser weight to Ngai Tahu's association to Te Tauraka Poti (as described in this statutory acknowledgement) than that person or entity would give under the relevant statute, regulation, or bylaw, if this statutory acknowledgement did not exist in respect of Te Tauraka Poti.

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not affect the lawful rights or interests of any person who is not a party to the deed of settlement.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not, of itself, have the effect of granting, creating, or providing evidence of any estate or interest in, or any rights of any kind whatsoever relating to, Te Tauraka Poti.

SCHEDULE 28

Sections 205 and 206

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGEMENT FOR KURAMEA (LAKE CATLINS)

Statutory Area

The statutory area to which this statutory acknowledgement applies is the Lake known as Kuramea (Lake Catlins), the location of which is shown on Allocation Plan MD 134 (SO 24728).

Preamble

Under section 206, the Crown acknowledges Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu's statement of Ngai Tahu's cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional association to Kuramea, as set out below.

Ngai Tahu Association with Kuramea

Kuramea is the traditional name for the waterway now known as Catlins Lake.

The lake and estuary were significant sources of mahinga kai, supporting a number of nohoanga (settlements) in the vicinity. Tuna (eels), inaka (whitebait), tuaki (cockles), pupu (mudsnails), pipi and flatfish were taken from Kuramea. The lake was also a source of raranga (weaving) materials including harakeke and paru (mud used in dying).

The tupuna had considerable knowledge of whakapapa, traditional trails and tauranga waka, places for gathering kai and other taonga, ways in which to use the resources of Kuramea, the relationship of people with the lake and their dependence on it, and tikanga for the proper and sustainable utilisation of resources. All of these values remain important to Ngai Tahu today.

As a result of this history of use, there are a number of wahi taonga within the wetland area, including middens and other evidence of occupation. These are important as places holding the memories of Ngai Tahu tupuna. In particular, a number of archaeological finds within the wetlands confirm the area's history as a wake (canoe) building area.

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

The mauri of Kuramea represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force, and all forms of life are related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship of Ngai Tahu Whanui with the lake.

Purposes of Statutory Acknowledgement

Pursuant to section 215, and without limiting the rest of this schedule, the only purposes of this statutory acknowledgement are -

- (a) To require that consent authorities forward summaries of resource consent applications to Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu as required by regulations made pursuant to section 207 (clause 12.2.3 of the deed of settlement); and
- (b) To require that consent authorities, the Historic Places Trust, or the Environment Court, as the case may be, have regard to this statutory acknowledgement in relation to Kuramea, as provided in sections 208 to 210 (clause 12.2.4 of the deed of settlement); and
- (c) To empower the Minister responsible for management of Kuramea or the Commissioner of Crown Lands, as the case may be, to enter into a Deed of Recognition as provided in section 212 (clause 12.2.6 of the deed of settlement); and
- (d) To enable Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu and any member of Ngai Tahu Whanui to cite this statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of Ngai Tahu to Kuramea as provided in section 211 (clause 12.2.5 of the deed of settlement).

Limitations on Effect of Statutory Acknowledgement

Except as expressly provided in sections 208 to 211, 213, and 215, -

- (a) This statutory acknowledgement does not affect, and is not to be taken into account in, the exercise of any power, duty, or function by any person or entity under any statute, regulation, or bylaw; and
- (b) Without limiting paragraph (a), no person or entity, in considering any matter or making any decision or recommendation under statute, regulation, or bylaw, may give any greater or lesser weight to Ngai Tahu's association to Kuramea (as described in this statutory acknowledgement) than that person or entity would give under the relevant statute, regulation, or bylaw, if this statutory acknowledgement did not exist in respect of Kuramea.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not affect the lawful rights or interests of any person who is not a party to the deed of settlement.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not, of itself, have the effect of granting, creating, or providing evidence of any estate or interest in, or any rights of any kind whatsoever relating to, Kuramea.

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

SCHEDULE 41

Sections 205 and 206

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGEMENT FOR MATAKAEA (SHAG POINT)

Statutory Area

The statutory area to which this statutory acknowledgement applies is the area known as Matakaea Recreation Reserve and Onewhenua Historic Reserve, as shown on Allocation Plan MS 9 (SO 24686).

Preamble

Under section 206, the Crown acknowledges Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu's statement of Ngai Tahu's cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional association to Matakaea.

Ngai Tahu Association with Matakaea

The name Matakaea recalls the tradition of the Arai Te Uru canoe, which capsized off Moeraki. From Moeraki, the crew managed to swim ashore leaving the cargo to be taken ashore by the waves. The crew members fled inland and were transformed into the mountains which form the Southern Alps.

The Arai Te Uru tradition is also important because it explains the origins of kumara. The story originally began with Roko i Tua who came to Aotearoa and met the Kahui Tipua. The Kahui Tipua gave Roko i Tua mamaku (tree fern) to eat. However Roko i Tua preferred the kumara that he had in his belt which he took out and soaked in a bowl of water. The Kahui Tipua tasted the kumara and asked where it was from. Roko i Tua replied saying that the kumara came from 'across the sea'.

The Kahui Tipua then made a canoe and, under the leadership of Tu Kakariki, went to Hawaiiiki and returned with the kumara to Aotearoa. The Kahui Tipua planted the kumara but the crop failed. However, Roko i Tua had also sailed to Hawaiiiki on the canoe called Arai Te Uru. Roko i Tua landed at Whangara, Hawaiiiki, and learnt the karakia (incantations) and tikanga (customs) connected with planting kumara. Roko i Tua then gave his canoe to two crew members called Pakihiwitahi and Hape ki Tua Raki. The Arai Te Uru returned under the leadership of these two commanders and eventually foundered off the Moeraki Coast at Matakaea.

For Ngai Tahu, traditions such as this represent the links between the cosmological world of the gods and present generations, these histories reinforce tribal identity and solidarity, and continuity between generations and document the events which shaped the environment of Te Wai Pounamu and Ngai Tahu as an iwi.

The Matakaea area has been occupied for many centuries and is the site of numerous urupa and wahi tapu. Urupa are the resting places of Ngai Tahu tupuna (ancestors)

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

and, as such, are the focus for whanau traditions. Urupa and wahi tapu are places holding the memories, traditions, victories and defeats of Ngai Tahu tupuna, and are frequently protected by secret locations.

The mauri of Matakaea represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force, and all forms of life are related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship of Ngai Tahu Whanui with the area.

Purposes of Statutory Acknowledgement

Pursuant to section 215, and without limiting the rest of this schedule, the only purposes of this statutory acknowledgement are -

- (a) To require that consent authorities forward summaries of resource consent applications to Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu as required by regulations made pursuant to section 207 (clause 12.2.3 of the deed of settlement); and
- (b) To require that consent authorities, the Historic Places Trust, or the Environment Court, as the case may be, have regard to this statutory acknowledgement in relation to Matakaea, as provided in sections 208 to 210 (clause 12.2.4 of the deed of settlement); and
- (c) To empower the Minister responsible for management of Matakaea or the Commissioner of Crown Lands, as the case may be, to enter into a Deed of Recognition as provided in section 212 (clause 12.2.6 of the deed of settlement); and
- (d) To enable Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu and any member of Ngai Tahu Whanui to cite this statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of Ngai Tahu to Matakaea as provided in section 211 (clause 12.2.5 of the deed of settlement).

Limitations on Effect of Statutory Acknowledgement

Except as expressly provided in sections 208 to 211, 213, and 215, -

- (a) This statutory acknowledgement does not affect, and is not to be taken into account in, the exercise of any power, duty, or function by any person or entity under any statute, regulation, or bylaw; and
- (b) Without limiting paragraph (a), no person or entity, in considering any matter or making any decision or recommendation under statute, regulation, or bylaw, may give any greater or lesser weight to Ngai Tahu's association to Matakaea (as described in this statutory acknowledgement) than that person or entity would give under the relevant statute, regulation, or bylaw, if this statutory acknowledgement did not exist in respect of Matakaea.

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not affect the lawful rights or interests of any person who is not a party to the deed of settlement.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not, of itself, have the effect of granting, creating, or providing evidence of any estate or interest in, or any rights of any kind whatsoever relating to, Matakaea.

SCHEDULE 64

Sections 205 and 206

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGEMENT FOR TOKATA (THE NUGGETS)

Statutory Area

The statutory area to which this statutory acknowledgement applies is the area known as Tokata (The Nuggets), as shown on Allocation Plan MS 10 (SO 24699).

Preamble

Under sections 206, the Crown acknowledges Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu's statement of Ngai Tahu's cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional association to Tokata as set out below.

Ngai Tahu Association with Tokata

The creation and shaping of Tokata and the surrounding coastline relates in time to Te Waka o Aoraki, and the subsequent efforts of Tu Te Rakiwhanoa. The name Tokata is a reference to the Nuggets, however, the individual nuggets also carry their own names: Te Ana Puta has a cave in it, Pae Koau is frequented by shags, three small nuggets on the north side are known collectively as Makunui and support a large seal colony, while the nugget furthest out to sea is Porokaea. The hill on which the lighthouse stands is known to Ngai Tahu as Taumata o Te Rakipokia, and a cave on the north side of this hill is Te Ana o Katiwairua. For Ngai Tahu, such traditional names and their associated histories reinforce tribal identity and solidarity, and continuity between generations, and document the events that have shaped the environment of Te Wai Pounamu and Ngai Tahu as an iwi.

The great explorer Rakaihautu passed by this area of the Otago coast on his journey northward, and the area was subsequently visited and occupied by Waitaha, Ngati Mamoe and Ngai Tahu in succession, who through conflict and alliance, have merged in the whakapapa (genealogy) of Ngai Tahu Whanui. This area of the Otago coast has many reminders of the uneasy relationships that once existed between Ngati Mamoe and Ngai Tahu. Skirmishes between the two iwi occurred intermittently just to the north. However, one battle occurred within the area referred to as Tokata after which some of the fallen were cooked. As a result of this activity, this area is now a wahi tapu. Such wahi tapu are the resting places of Ngai Tahu tupuna (ancestors) and, as such, are the focus for whanau traditions. These are

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

places holding the memories, traditions, victories and defeats of Ngai Tahu tupuna, and are frequently protected by secret locations.

Tokata is a significant physical marker on the South Otago coast, with waka (canoes) voyaging south and north, or out to sea on fishing expeditions utilising it as a bearing marker. It also acted as a pointer to the safe tauranga waka (landing place) in Kaimataitai Bay, just to the north. The tupuna had an intimate knowledge of navigation, sea routes, safe harbours and landing places, and the locations of food and other resources on the coast. Tokata therefore formed an integral part of a network of trails which were used in order to ensure the safest journey and incorporated locations along the way that were identified for activities including camping overnight and gathering kai. Knowledge of these trails continues to be held by whanau and hapu and is regarded as taonga. The traditional mobile lifestyle of the people led to their dependence on the resources of the land and sea. Tokata also marks the south-eastern boundary of the Otakou Sale Deed area, marked out in 1844.

A variety of mahinga kai (principally kaimoana - seafood) is available at Tokata. The extensive rocky intertidal zone provides paua, kutai (mussels) and koura (crayfish) in abundance. The fur seal, leopard seal and sea lion all rest here, with their pups forming a ready source of kai in days gone by. Gull eggs, koau (shags) and titi (muttonbirds) were also harvested in the area. An excellent rimurapa (kelp) resource was utilised for making poha (storage bags), capable of preserving the titi for up to two years. Excellent fishing grounds seaward of Tokata supplied the resources of the coast.

The tupuna had considerable knowledge of whakapapa, traditional trails and tauranga waka, places for gathering kai and other taonga, ways in which to use the resources of the land and sea, the relationship of people with the coastline and their dependence on it, and tikanga for the proper and sustainable utilisation of resources. All of these values remain important to Ngai Tahu today.

The mauri of Tokata represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force, and all forms of life are related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship of Ngai Tahu Whanui with the area.

Purposes of Statutory Acknowledgement

Pursuant to section 215, and without limiting the rest of this schedule, the only purposes of this statutory acknowledgement are -

- (a) To require that consent authorities forward summaries of resource consent applications to Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu as required by regulations made pursuant to section 207 (clause 12.2.3 of the deed of settlement); and
- (b) To require that consent authorities, the Historic Places Trust, or the Environment Court, as the case may be, have regard to this statutory

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

acknowledgement in relation to Tokata, as provided in sections 208 to 210 (clause 12.2.4 of the deed of settlement); and

- (c) To empower the Minister responsible for management of Tokata or the Commissioner of Crown Lands, as the case may be, to enter into a Deed of Recognition as provided in section 212 (clause 12.2.6 of the deed of settlement); and
- (d) To enable Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu and any member of Ngai Tahu Whanui to cite this statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of Ngai Tahu to Tokata as provided in section 211 (clause 12.2.5 of the deed of settlement).

Limitations on Effect of Statutory Acknowledgement

Except as expressly provided in sections 208 to 211, 213, and 215, -

- (a) This statutory acknowledgement does not affect, and is not to be taken into account in, the exercise of any power, duty, or function by any person or entity under any statute, regulation, or bylaw; and
- (b) Without limiting paragraph (a), no person or entity, in considering any matter or making any decision or recommendation under statute, regulation, or bylaw, may give any greater or lesser weight to Ngai Tahu's association to Tokata (as described in this statutory acknowledgement) than that person or entity would give under the relevant statute, regulation, or bylaw, if this statutory acknowledgement did not exist in respect of Tokata.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not affect the lawful rights or interests of any person who is not a party to the deed of settlement.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not, of itself, have the effect of granting, creating, or providing evidence of any estate or interest in, or any rights of any kind whatsoever relating to, Tokata.

SCHEDULE 103

Sections 205, 312 and 313

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGEMENT FOR TE TAI O ARAI TE URU
(OTAGO COASTAL MARINE AREA)

Specific Area

The statutory area to which this statutory acknowledgement applies is Te Tai o Arai Te Uru (the Otago Coastal Marine Area), the Coastal Marine Area of the Moeraki, Dunedin Coastal and Molyneaux constituencies of the Otago region, as shown on

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

SO Plans 24250, 24249, and 24252, Otago Land District and as shown on Allocation Plan NT 505 (SO 19901).

Preamble

Under section 313, the Crown acknowledges Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu's statement of Ngai Tahu's cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional association to Te Tai o Arai Te Uru as set out below.

Ngai Tahu Association with Te Tai o Arai Te Uru

The formation of the coastline of Te Wai Pounamu relates to the tradition of Te Waka o Aoraki, which foundered on a submerged reef, leaving its occupants, Aoraki and his brothers, to turn to stone. They are manifested now in the highest peaks in the Ka Tiritiri o Te Moana (the Southern Alps). The bays, inlets, estuaries and fiords which stud the coast are all the creations of Tu Te Rakiwhanoa, who took on the job of making the island suitable for human habitation.

The naming of various features along the coastline reflects the succession of explorers and iwi (tribes) who travelled around the coastline at various times. The first of these was Maui, who fished up the North Island, and is said to have circumnavigated Te Wai Pounamu. In some accounts the island is called Te Waka a Maui in recognition of his discovery of the new lands, with Rakiura (Stewart Island) being Te Puka a Maui (Maui's anchor stone). A number of coastal place names are attributed to Maui, particularly on the southern coast.

The great explorer Rakaihautu travelled overland along the coast, identifying the key places and resources. He also left many place names on prominent coastal features. Another explorer, Tamatea, sailed along the Otago coast in the waka Takitimu. After the waka eventually broke its back off the coast of Murihiku, Tamatea and the survivors made their way overland back to the North Island, arriving at the coast by the place Tamatea named O-amaru (Oamaru).

Place names along the coast record Ngai Tahu history and point to the landscape features which were significant to people for a range of reasons. For example, some of the most significant rivers which enter the coastal waters of Otago include: Waitaki, Kakaunui, Waihemo (Shag), Waikouaiti, Kaikarae (Kaikorai), Tokomairiro, Mata-au (Clutha), Pounawea (Catlins). Estuaries include: Waitete (Waitati), Otakou (Otago), Makahoe (Papanui Inlet), Murikauhaka (Mate-au and Koau estuaries), Tahaukupu (Tahakopa estuary), Waipatiki (Wapati Estuary). Islands in the coastal area include Okaihe (St Michaels Island), Moturata (Taieri Island), Paparoa, Matoketoke, Hakinikini, and Aonui (Cooks Head).

Particular stretches of the coastline also have their own traditions. The tradition of the waka (canoe) Arai Te Uru and its sinking at the mouth of the Waihemo (Shag River) has led to the coastal area of Otago being known as Te Tai o Araiteuru (the coast of Arai Te Uru). Accounts of the foundering, the wreckage, and the survivors of this waka are marked by numerous landmarks almost for the length of the Otago

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

coast. The boulders on Moeraki coast (Kai Hinaki) and the Moeraki pebbles are all associated with the cargo of gourds, kumara and taro seed which were spilled when the Arai Te Uru foundered.

For Ngai Tahu, traditions such as these represent the links between the cosmological world of the gods and present generations. These histories reinforce tribal identity and solidarity, and continuity between generations, and document the events which shaped the environment of Te Wai Pounamu and Ngai Tahu as an iwi.

Because of its attractiveness as a place to establish permanent settlements, including pa (fortified settlements), the coastal area was visited and occupied by Waitaha, Ngati Mamoe and Ngai Tahu in succession, who, through conflict and alliance, have merged in the whakapapa (genealogy) of Ngai Tahu Whanui. Battle sites, urupa and landscape features bearing the names of tupuna (ancestors) record this history. Prominent headlands, in particular, were favoured for their defensive qualities and became the headquarters for a succession of rangatira and their followers. Notable pa on the Otago coast include: Makotukutuku (Oamaru), Te Raka-a-hineatea (Moeraki), Te Pa Katata, Pa a Te Wera, (Huriawa Peninsula), Mapoutahi (Purakaunui), Pukekura (Taiaroa Head), Moturata (Taieri Island). The estuaries from the Waitaki River to the Chaslands also supported various hapu.

Tupuna such as Waitai, Tukiauau, Whaka-taka-newha, Rakiiamo, Tarewai, Maru, Te Aparangi, Taoka, Moki II, Kapo, Te Wera, Tu Wiri Roa, Taikawa, Te Hautapanuiotu among the many illustrious ancestors of Ngati Mamoe and Ngai Tahu lineage whose feats and memories are enshrined in the landscape, bays, tides and whakapapa of Otago.

The results of the struggles, alliances and marriages arising out of these migrations were the eventual emergence of a stable, organised and united series of hapu located at permanent or semi-permanent settlements along the coast, with an intricate network of mahinga kai (food gathering) rights and networks that relied to a large extent on coastal resources. Chiefs such as Korako (several), Tahatu, Honekai, Ihutakuru, Karetai, Taiaroa, Potiki, Tuhawaiki, and Pokene being some among a number who had their own villages and fishing grounds. Otago Peninsula (Muaupoko) had many kaunga nohoanga with a multitude of hapu occupying them. At one time up to 12 kainga existed in the lower Otago harbour, some larger and more important than others.

The whole of the coastal area offered a bounty of mahinga kai, including a range of kaimoana (sea food); sea fishing; eeling and harvest of other freshwater fish in lagoons and rivers; marine mammals providing whale meat and seal pups; waterfowl, sea bird egg gathering and forest birds; and a variety of plant resources including harakeke (flax), fern and ti root. In many areas the reliance on these resources increased after the land sales of the 1840s and 1850s, and the associated loss of access to much traditional land-based mahinga kai.

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

Many reefs along the coast are known by name and are customary fishing grounds, many sand banks, channels, currents and depths are also known for their kaimoana. One example is Poatiri (Mt Charles - Cape Saunders) the name of which refers to a fish hook. Poatiri juts out into the Pacific, close to the continental shelf, and is a very rich fishing ground. Another example is Blueskin Bay which was once a kohanga (breeding ground) for the right whale, although it is well over 150 years since it has seen this activity.

Other resources were also important in the coastal area. Paru (black mud used for dying) was obtained from some areas. Some of the permanent coastal settlements, such as those at the mouth of the Mata-au (Clutha River), and at Otakou and Purakaunui, were important pounamu manufacturing sites. Trading between these villages to the south and north via sea routes was an important part of the economy.

The Otago coast was also a major highway and trade route, particularly in areas where travel by land was difficult. Pounamu and titi were traded north with kumara, taro, waka, stone resources and carvings coming south. Travel by sea between settlements and hapu was common, with a variety of different forms of waka, including the southern waka hunua (double-hulled canoe) and, post-contact, whale boats plying the waters continuously. Hence tauranga waka (landing places) occur up and down the coast in their hundreds and wherever a tauranga waka is located there is also likely to be a nohoanga (settlement), fishing ground, kaimoana resource, rimurapa (bull kelp - used to make the poha, in which titi were and still are preserved) with the sea trail linked to a land trail or mahinga kai resource. The tupuna had a huge knowledge of the coastal environment and weather patterns, passed from generation to generation. This knowledge continues to be held by whanau and hapu and is regarded as a taonga. The traditional mobile lifestyle of the people led to their dependence on the resources of the coast.

Numerous urupa are being exposed or eroded at various times along much of coast. Water burial sites on the coast, known as waiwhakaheketupapaku, are also spiritually important and linked with important sites on the land. Places where kaitangata (the eating of those defeated in battle) occurred are also wahi tapu. Urupa are the resting places of Ngai Tahu tupuna and, as such, are the focus for whanau traditions. These are places holding the memories, traditions, victories and defeats of Ngai Tahu tupuna, and are frequently protected in secret locations.

The mauri of the coastal area represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force, and all forms of life are related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship of Ngai Tahu Whanui with the coastal area.

Purposes of Statutory Acknowledgement

Pursuant to section 215 and without limiting the rest of this schedule, the only purposes of this statutory acknowledgement are -

APPENDIX 3 : N G A I T A H U C L A I M S S E T T L E M E N T
A C T S T A T U T O R Y A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

- (a) To require that consent authorities forward summaries of resource consent applications to Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu as required by regulations made pursuant to section 207 (clause 12.2.3 of the deed of settlement); and
- (b) To require that consent authorities, the Historic Places Trust, or the Environment Court, as the case may be, have regard to this statutory acknowledgement in relation to Te Tai o Arai Te Uru, as provided in sections 208 to 210 (clause 12.2.4 of the deed of settlement); and
- (c) To enable Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu and any member of Ngai Tahu Tainui Whanui to cite this statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of Ngai Tahu to Te Tai o Arai Te Uru as provided in section 208 (clause 12.2.5 of the deed of settlement).

Limitations on effect of Statutory Acknowledgement

Except as expressly provided in sections 208 to 211, 213, and 215, -

- (a) This statutory acknowledgement does not affect, and is not to be taken into account in, the exercise of any power, duty or function by any person or entity under any statute, regulation, or bylaw; and
- (b) Without limiting paragraph (a), no person or entity, in considering any matter or making any decision or recommendation under statute, regulation, or bylaw, may give any greater or lesser weight to Ngai Tahu's association to Te Tai o Arai Te Uru (as described in this statutory acknowledgement) than that person or entity would give under the relevant statute, regulation, or bylaw, if this statutory acknowledgement did not exist in respect of Te Tai o Arai Te Uru.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not affect the lawful rights and interests of any person who is not a party to the deed of settlement.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not, of itself, have the effect of granting, creating or providing evidence of any estate or interest in, or any rights of any kind whatsoever relating to, Te Tai o Arai Te Uru.

Brooker's Editorial Note

It appears that the above reference (in (c) of 'Purposes') to "section 208" should be read as a reference to "section 211" because cl 208 of the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Bill, relating to the use of statutory acknowledgement with submissions, became s 211 of this Act.

Partially Operative Otago Regional Policy Statement 2019: Changes as a result of appeals

Explanatory note:

Being “partially operative” means that some provisions in the proposed Otago Regional Policy Statement are not yet settled, or do not have full legal force. This document applies in conjunction with the Partially Operative Regional Policy Statement for Otago 1998.

This version of the Partially Operative Otago Regional Policy Statement includes the changes that have occurred through appeals. The base text is the decisions version of the proposed RPS, approved by council on 1 October 2016. Changes made following appeals are marked in tracked text:

- Proposed mediation changes that have been approved by the Environment Court, but not yet made operative by Council, are shaded in grey.
- Proposed changes as a result of Environment Court Hearing but still subject to appeal (and so not operative) are shaded in yellow.
- Further additions to the RPS as a result of appeals are shown in dark red and underlined.
- Further deletions from the RPS as a result of appeals are shown in ~~dark red with strikethrough~~.

This explanation does not form part of the RPS.

Chairman's Foreword

*If your time to you is worth savin'
Then you better start swimmin' or you'll sink like a stone
For the times they are a-changin'
- Bob Dylan, 1963*

One of Dylan's critics said the classic "The Times They Are A-Changin'" was out of date as soon as it was written. Time shows otherwise; the pace of change only increases year by year.

This partially operative Otago Regional Policy Statement will help Otago keep pace. Regional policy statements are significant planning tools; overarching documents that provide direction to district plans and other resource management plans. This is a key document for creating a sustainable and prosperous future together.

The first Regional Policy Statement for Otago has been operative since 1998. A lot has changed in that time. Technology has fundamentally changed the way the world operates, in ways both exciting and confronting. Population growth, the state of our water, and climate change are poised to impact on the things we most treasure about life in Otago.

Over the last five years, along with Otago's takata whenua, local communities and stakeholders, this second Otago Regional Policy Statement has been crafted to fit today's Otago and a joint vision for the future.

Throughout the process, the proposed Otago Regional Policy Statement has retained a point of difference from other similar documents around New Zealand. The unique 5 chapter structure puts Otago's distinctive, beautiful, and valuable natural resources at the root of all we do, and recognises the golden thread of kaitiakitaka woven through all resource management. Integration is placed front and centre as the keystone for sustainable management that meets our many and varied needs and aspirations.

We've been through submissions, deliberations, and appeals; despite this, some parts of the proposed Otago Regional Policy Statement review are still unsettled. However, there are also some significant parts that have been agreed on. We want to act now, so that tomorrow's Otago is being shaped by the voices of today's communities.

So, we're taking the step of making the proposed Otago Regional Policy Statement partially operative. This means that we will live with some of the new and some of the old for a while, until the remaining parts of the proposed Statement are agreed.

This lets our most recent thinking about managing Otago's resources be part of district and regional plan processes, and begin to shape Otago's future. In my foreword to the notified version of the proposed Otago Regional Policy Statement, I said we want to look beyond the problems we face in resource management to the kind of Otago our community want, and will be proud to pass on to those who come after us. There's no better time to start than now.

Thank you to the staff, councillors, stakeholders and community members who have been involved with bringing the proposed Otago Regional Policy Statement to this point. It's time to start swimmin'.

Stephen Woodhead
Chairman
Otago Regional Council

Contents

Chairman’s Foreword.....	i
PART A Introduction.....	1
Overview.....	1
The Otago Region	1
Statutory Framework Diagram	2
Map of Otago.....	3
Kai Tahu – The Treaty Partner	4
Principles of the Treaty.....	4
Partnership	4
Expression of Te Tiriti o Waitangi	4
Kai Tahu	5
Mana Whenua in Otago.....	7
RPS Framework.....	8
Part A: Introduction	9
Part B: Objectives and Policies	9
Part C: Implementation	9
Part D: Schedules and Appendices	9
Part B Chapter 1 Resource management in Otago is integrated.....	10
Chapter overview.....	10
Objective 1.1 Otago’s resources are used sustainably to promote economic, social, and cultural wellbeing for its people and communities	11
Issue	11
Policy 1.1.1 Economic Wellbeing.....	11
Policy 1.1.2 Social and cultural wellbeing and health and safety.....	11
Principal Reasons and Explanation	12
Objective 1.2 Recognise and provide for the integrated management of natural and physical resources to support the wellbeing of people and communities in Otago	13
Issue	13
Policy 1.2.1 Integrated resource management	13
Principal Reasons and Explanation	15
Part B Chapter 2 Kāi Tahu Values and interests are recognised and Kaitiakitaka is expressed	16
Chapter Overview	16
Objective 2.1 The principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi are taken into account in resource management processes and decisions	17
Issue	17
Policy 2.1.1 Treaty Obligations	17
Policy 2.1.2 Treaty Principles	17
Principal Reasons and Explanation	18
Objective 2.2 Kāi Tahu values, interests and customary resources are recognised and provided for.....	19
Issue	19

Policy 2.2.1 Kāi Tahu wellbeing	19
Policy 2.2.2 Recognising sites of cultural significance	19
Policy 2.2.3 Wāhi tūpuna and associated sites	20
Policy 2.2.4 Sustainable use of Māori land	20
Principal Reasons and Explanation	21
Part B Chapter 3 Otago has high quality natural resources and ecosystems	22
Chapter Overview	22
Objective 3.1 The functions and values of Otago’s ecosystems and natural resources are recognised, maintained or enhanced where degraded.....	24
Issue	24
Policy 3.1.1 Fresh water.....	24
Policy 3.1.2 Beds of rivers, lakes, wetlands, and their margins.....	25
Policy 3.1.3 Water allocation and use	26
Policy 3.1.4 Water shortage	26
Policy 3.1.5 Coastal Water	27
Policy 3.1.6 Air Quality.....	27
Policy 3.1.7 Soil values	28
Policy 3.1.8 Soil erosion	29
Policy 3.1.9 Ecosystems and indigenous biological diversity	29
Policy 3.1.10 Biodiversity in the coastal environment	30
Policy 3.1.11 Natural features, landscapes, and seascapes	31
Policy 3.1.12 Natural character in the coastal environment.....	32
Policy 3.1.13 Environmental enhancement.....	32
Principal Reasons and Explanation	33
Objective 3.2 Otago's significant and highly-valued natural resources are identified, and protected or enhanced where degraded	34
Issue	34
Policy 3.2.1 Identifying significant indigenous vegetation and habitats	34
Policy 3.2.2 Managing significant indigenous vegetation and habitats	34
Policy 3.2.3 Identifying outstanding natural features, landscapes and seascapes	35
Policy 3.2.4 Managing outstanding natural features, landscapes and seascapes.....	35
Policy 3.2.5 Identifying highly valued natural features, landscapes and seascapes	36
Policy 3.2.6 Managing highly valued natural features, landscapes and seascapes.....	37
Policy 3.2.7 Landward extent of the coastal environment.....	37
Policy 3.2.8 Identifying high and outstanding natural character in the coastal environment ...	38
Policy 3.2.9 Managing the outstanding natural character of the coastal environment.....	38
Policy 3.2.10 Managing the high natural character of the coastal environment	39
Policy 3.2.11 Identifying surf breaks of national importance.....	40
Policy 3.2.12 Managing surf breaks of national importance	40
Policy 3.2.13 Identifying outstanding freshwater bodies	40
Policy 3.2.14 Managing outstanding freshwater bodies	41
Policy 3.2.15 Identifying the significant values of wetlands.....	41
Policy 3.2.16 Managing the values of wetlands	42

Policy 3.2.17 Identifying significant soil.....	42
Policy 3.2.18 Managing significant soil.....	42
Principal Reasons and Explanation	43
Part B Chapter 4 Communities in Otago are resilient, safe and healthy	44
Chapter Overview	44
Objective 4.1 Risks that natural hazards pose to Otago’s communities are minimised	47
Issue	47
Policy 4.1.1 Identifying natural hazards.....	47
Policy 4.1.2 Natural hazard likelihood	47
Policy 4.1.3 Natural hazard consequence.....	48
Policy 4.1.4 Assessing activities for natural hazard risk.....	48
Policy 4.1.5 Natural hazard risk	49
Policy 4.1.6 Minimising increase in natural hazard risk.....	50
Policy 4.1.7 Reducing existing natural hazard risk.....	51
Policy 4.1.8 Precautionary approach to natural hazard risk.....	52
Policy 4.1.9 Protecting features and systems that provide hazard mitigation.....	52
Policy 4.1.10 Mitigating natural hazards	52
Policy 4.1.11 Hard protection structures.....	53
Policy 4.1.12 Lifeline utilities and facilities for essential or emergency services	53
Policy 4.1.13 Hazard mitigation measures, lifeline utilities, and essential and emergency services	53
Principal Reasons and Explanation	54
Objective 4.2 Otago’s communities are prepared for and able to adapt to the effects of climate change.....	55
Issue	55
Policy 4.2.1 Sea level rise.....	55
Policy 4.2.2 Climate change.....	55
Principal Reasons and Explanation	56
Objective 4.3 Infrastructure is managed and developed in a sustainable way.....	57
Issue	57
Policy 4.3.1 Managing infrastructure activities	57
Policy 4.3.2 Nationally and regionally significant infrastructure.....	58
Policy 4.3.3 Functional needs of infrastructure that has national or regional significance	59
Policy 4.3.4 Adverse effects of nationally and regionally significant infrastructure	59
Policy 4.3.5 Protecting infrastructure with national or regional significance	60
Policy 4.3.6 The National Grid	61
Policy 4.3.7 Recognising port activities at Port Chalmers and Dunedin.....	61
Principal Reasons and Explanation	62
Objective 4.4 Energy resources and supplies are secure, reliable and sustainable	63
Issue	63
Policy 4.4.1 Renewable electricity generation	63
Policy 4.4.2 Small and community scale renewable electricity generation	63
Policy 4.4.3 Protecting existing renewable electricity generation	64

Policy 4.4.4 Efficient transport of electricity	64
Policy 4.4.5 Electricity distribution infrastructure	65
Policy 4.4.6 Energy efficient transport	65
Policy 4.4.7 Fuels	66
Principal Reasons and Explanation	66
Objective 4.5 Urban growth and development is well designed, occurs in a strategic and coordinated way, and integrates effectively with adjoining urban and rural environments.....	68
Issue	68
Policy 4.5.1 Providing for urban growth and development	68
Policy 4.5.2 Integrating infrastructure with land use	69
Policy 4.5.3 Urban design	71
Policy 4.5.4 Low impact design.....	71
Policy 4.5.5 Warmer buildings	72
Policy 4.5.6 Designing for public access	72
Principal Reasons and Explanation	72
Objective 4.6 Hazardous substances, contaminated land and waste materials do not harm human health or the quality of the environment in Otago	74
Issue	74
Policy 4.6.1 Hazardous substances.....	74
Policy 4.6.2 Use, storage and disposal of hazardous substances	74
Policy 4.6.3 Hazardous substance collection, disposal and recycling.....	75
Policy 4.6.4 Identifying contaminated land.....	75
Policy 4.6.5 Managing contaminated land	75
Policy 4.6.6 Waste management	76
Policy 4.6.7 Waste minimisation responses	76
Policy 4.6.8 Waste storage, recycling, recovery, treatment and disposal.....	77
Policy 4.6.9 New Contaminated land.....	78
Principal Reasons and Explanation	78
Part B Chapter 5 People are able to use and enjoy Otago’s natural and built environment	79
Chapter Overview	79
Objective 5.1 Public access to areas of value to the community is maintained or enhanced	81
Issue	81
Policy 5.1.1 Public Access	81
Principal Reasons and Explanation	82
Objective 5.2 Historic heritage resources are recognised and contribute to the region’s character and sense of identity.....	83
Issue	83
Policy 5.2.1 Recognising historic heritage	83
Policy 5.2.2 Identifying historic heritage	83
Policy 5.2.3 Managing historic heritage	84
Principal Reasons and Explanation	84
Objective 5.3 Sufficient land is managed and protected for economic production.....	85
Issue	85

Policy 5.3.1 Rural activities	85
Policy 5.3.2 Distribution of commercial activities	85
Policy 5.3.3 Industrial land.....	86
Policy 5.3.4 Mineral and petroleum exploration, extraction and processing	86
Policy 5.3.5 Tourism and outdoor recreation.....	87
Principal Reasons and Explanation	87
Objective 5.4 Adverse effects of using and enjoying Otago’s natural and physical resources are minimised	88
Issue	88
Policy 5.4.1 Offensive or objectionable discharges	88
Policy 5.4.2 Adaptive management approach.....	88
Policy 5.4.3 Precautionary approach to adverse effects	89
Policy 5.4.4 Emission standards.....	89
Policy 5.4.5 Pest plants and animals.....	89
Policy 5.4.6 Offsetting for indigenous biological diversity	90
Policy 5.4.6A Biological Diversity Compensation.....	91
Policy 5.4.7 Offsetting for air quality	92
Policy 5.4.8 Adverse effects from mineral and petroleum exploration, extraction and processing.....	92
Policy 5.4.9 Activities in the Coastal Marine Area	93
Policy 5.4.10 Managing land use change in dry catchments.....	93
Principal Reasons and Explanation	94
Part C Implementation	95
Roles and Responsibilities.....	95
Methods.....	96
Method 1: Kāi Tahu Relationships.....	96
Method 2: Regional, City and District Council Relationships	96
Method 3: Regional Plans	97
Method 4: City and District Plans	99
Method 5: Research, Monitoring and Reporting.....	104
Method 6: Non-RMA Strategies and Plans.....	107
Method 7: Education and Information.....	108
Method 8: Funding	109
Method 9: Advocacy and Facilitation	110
Monitoring Procedures and Anticipated Environmental Results	113
Monitoring procedures.....	113
Anticipated Environmental Results	113
Part D Schedules and Appendices.....	116
Schedule 1 Kāi Tahu values & interests	116
Schedule 1A Kāi Tahu values	116
Schedule 1B Interests specific to particular papatipu rūnaka.....	119
Schedule 1C Wāhi tupuna.....	122
Schedule 1D Māori land reserves	124

Schedule 2 Statutory acknowledgement areas 129

Schedule 3 Criteria for the identification of outstanding natural features, landscapes and seascapes, and highly valued natural features, landscapes and seascapes 130

Schedule 4 Criteria for the identification of areas of significant indigenous vegetation and habitat of indigenous fauna 131

Schedule 5 Criteria for the identification of historic heritage values 135

Schedule 6 Housing capacity 138

Appendix 1 Te Tiriti o Waitangi..... 139

Glossary 141

User Index 152

Abbreviations	
AER	Anticipated Environmental Result
ORC	Otago Regional Council
RMA	Resource Management Act 1991
RPS	Regional Policy Statement
Treaty	Te Tiriti o Waitangi

PART A Introduction

Overview

Continued prosperity and wellbeing is essential to ensuring the community is equipped to face the environmental, economic, cultural and social changes of the 21st century, and to provide opportunities for all people to realise their aspirations. A thriving and healthy natural environment is vital to sustaining our wellbeing.

The RPS is a high level policy framework for the sustainable integrated management of resources, identifying regionally significant issues, the objectives and policies that direct how natural and physical resources are to be managed and setting out how this will be implemented by the region's local authorities.

The RPS gives effect to the RMA and higher order planning documents, and takes into account relevant iwi authority planning documents. Regional and district plans must give effect to the RPS, as illustrated in the Statutory Framework Diagram.

The RPS has been developed to identify the best of the distinct life-style Otago has to offer: outstanding and wild environments, prosperity, abundant recreational opportunities, a sense of rich local history, and community pride. It provides for the values of all resources, people and communities. The RPS guides how these values are to be balanced in the sustainable management of natural and physical resources.

The Otago Region

Otago is 12% of New Zealand's land area and at about 32,000 km² is the second largest region in New Zealand. It stretches 480 km along the South Island's eastern coast, from the Waitaki River in the north to The Brothers Point in the south. It reaches inland to the alpine lakes Wakatipu, Wanaka and Hawea, encompassing the Clutha Mata-au, and Taieri catchments.

Otago covers a wide range of geography and ecosystems: tussock and tor covered block mountains and dry inland basins, glacial lakes and their mountain settings, broad grassy valleys fringed with beech forests extending well into the Southern Alps and dramatic coastlines around the Otago Peninsula and the Catlins. The vegetation is similarly diverse, from the lowland podocarp forests of the Catlins, through the dry grassland ecosystems of Central Otago to the high rainfall beech and alpine areas of Mount Aspiring/Tititea National Park.

Human activity has left its mark on the landscape. Māori archaeological sites, hydro lakes, tailings and bridges from the gold rush era, pastoral landscapes, and historical architecture all provide evidence of long, rich and varied human occupation.

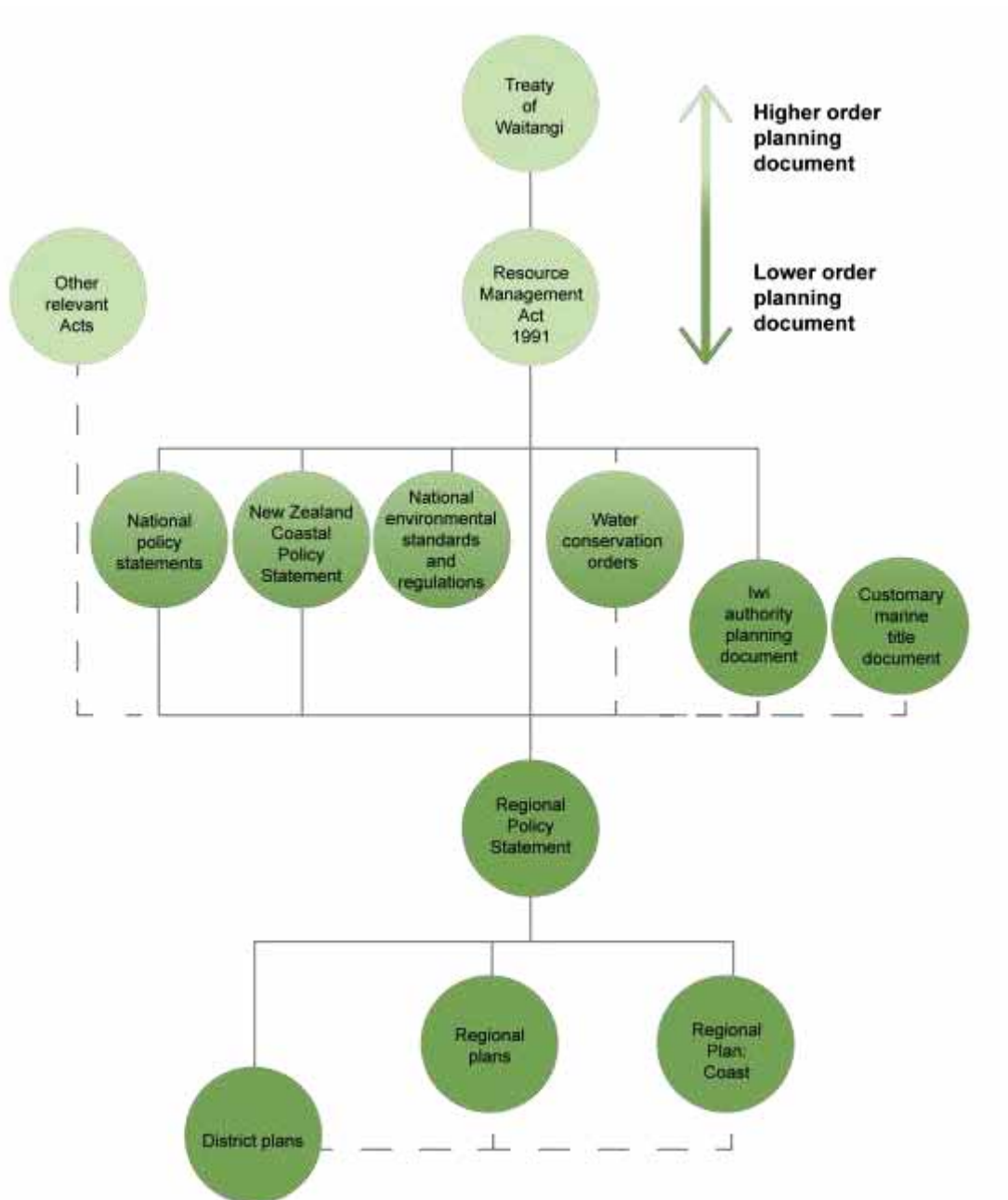
Introduced species have become a valued part of the environment in some cases, and troublesome pests in others.

Agriculture is the basis of Otago's economic development and continues to be a major source of revenue, as does mining for gold and other minerals and education. Tourism now provides more

than a quarter of Otago’s Gross Domestic Product, which is the highest proportion for any region in New Zealand.

At the 2013 census, Otago’s population of 202,467 was the seventh largest of New Zealand’s 16 regions and is about 4.8% of New Zealand's total population. The Queenstown Lakes District was the second fastest growing territorial authority area in New Zealand.

Statutory Framework Diagram



Map of Otago



Otago comprises five territorial authorities: Dunedin City Council, and Clutha, Central Otago, Queenstown Lakes and Waitaki District Councils. Waitaki District straddles both the Otago and Canterbury regions. The region includes the coastal environment offshore to 12 nautical miles.

Kāi Tahu¹ – The Treaty Partner

Te Tiriti o Waitangi, the Treaty of Waitangi, is the founding document for New Zealand, the basis upon which the partnership between Māori and the Crown was established. The Kāi Tahu rākatira Karetai and Korako signed the Treaty at Pukekura, Tairaroa Head, on 13 June 1840. The Treaty was also signed by Kāi Tahu at Akaroa, Ruapuke and Cloudy Bay. Kāi Tahu considered that the Treaty bound the tribe and the Crown irrevocably to a mutual agreement which imposed responsibilities on both signatories.

Principles of the Treaty

In drafting legislation, Parliament has chosen to refer to the principles of the Treaty, rather than its explicit terms. The principles of the Treaty, as enunciated by the Waitangi Tribunal and the courts, include:

- The principle of tribal rākatirataka/self-regulation. Recognising the right of Kāi Tahu to manage resources and exercise kaitiakitaka over their ancestral lands, waters, and other taoka.
- The principle of partnership. Mutual obligations to act reasonably and in good faith.
- The principle of active participation in decision making.
- The principle of active protection of Kāi Tahu interests.
- The principle of development. The Treaty principles are not confined to customary uses or the state of knowledge as at 1840 but are to be adapted to modern, changing circumstances.

There are two versions of the Treaty of Waitangi, the English version and the Māori version. See Appendix 2. The Māori language text, as the version signed by the Kāi Tahu rākatira, should prevail if there is ambiguity.

Partnership

The ORC has an established relationship with Kāi Tahu based on the Treaty partnership. Kāi Tahu values the relationship with the ORC and is committed to working with the wider community towards a positive future for all people. Partnership between the ORC and Kāi Tahu embodies the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi in decision making and local environmental management.

Expression of Te Tiriti o Waitangi

The RPS has been developed in consultation with Kāi Tahu. It identifies the matters that have the potential to affect cultural values and wellbeing, and enables Kāi Tahu to participate in resource management processes.

Matters of particular interest to Kāi Tahu include:

¹ In the south of the South Island, the local Māori dialect uses a 'k' interchangeably with 'ng'. The preference is to use a 'k' so southern Māori are known as Kāi Tahu, rather than Ngāi Tahu. In this document, the "ng" is used for the iwi in general, and the "k" for southern Māori in particular. See the glossary for a complete definition.

- Recognising the rights and interests of Kāi Tahu to be involved in natural and resource management processes.
- Identifying and protecting important natural and physical resources, including the coast, waterways, lakes, wetlands and indigenous flora and fauna.
- Protecting traditional food gathering sites from any use or development which may threaten the values of these areas.
- Protecting mahika kai and restoring access to mahika kai areas;
- Protecting wāhi tūpuna and urupā.
- Enabling development of land and resources within native reserves, including papakāika housing.

Kāi Tahu²

Kāi Tahu are takata whenua of the Otago region. Waitaha were the first people of Te Waipounamu, the South Island. Led by Rākaihautū, they explored and settled Te Waipounamu, and their exploits are reflected in enduring place names and histories across the motu. Waitaha were followed by the arrival of Kāti Māmoe and finally Kāi Tahu. Through warfare, intermarriage and political alliances a common allegiance to Kāi Tahu was forged. Kāi Tahu means the ‘people of Tahu’, linking them by name to their common ancestor Tahu Pōtiki.

The Kāi Tahu tribal area extends from the sub Antarctic islands in the south to Te Parinuiowhiti (White Cliffs, Blenheim) in the north and to Kahurangi Point on Te Tai o Poutini (the West Coast).

Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu (the iwi authority) is made up of 18 papatipu rūnaka, of which four are in Otago.

Located predominantly in traditional coastal settlements, papatipu rūnaka are a focus for whānau and hapū (extended family groups) who have takata whenua status within their area. Takata whenua hold traditional customary authority and maintain contemporary relationships within an area determined by whakapapa (genealogical ties), resource use and ahi-kā-roa (the long burning fires of occupation).

Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu encourages consultation with the papatipu rūnaka and takes into account the views of nga rūnaka when determining its own position. The four Otago rūnaka are Te Rūnanga o Moeraki, Kati Huirapa Rūnaka ki Puketeraki, Te Rūnanga o Otakou, and Hokonui Rūnanga.

The interests of these rūnaka are given in more detail in Schedule 1B. They share an interest in South Otago and the inland lakes and mountains with the Southland papatipu rimaka.

The areas of shared interest originate from the seasonal hunting and gathering economy that was a distinctive feature of the southern Kāi Tahu lifestyle. Seasonal mobility was an important means by which hapū and whānau maintained customary rights to the resources of the interior and ahi kā.

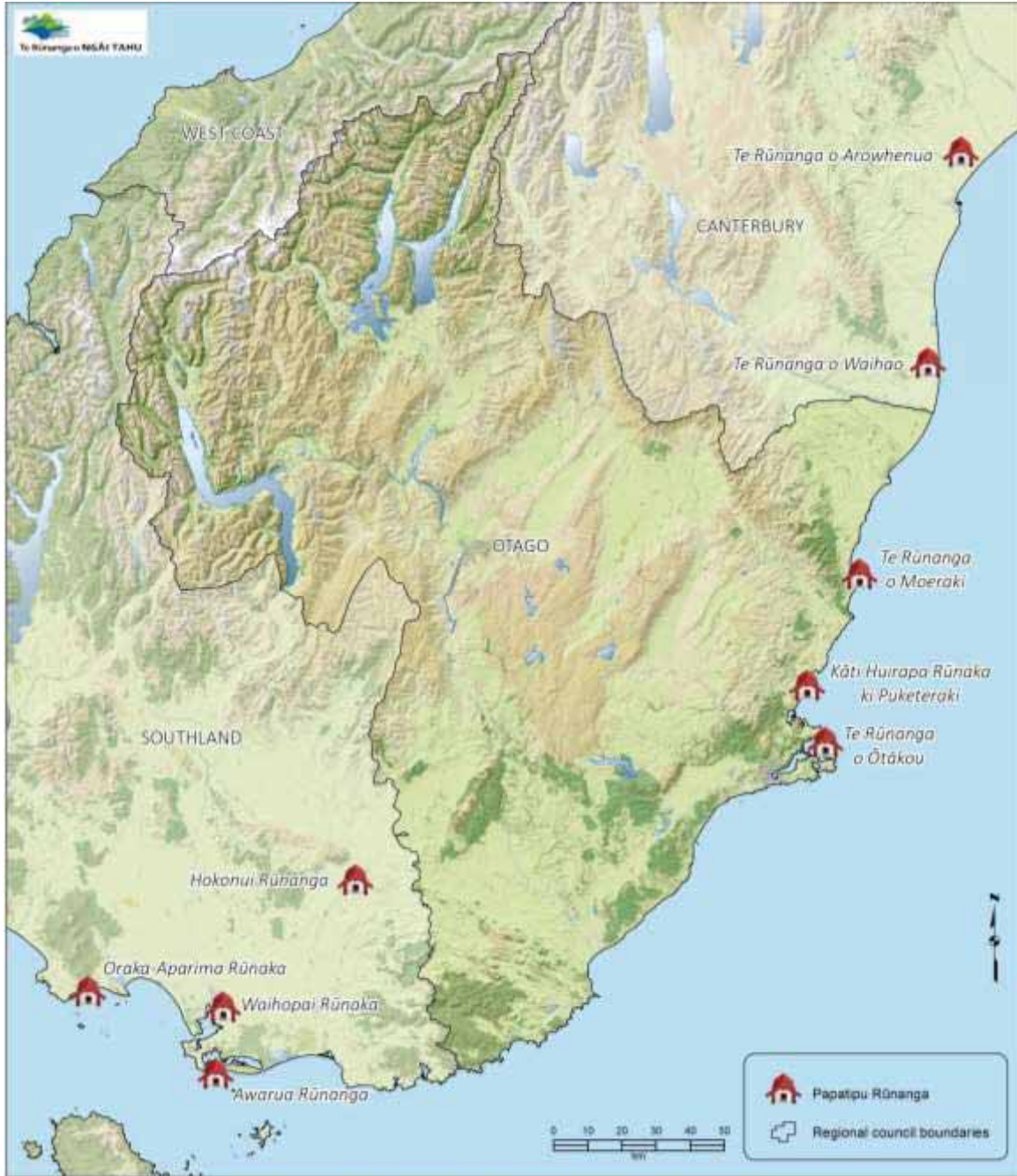
² Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

Otago is also home to Māori from other iwi, hapū, and mātāwaka. The Araiteuru marae in Dunedin and Te Whare Koa in Oamaru are important pan-tribal cultural centres for mātāwaka and sit within the manaakitanga of takata whenua.

In 1998, the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 was enacted to settle historical Ngāi Tahu claims against the Crown. This Act identifies some taoka species, establishes tōpuni, statutory acknowledgements, dual place names and nohoaka sites. These recognise the special association of Ngāi Tahu with these areas and resources and assist with Ngāi Tahu participation in processes under the Resource Management Act 1991 and the Local Government Act 2002.

The papatipu rūnaka consultancy services, Kāi Tahu Ki Otago Ltd, representing the Otago rūnaka, and Te Ao Marama Inc, representing the Southland rūnaka, provide a first point of contact and facilitate Kāi Tahu engagement in resource management processes.

Mana whenua in Otago



RPS Framework

Part A: Introduction	Overview The Otago Region Kāi Tahu – The Treaty Partner RPS Framework
-----------------------------	--



Part B: Objectives and Policies	
	Each chapter is ordered as follows: Introduction Objective Related issue Policies Methods Principal Reasons and Explanations



Part C: Implementation	Roles and responsibilities Methods Anticipated Environmental Results
-------------------------------	--



Part D: Schedules and Appendices	Schedules 1 – 6 Appendix Glossary User Index
---	---

Five outcomes are sought in managing the region's natural and physical resources.

All provisions of the RPS must be considered together. The outcomes inter-relate, and no hierarchy exists between them.

These outcomes provide the framework for sustainable, integrated management of resource use for us and for the generations that come after us - *Mō tātou, ā, mō kā uri ā muri ake nei*.

These outcomes form the chapters of Part B, which contain the inter-related objectives and policies. The focus of each chapter is outlined below.

Part A: Introduction

This explains the RPS context and purpose.

Part B: Objectives and Policies

The five outcomes form the chapter headings of Part B: Objectives and Policies.

Objectives and policies are set out under each chapter, together with the relevant regionally significant issues being addressed and general implementation methods. Schedules provide further detail for specific policies.

The five outcomes are:

1. Resource management in Otago is integrated
2. Kāi Tahu values, and interests are recognised and kaitiakitaka is expressed
3. Otago has high quality natural resources and ecosystems
4. Communities in Otago are resilient, safe and healthy
5. People are able to use and enjoy our natural and built environment

Part C: Implementation

Part C: Implementation details the methods and procedures that will be used by local authorities to give effect to the objectives and policies of the RPS. This includes identifying the division of roles and responsibilities under the RMA, as well as monitoring, reporting and other methods to achieve the objectives of the RPS.

This section also contains the anticipated environmental results from implementing the RPS policies and methods.

Part D: Schedules and Appendices

The schedules provide additional detail supporting RPS policies. The Appendix provides the wording of Te Tiriti o Waitangi in Te Reo and English. A glossary and user index are provided for ease of use.

PART B Chapter 1 Resource management in Otago is integrated

This first chapter recognises that the different parts of the natural and physical environment are interconnected. The integrated management of natural and physical resources and human values is essential to safeguard the life-supporting capacity of the environment and enable the social, cultural, and economic wellbeing of all people and communities.

Chapter overview:

Objective 1.1³

Otago's resources are used sustainably to promote economic, social, and cultural wellbeing for its people and communities Page

Policy 1.1.1⁴ Economic wellbeing 11

Policy 1.1.2⁵ Social and cultural wellbeing and health and safety 11

Objective 1.12⁶

Recognise and provide for the integrated management of natural and physical resources to support the wellbeing of people and communities in Otago. Page

Policy 1.12.1⁷ Integrated resource management ~~13~~15

Policy 1.1.2⁸ Economic wellbeing 14

Policy 1.1.3⁹ Social and cultural wellbeing and health and safety 14

³ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

⁴ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

⁵ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

⁶ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

⁷ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

⁸ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

⁹ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

Objective 1.1¹⁰ Otago’s resources are used sustainably to promote economic, social, and cultural wellbeing for its people and communities

Issue

The social and economic wellbeing of Otago’s communities depends on use and development of natural and physical resources.

Loss or degradation of resources can diminish their intrinsic values and constrains opportunities for use and development now and into the future.

Some of Otago’s resources are nationally or regionally important for their natural values and economic potential and so warrant careful management.

Policy 1.1.1¹¹ Economic wellbeing

Provide for the economic wellbeing of Otago’s people and communities by enabling the resilient and sustainable use and development of natural and physical resources.

Method 2: Regional, City and District Council Relationships

Method 2.1, Method 2.2

Method 3: Regional Plans

Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans

Method 4.1

Policy 1.1.2¹² Social and cultural wellbeing and health and safety

Provide for the social and cultural wellbeing and health and safety of Otago’s people and communities when undertaking the subdivision, use, development and protection of natural and physical resources by all of the following:

- a) Recognising and providing for Kāi Tahu values;
- b) Taking into account the values of other cultures;
- c) Taking into account the diverse needs of Otago’s people and communities;
- d) Avoiding significant adverse effects of activities on human health;

¹⁰ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

¹¹ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

¹² Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

- e) Promoting community resilience and the need to secure resources for the reasonable needs for human wellbeing;
- f) Promoting good quality and accessible infrastructure and public services.

Method 1: Kāi Tahu Relationships
Method 1.1, Method 1.2

Method 2: Regional, City and District Council Relationships
Method 2.1, Method 2.2

Method 3: Regional Plans
Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans
Method 4.1

Method 9: Advocacy and Facilitation
Method 9.1.2 g

Principal Reasons and Explanation

Sustainable management under the RMA includes enabling social, economic and cultural wellbeing for present and future generations. Resource management decisions need to recognise that individual and community wellbeing depends on use, development and protection of natural and physical resources.

Objective 1.12¹³ Recognise and provide for the integrated management of natural and physical resources to support the wellbeing of people and communities in Otago

Issue:

Natural and physical resources are interconnected, complex and should be managed in an integrated, sustainable, consistent and effective way because the use of one resource may adversely affect another. Inefficient and ineffective responses or unexpected adverse effects can occur when Aactivities affecting a resource are often undertaken by different resource users, governed by different legislation, or and administered by different local authorities. Plans need to address diverse and conflicting interests.

Policy 1.12.1¹⁴ Integrated resource management

Achieve integrated management of Otago's natural and physical resources, by all of the following:

- a) Coordinating the management of interconnected natural and physical resources;
- b) Taking into account the impacts of management of one natural or physical resource on the values of another, or on the environment;
- c) Recognising that the value and function of a natural or physical resource may extend beyond the immediate, or directly adjacent, area of interest;
- d) Ensuring that resource management approaches across administrative boundaries are consistent and complementary;
- e) Ensuring that effects of activities on the whole of a natural or physical resource are considered when that resource is managed as subunits.
- f) Managing adverse effects of activities to give effect to the objectives and policies of the Regional Policy Statement.
- g) Promoting healthy ecosystems and ecosystem services;
- h) Promoting methods that reduce or negate the risk of exceeding sustainable resource limits.

Method 2: **Regional, City and District Council Relationships**
Method 2.1, Method 2.2

Method 3: **Regional Plans**
Method 3.1

Method 4: **City and District Plans**
Method 4.1

Method 9: **Advocacy and Facilitation**

¹³ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

¹⁴ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

Method 9.2**Policy 1.1.2¹⁵ Economic wellbeing**

Provide for the economic wellbeing of Otago's people and communities by enabling the use and development of natural and physical resources only if the adverse effects of those activities on the environment can be managed to give effect to the objectives and policies of the Regional Policy Statement.

Method 2: ~~Regional, City and District Council Relationships~~
~~Method 2.1, Method 2.2~~

Method 3: ~~Regional Plans~~
~~Method 3.1~~

Method 4: ~~City and District Plans~~
~~Method 4.1~~

Policy 1.1.3¹⁶ Social and cultural wellbeing and health and safety

Provide for the social and cultural wellbeing and health and safety of Otago's people and communities when undertaking the subdivision, use, development and protection of natural and physical resources by all of the following:

- a) ~~Recognising and providing for Kāi Tahu values;~~
- b) ~~Taking into account the values of other cultures;~~
- c) ~~Taking into account the diverse needs of Otago's people and communities;~~
- d) ~~Promoting good quality and accessible infrastructure and public services;~~
- e) ~~Avoiding significant adverse effects of activities on human health.~~

Method 1: ~~Kāi Tahu Relationships~~
~~Method 1.1, Method 1.2~~

Method 2: ~~Regional, City and District Council Relationships~~
~~Method 2.1, Method 2.2~~

Method 3: ~~Regional Plans~~
~~Method 3.1~~

Method 4: ~~City and District Plans~~
~~Method 4.1~~

Method 9: ~~Advocacy and Facilitation~~
~~Method 9.1.2 g~~

¹⁵ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

¹⁶ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

Principal Reasons and Explanation:

The RMA requires that resources are managed in an integrated way.

The management of natural and physical resources needs to be integrated to ensure that resource management decisions are consistent, take account of the linkages between all parts of the environment and recognise and provide for the diversity of different interests and values associated with resources.

PART B Chapter 2 Kāi Tahu values and interests are recognised and kaitiakitaka is expressed

He taura whiri kotahi mai anō te kopunga tai nō i te pu au

“From the source to the mouth of the sea, all things are joined together as one”.

Te Tiriti o Waitangi establishes a partnership between Kāi Tahu and the Crown. The RMA requires that the relationship of Māori and their culture and traditions with their ancestral lands, water, sites, wāhi tapu, and other taonga, is recognised and provided for and that the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi are taken into account. In the spirit of this partnership, and the Treaty principles, the RPS seeks to create the terms for engaging with Kāi Tahu closely in resource management.

This chapter incorporates the principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi and sets out general considerations for the incorporation of Kāi Tahu values and interests into resource management planning, consenting, and implementation processes. Kāi Tahu themes are integrated throughout this document, and this chapter serves to tie these strands together. It reflects the Kāi Tahu philosophy of holistic resource management, ki uta ki tai – “from the mountains to the sea”.

Chapter overview:

Objective 2.1

The principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi are taken into account in resource management processes and decisions.	Page
--	------

Policy 2.1.1	Treaty obligations	1722
--------------	--------------------	-----------------

Policy 2.1.2	Treaty principles	1722
--------------	-------------------	-----------------

Objective 2.2

Kāi Tahu values, interests and customary resources are recognised and provided for.	Page
--	------

Policy 2.2.1	Kāi Tahu wellbeing	1925
--------------	--------------------	-----------------

Policy 2.2.2	Recognising sites of cultural significance	1925
--------------	--	-----------------

Policy 2.2.3	Wāhi tūpuna and associated sites	2026
--------------	----------------------------------	-----------------

Policy 2.2.4	Sustainable use of Māori land	2027
--------------	-------------------------------	-----------------

Objective 2.1 The principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi are taken into account in resource management processes and decisions

Issue:

The principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi are broad concepts that need further exploration when applied to specific circumstances.

Effective planning tools and processes are required to give effect to the Treaty relationship between Kāi Tahu and local authorities in accordance with Part 2 of the RMA

Policy 2.1.1 Treaty obligations

Promote awareness and understanding of the obligations of local authorities in regard to the principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi, tikaka Māori and kaupapa Māori.

Method 1: Kāi Tahu Relationships

Method 1.1, Method 1.2, Method 1.3, Method 1.4

Policy 2.1.2 Treaty principles

Ensure that local authorities exercise their functions and powers, by :

- a) Recognising Kāi Tahu's status as a Treaty partner; and
- b) Involving Kāi Tahu in resource management processes implementation;
- c) Taking into account Kāi Tahu values in resource management decision-making processes and implementation;
- d) Recognising and providing for the relationship of Kāi Tahu's culture and traditions with their ancestral lands, water, sites, wāhi tapu, and other taoka;
- e) Ensuring Kāi Tahu have the ability to:
 - i. Identify their relationship with their ancestral lands, water, sites, wāhi tapu, and other taoka;
 - ii. Determine how best to express that relationship;
- f) Having particular regard to the exercise of kaitiakitaka;
- g) Ensuring that district and regional plans:
 - i. Give effect to the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998;
 - ii. Recognise and provide for statutory acknowledgement areas in Schedule 2;
 - iii. Provide for other areas in Otago that are recognised as significant to Kāi Tahu;
- h) Taking into account iwi management plans.

Method 1: Kāi Tahu Relationships

Method 1.1, Method 1.2, Method 1.3, Method 1.4

Method 2: Regional, City and District Council Relationships

Method 2.2.4

Method 3:	Regional Plans Method 3.1.1, Method 3.1.2
Method 4:	City and District Plans Method 4.1.1110, Method 4.1.1211, Method 4.1.1413, Method 4.2.3, Method 4.2.5, Method 4.2.98
Method 5:	Research, Monitoring and Reporting Method 5.1.4
Method 8:	Funding Method 8.1

Principal Reasons and Explanation:

Te Tiriti o Waitangi creates a special relationship between takata whenua and the Crown. The RMA requires local authorities to take the principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi into account, with particular regard to kaitiakitaka.

Local authorities need to incorporate these principles into their decision making to ensure they are properly applied, and to account for the effects of resource management decisions on Kāi Tahu values, including those described in iwi resource management plans.

Section 8 of the RMA requires local authorities to take into account the principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi. Deliberate measures need to be taken to ensure the principles are properly understood and taken into account. The principles are broadly expressed, so a measure of flexibility is needed.

In particular exercising kaitiakitaka requires the ability to participate in resource management processes and implementation.

A partnership approach which involves Kāi Tahu and considers their values and interests in decision making processes, enables the principles, including kaitiakitaka, to be taken into account in an appropriately flexible way.

Objective 2.2 Kāi Tahu values, interests and customary resources are recognised and provided for

Issue:

The mauri and wairua of some places, sites, resources and the values of cultural, spiritual or historic significance to Kāi Tahu have often been destroyed or degraded.

In some instances it has been difficult for Kāi Tahu to use and develop Māori land for the purposes for which it was originally granted.

Policy 2.2.1¹⁷ Kāi Tahu wellbeing

Manage the natural environment to support Kāi Tahu wellbeing by all of the following:

- a) ~~Ensuring the sustainable management of resources supports~~ Recognising and providing for their customary uses and cultural values in Schedules 1A and B; and,
- b) Safe-guarding the life-supporting capacity of natural resources.

Method 1:	Kāi Tahu Relationships Method 1.1, Method 1.2, Method 1.3, Method 1.4
Method 2:	Regional, City and District Council Relationships Method 2.2.4
Method 3:	Regional Plans Method 3.1
Method 4:	City and District Plans Method 4.1, Method 4.2

Policy 2.2.2¹⁸ Recognising sites of cultural significance

Recognise and provide for the protection of wāhi tūpuna, ~~as described in Schedule 1C~~ by all of the following:

- a) Avoiding significant adverse effects on those values ~~which that~~ contribute to the identified wāhi tūpuna being significant;
- b) Avoiding, remedying, or mitigating other adverse effects on the identified wāhi tūpuna;
- c) Managing ~~those landscapes and~~ the identified wāhi tūpuna sites in a culturally appropriate manner.

¹⁷ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

¹⁸ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

- Method 1: Kāi Tahu Relationships**
Method 1.1, Method 1.2, [Method 1.2.1](#), Method 1.3, Method 1.4
- Method 2: Regional, City and District Council Relationships**
Method 2.2.4, [Method 2.2.2](#)
- Method 3: Regional Plans**
Method 3.1
- Method 4: City and District Plans**
Method 4.1, Method 4.2
- Method 5: Research, Monitoring and Reporting**
Method 5.1.4

Policy 2.2.3 Wāhi tūpuna and associated sites

Enable Kāi Tahu relationships with wāhi tūpuna by all of the following:

- a) Recognising that relationships between sites of cultural significance are an important element of wāhi tūpuna;
- b) Recognising and using traditional place names.

- Method 2: Regional, City and District Council Relationships**
Method 2.2.4
- Method 3: Regional Plans**
Method 3.1
- Method 4: City and District Plans**
Method 4.1, Method 4.2
- Method 9: Advocacy and Facilitation**
Method 9.2.8 b.

Policy 2.2.4 Sustainable use of Māori land

Enable Kāi Tahu to protect, develop and use land and resources within native reserves in a way consistent with their culture and traditions and economic, cultural and social aspirations, including for papakāika, marae and marae related activities, while:

- a) Avoiding adverse effects on the health and safety of people; and
- b) Avoiding significant adverse effects on matters of national importance; and
- c) Avoiding, remedying or mitigating other adverse effects.

- Method 3: Regional Plans**
Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans
Method 4.1. ~~1211~~

Principal Reasons and Explanation:

In managing natural and physical resources, local authorities need to recognise Kāi Tahu values, take into account Kāi Tahu plans, and the exercise of their customary rights.

Kāi Tahu's traditions, culture and practices are intricately linked with their ancestral lands, water, sites, wāhi tapu, and other taoka. The RMA requires that these values are recognised and provided for as a matter of national importance.

The exercise of kaitiakitaka requires a healthy, functioning natural environment, and recognition of values and sites of significance.

PART B Chapter 3 Otago has high quality natural resources and ecosystems¹⁹

People and communities need to sustainably manage the environment, including safeguarding the life-supporting capacity of natural resources and recognising the intrinsic values of ecosystems, ~~is~~ are essential to provide for the current and future wellbeing of people and communities.

The economy, particularly primary production, tourism, and mineral and petroleum exploration and extraction, strongly relies on the quantity and quality of natural resources and the ecosystem services they provide.

This chapter begins with the recognition and maintenance of all natural resources. The second part focuses on the identification, protection, and enhancement of natural resources that are nationally or regionally important. This chapter is not concerned with sustaining mineral resources for future generations.

Chapter overview:

Objective 3.1

The values (including intrinsic values) of ~~Otago's~~ ecosystems and natural resources are recognised, and maintained, and or enhanced where degraded. Page

Policy 3.1.1	Fresh water	243 <u>22</u>
Policy 3.1.2	Beds of rivers, lakes, wetlands and their margins	253 <u>33</u>
Policy 3.1.3	Water allocation and use	263 <u>33</u>
Policy 3.1.4	Water shortage	263 <u>4</u>
Policy 3.1.5	Coastal water	273 <u>4</u>
Policy 3.1.6	Air quality	273 <u>5</u>
Policy 3.1.7	Soil values	283 <u>6</u>
Policy 3.1.8	Soil erosion	293 <u>6</u>
Policy 3.1.9	Ecosystems and indigenous biological diversity	293 <u>7</u>
<u>Policy 3.1.10</u>	<u>Biodiversity in the coastal environment</u>	<u>30</u>
Policy 3.1.11 <u>10</u>	Natural features, landscapes, and seascapes	313 <u>8</u>
Policy 3.1.12 <u>11</u>	Natural character in the coastal environment	323 <u>9</u>
Policy 3.1.13 <u>12</u>	Environmental enhancement	323 <u>9</u>

Objective 3.2

Otago's significant and highly-valued natural resources are identified, ~~and~~ protected, or enhanced where degraded. Page

Policy 3.2.1	Identifying significant <u>indigenous</u> vegetation and habitats	344 <u>1</u>
--------------	---	-------------------------

¹⁹ Chapter 3 changed by Environment Court consent order – 15 March 2019

Policy 3.2.2	Managing significant <u>indigenous</u> vegetation and habitats	<u>3442</u>
Policy 3.2.3	Identifying outstanding natural features, landscapes and seascapes	<u>3542</u>
Policy 3.2.4	Managing outstanding natural features, landscapes and seascapes	<u>3542</u>
Policy 3.2.5	Identifying highly valued natural features, landscapes and seascapes	<u>3643</u>
Policy 3.2.6	Managing highly valued natural features, landscapes and seascapes	<u>3743</u>
Policy 3.2.7	Landward extent of the coastal environment	<u>3744</u>
Policy 3.2.8	Identifying high and outstanding natural character in the coastal environment	<u>3845</u>
Policy 3.2.9	Managing the outstanding natural character of the coastal environment	<u>3846</u>
Policy 3.2.10	Managing the high natural character of the coastal environment	<u>3946</u>
Policy 3.2.11	Identifying surf breaks of national importance	<u>4047</u>
Policy 3.2.12	Managing surf breaks of national importance	<u>4047</u>
Policy 3.2.13	Identifying outstanding freshwater bodies	<u>4048</u>
Policy 3.2.14	Managing outstanding freshwater bodies	<u>4048</u>
Policy 3.2.15	Identifying the significant values of wetlands	<u>4149</u>
Policy 3.2.16	Managing the values of wetlands	<u>4149</u>
Policy 3.2.17	Identifying significant soil	<u>4250</u>
Policy 3.2.18	Managing significant soil	<u>4250</u>

Objective 3.1 The values (including intrinsic values) of Otago's ecosystems and natural resources are recognised, and maintained, and or enhanced where degraded

Issue:

Degradation of natural values and natural systems compromises the life-supporting capacity of the environment, the intrinsic values of ecosystems and the ecosystem services they provide.

Knowledge of these systems and their interdependencies is often imperfect.

Cumulative effects of human activities on the natural environment may be difficult to pinpoint initially but over time can result in serious damage.

Policy 3.1.1 **Fresh water**

Safeguard the life-supporting capacity of fresh water and manage fresh water to:

- a) Maintain good quality water and enhance water quality where it is degraded, including for:
 - i. Important recreation values, including contact recreation; and,
 - ii. Existing drinking and stock water supplies;
- b) Maintain or enhance aquatic:
 - i. Ecosystem health;
 - ii. Indigenous habitats; and,
 - iii. Indigenous species and their migratory patterns.
- c) Avoid aquifer compaction and seawater intrusion;
- d) Maintain or enhance, as far as practicable:
 - i. Natural functioning of rivers, lakes, and wetlands, their riparian margins, and aquifers;
 - ii. Coastal values supported by fresh water;
 - iii. The habitat of trout and salmon unless detrimental to indigenous biological diversity;
and
 - iv. Amenity and landscape values of rivers, lakes, and wetlands;
- e) Control the adverse effects of pest species, prevent their introduction and reduce their spread;
- f) Avoid, remedy or mitigate the adverse effects of natural hazards, including flooding and erosion; and,
- g) Avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects on existing infrastructure that is reliant on fresh water.

Manage fresh water to achieve all of the following:

- a) Maintain or enhance ecosystem health in all Otago aquifers, and rivers, lakes, wetlands, and their margins;
- b) Maintain or enhance the range and extent of habitats provided by fresh water, including the habitat of trout and salmon;
- c) Recognise and provide for the migratory patterns of freshwater species, unless detrimental to indigenous biological diversity;
- d) Avoid aquifer compaction and seawater intrusion in aquifers;

- e) Maintain good water quality, including in the coastal marine area, or enhance it where it has been degraded;
- f) Maintain or enhance coastal values;
- g) Maintain or enhance the natural functioning of rivers, lakes, and wetlands, their riparian margins, and aquifers;
- h) Maintain or enhance the quality and reliability of existing drinking and stock water supplies;
- i) Recognise and provide for important recreation values;
- j) Maintain or enhance the amenity and landscape values of rivers, lakes, and wetlands;
- k) Control the adverse effects of pest species, prevent their introduction and reduce their spread;
- l) Avoid, remedy or mitigate the adverse effects of natural hazards, including flooding and erosion;
- m) Avoid, remedy, or mitigate adverse effects on existing infrastructure that is reliant on fresh water.

Method 3: Regional Plans

Method 3.1.3

Method 5: Research, Monitoring and Reporting

Method 5.2.1

Method 6: Non RMA Strategies and Plans

Method 6.7

Policy 3.1.2 Beds of rivers, lakes, wetlands, and their margins

Manage the beds of rivers, lakes, wetlands, their margins, and riparian vegetation to:

- a) Safeguard the life supporting capacity of fresh water;
- b) Maintain good quality water, or enhance it where it has been degraded;
- c) Maintain or enhance bank stability;
- d) Maintain or enhance ecosystem health and indigenous biological diversity;
- e) Maintain or enhance, as far as practicable:
 - i. Their natural functioning and character; and
 - ii. Amenity values;
- f) Control the adverse effects of pest species, prevent their introduction and reduce their spread; and,
- g) Avoid, remedy or mitigate the adverse effects of natural hazards, including flooding and erosion.

Manage the beds of rivers, lakes, wetlands, their margins, and riparian vegetation to achieve all of the following:

- a) Maintain or enhance their natural functioning;
- b) Maintain good water quality, or enhance it where it has been degraded;
- c) Maintain or enhance ecosystem health and indigenous biological diversity;
- d) Maintain or enhance natural character;
- e) Maintain or enhance amenity values;

- ~~f) Control the adverse effects of pest species, prevent their introduction and reduce their spread;~~
- ~~g) Avoid, remedy or mitigate the adverse effects of natural hazards, including flooding and erosion;~~
- ~~h) Maintain or enhance bank stability.~~

Method 3: Regional Plans
Method 3.1.3, Method 3.1.~~14~~~~13~~

Method 4: City and District Plans
Method 4.1.~~4~~~~3~~, Method 4.1.15

Method 6: Non RMA Strategies and Plans
Method 6.7

Policy 3.1.3 Water allocation and use

Manage the allocation and use of fresh water by undertaking all of the following:

- ~~a) Recognising and providing for the social and economic benefits of sustainable water use;~~
- ~~b) Avoiding over-allocation, and phasing out existing over-allocation, resulting from takes and discharges;~~
- ~~c) Ensure Ensuring the efficient allocation and use of water by ~~undertaking all of the following:~~~~

 - ~~ai) Requiring that the ~~volume of~~ water allocated does not exceed what is necessary for its efficient use;~~
 - ~~bii) Encouraging the development or upgrade of infrastructure that increases ~~use~~ efficiency; -~~
 - ~~iii. Providing for temporary dewatering activities necessary for construction or maintenance.~~

Method 3: Regional Plans
Method 3.1

Method 9: Advocacy and Facilitation
Method 9.2.8

Policy 3.1.4 Water shortage

Manage for water shortage by undertaking all of the following:

- ~~a) Encouraging land management that improves moisture capture, infiltration, and soil moisture holding capacity.~~
- ~~ba) Encouraging collective coordination and rationing of the take and use of water when river flows or aquifer levels are lowering, to avoid breaching any minimum flow or aquifer level restriction to optimise use of water available for taking;~~
- ~~cb) Providing for Encouraging water harvesting and storage, subject to allocation limits and flow management, to reduce demand on water bodies during periods of low flows.~~

Method 3: Regional Plans

Method 3.1

Method 9: Advocacy and Facilitation

Method 9.2.7

Policy 3.1.5 Coastal waterManage coastal water to:

- a) Maintain coastal water quality or enhance it where it has been degraded;
- b) Maintain healthy coastal ecosystems, the range of indigenous habitats provided by the coastal marine area, and the migratory patterns of indigenous coastal water species or enhance these values where they have been degraded;
- c) Maintain or enhance important recreation values;
- d) Maintain or enhance, as far as practicable:
 - i. Coastal values; and
 - ii. The habitats provided by the coastal marine area for trout and salmon unless detrimental to indigenous biological diversity.
- e) Control the adverse effects of pest species, prevent their introduction and reduce their spread.

Manage coastal water to achieve all of the following:

- a) Maintain or enhance healthy coastal ecosystems;
- b) Maintain or enhance the range of habitats provided by the coastal marine area, including the habitat of trout and salmon;
- c) Recognise and provide for the migratory patterns of coastal water species unless detrimental to indigenous biological diversity;
- d) Maintain coastal water quality or enhance it where it has been degraded;
- e) Maintain or enhance coastal values;
- f) Recognise and provide for important recreation values;
- g) Control the adverse effects of pest species, prevent their introduction and reduce their spread.

Method 3: Regional Plans

Method 3.1.3

Method 5: Research, Monitoring and Reporting

Method 5.2.1, Method 5.2.2

Method 9: Advocacy and Facilitation

Method 9.2.3, Method 9.2.5

Policy 3.1.6 Air qualityManage air quality to achieve the following:

- a) Maintain good ambient air quality that supports human health, or enhance air quality where it has been degraded;

b) Maintain or enhance amenity values.

Method 3: Regional Plans

Method 3.1.98

Method 5: Research, Monitoring and Reporting

Method 5.2.1c, Method 5.2.3b.

Method 6: Non RMA Strategies and Plans

Method 6.2

Method 7: Education and Information

Method 7.1.2 g.

Policy 3.1.7 Soil valuesSafeguard the life-supporting capacity of soil and manage soil to:

- a) Maintain or enhance as far as practicable
 - i. Soil biological diversity;
 - ii. Biological activity in soils;
 - iii. Soil function in the storage and cycling of water, nutrients, and other elements through the biosphere;
 - iv. Soil function as a buffer or filter for contaminants resulting from human activities, including aquifers at risk of leachate contamination;
 - v. Soil fertility where soil is used for primary production;
- b) Where a) is not practicable, minimise adverse effects;
- c) Recognise that urban and infrastructure development may result in loss of soil values.
- d) Control the adverse effects of pest species, prevent their introduction and reduce their spread;
- e) Retain the soil mantle where it acts as a repository of historic heritage objects unless an archaeological authority has been obtained.

Manage soils to achieve all of the following:

- a) Maintain or enhance their life supporting capacity;
- b) Maintain or enhance soil biological diversity;
- c) Maintain or enhance biological activity in soils;
- d) Maintain or enhance soil function in the storage and cycling of water, nutrients, and other elements through the biosphere;
- e) Maintain or enhance soil function as a buffer or filter for contaminants resulting from human activities, including aquifers at risk of leachate contamination;
- f) Maintain or enhance soil resources for primary production;
- g) Maintain the soil mantle where it acts as a repository of historic heritage objects unless an archaeological authority has been obtained;
- h) Avoid the creation of contaminated land;
- i) Control the adverse effects of pest species, prevent their introduction and reduce their spread.

Method 3: Regional Plans
Method 3.1.4

Method 4: City and District Plans
Method 4.1.54, Method 4.1.65

Method 5: Research, Monitoring and Reporting
Method 5.2.1

Method 7: Education and Information
Method 7.1.2f.

Policy 3.1.8 Soil erosion

Minimise soil erosion resulting from activities, by undertaking all of the following:

- a) Using appropriate erosion controls and soil conservation methods;
- b) Maintaining vegetative cover on erosion prone land;
- c) Remediating land where significant soil erosion has occurred;
- d) Encouraging activities that enhance soil retention.

Method 4: City and District Plans
Method 4.1.54

Method 5: Research, Monitoring and Reporting
Method 5.2.1, Method 5.2.2

Method 7: Education and Information
Method 7.1.2

Method 9: Advocacy and Facilitation
Method 9.2.2

Policy 3.1.9 Ecosystems and indigenous biological diversity

Manage ecosystems and indigenous biological diversity in terrestrial, freshwater and marine environments to:

- a) Maintain or enhance:
 - i. Ecosystem health and indigenous biological diversity including habitats of indigenous fauna;
 - ii. Biological diversity where the presence of exotic flora and fauna supports indigenous biological diversity;
- b) Maintain or enhance as far as practicable:
 - i. Areas of predominantly indigenous vegetation;
 - ii. Habitats of trout and salmon unless detrimental to indigenous biological diversity;
 - iii. Areas buffering or linking ecosystems;

- c) Recognise and provide for:
 - i. Hydrological services, including the services provided by tall tussock grassland;
 - ii. Natural resources and processes that support indigenous biological diversity;
- d) Control the adverse effects of pest species, prevent their introduction and reduce their spread.

Manage ecosystems and indigenous biological diversity in terrestrial, freshwater and marine environments to achieve all of the following:

- a) Maintain or enhance ecosystem health and indigenous biological diversity;
- b) Maintain or enhance biological diversity where the presence of exotic flora and fauna supports indigenous biological diversity;
- c) Maintain or enhance areas of predominantly indigenous vegetation;
- d) Recognise and provide for important hydrological services, including the services provided by tussock grassland;
- e) Recognise and provide for natural resources and processes that support indigenous biological diversity;
- f) Maintain or enhance habitats of indigenous species and the habitat of trout and salmon that are important for recreational, commercial, cultural or customary purposes;
- g) Control the adverse effects of pest species, prevent their introduction and reduce their spread.

Method 3: Regional Plans

Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans

Method 4.1.43

Method 5: Research, Monitoring and Reporting

Method 5.2.1

Method 6: Non RMA Strategies and Plans

Method 6.4

Method 7: Education and Information

Method 7.1

Method 9: Advocacy and Facilitation

Method 9.2

Policy 3.1.10 Biodiversity in the coastal environment

Avoid significant adverse effects and avoid, remedy or mitigate other adverse effects of activities on:

- a) Areas of predominantly indigenous vegetation in the coastal environment;
- b) Habitats in the coastal environment that are important during the vulnerable life stages of indigenous species;

- c) Indigenous ecosystems and habitats that are only found in the coastal environment and are particularly vulnerable to modification, including estuaries, lagoons, coastal wetlands, dunelands, intertidal zones, rocky reef systems, eelgrass and saltmarsh;
- d) Habitats of indigenous species in the coastal environment that are important for recreational, commercial, traditional or cultural purposes;
- e) Habitats, including areas and routes, important to migratory species; and
- f) Ecological corridors, and areas important for linking or maintaining biological values identified under this policy.

Method 3: Regional PlansMethod 3.1**Method 4: City and District Plans**Method 4.1.4**Method 5: Research, Monitoring and Reporting**Method 5.2.1**Method 6: Non RMA Strategies and Plans**Method 6.4**Method 7: Education and Information**Method 7.1**Method 9: Advocacy and Facilitation**Method 9.2**Policy 3.1.1110 Natural features, landscapes, and seascapes**

Recognise the values of natural features, landscapes and seascapes are derived from the biophysical, sensory and associative attributes in Schedule 3.

Method 1: Kāi Tahu Relationships

Method 1.2

Method 3: Regional Plans

Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans

Method 4.2.2

Method 5: Research, Monitoring and Reporting

Method 5.1.2

Policy 3.1.1211 Natural character in the coastal environment

Recognise the values of natural character in the coastal environment are derived from one or more of the following attributes:

- a) Natural elements, processes and patterns;
- b) Biophysical, ecological, geological and geomorphological aspects;
- c) Natural landforms such as headlands, peninsulas, cliffs, dunes, wetlands, estuaries, reefs, freshwater springs and surf breaks;
- d) The natural movement of water and sediment;
- e) The natural darkness of the night sky;
- f) Places or areas that are wild or scenic;
- g) A range of natural character from pristine to modified;
- h) Experiential attributes, including the sounds and smell of the sea; and their context or setting.

Method 3: Regional Plans

Method 3.1.65

Method 4: City and District Plans

Method 4.1

Method 5: Research, Monitoring and Reporting

Method 5.1.2

Policy 3.1.1312 Environmental enhancement

Encourage, facilitate and support activities ~~which that~~ contribute to ~~enhancing the resilience and enhancement of~~ the natural environment, by ~~one or more of the following where applicable~~:

- a) Improving water quality and quantity;
- b) Protecting or restoring habitat for indigenous species;
- c) Regenerating indigenous species;
- d) Mitigating natural hazards;
- e) Protecting or restoring wetlands;
- f) Improving the health and resilience of:
 - i. Ecosystems supporting indigenous biological diversity;
 - ii. Important ecosystem services, including pollination;
- g) Improving access to rivers, lakes, wetlands and their margins, and the coast;
- h) Buffering or linking ecosystems, habitats and areas of significance that contribute to ecological corridors;
- i) Controlling pest species.

Method 2: Regional, City and District Council Relationships

Method 2.1, Method 2.2

Method 3: Regional Plans

Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans

Method 4.1

Method 6: Non RMA Strategies and Plans

Method 6.1 – Method 6.9

Method 7: Education and Information

Method 7.1

Method 8: Funding

Method 8.1

Method 9: Advocacy and Facilitation

Method 9.1, Method 9.2

Principal Reasons and Explanation:

Understanding the many values and characteristics of natural resources and their ecosystem services is essential, in adequately managing the adverse effects of human activities on the environment's life supporting capacity.

There is often conflict between the many values of natural resources and human use of those resources.

These policies address the values attached to natural resources, and how all natural resources should be managed.

Objective 3.2 Otago's significant and highly-valued natural resources are identified, and protected, or enhanced where degraded

Issue:

Otago has significant and highly-valued natural resources. These include outstanding natural features, landscapes, seascapes, indigenous biological diversity, water bodies and soil, which all have intrinsic value and help to create the region's identity and support the region's wellbeing.

These highly valued resources can become degraded if they are not adequately protected from inappropriate subdivision, use and development, and so deserve a greater degree of recognition.

Resource degradation can adversely affect the social, cultural and economic wellbeing of people and communities.

Policy 3.2.1 Identifying significant indigenous vegetation and habitats

Identify areas and values of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna, using the attributes detailed in Schedule 4.

Method 3: Regional Plans
Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans
Method 4.2.2

Method 5: Research, Monitoring and Reporting
Method 5.1.2

Policy 3.2.2 Managing significant indigenous vegetation and habitats

Protect and enhance areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna, by all of the following:

- a) In the coastal environment, avoiding adverse effects on:
- i. The values that contribute to the area or habitat being significant;
 - ii. Indigenous taxa that are listed as threatened or at risk in the New Zealand Threat Classification System lists;
 - iii. Taxa that are listed by the International Union for Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources as threatened;
 - iv. Indigenous ecosystems and vegetation types that are threatened in the coastal environment, or are naturally rare;
 - v. Habitats of indigenous species where the species are at the limit of their natural range, or are naturally rare;
 - vi. Areas containing nationally significant examples of indigenous community types; and

- vii. Areas set aside for full or partial protection of indigenous biological diversity under other legislation;
- ab) ~~Avoiding adverse effects on~~ Beyond the coastal environment, and in the coastal environment in significant areas not captured by a) above, maintaining those values which that contribute to the area or habitat being significant;
- bc) Avoiding significant adverse effects on other values of the area or habitat;
- de) Remedying when other adverse effects cannot be avoided;
- ed) Mitigating when other adverse effects cannot be avoided or remedied;
- fe) Encouraging enhancement of those areas and values ~~which that~~ contribute to the area or habitat being significant;
- gf) Controlling the adverse effects of pest species, preventing their introduction and reducing their spread.

Method 3: Regional Plans
Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans
Method 4.1.4~~3~~

Method 5: Research, Monitoring and Reporting
Method 5.1.2

Method 6: Non RMA Strategies and Plans
Method 6.4, Method 6.5

Policy 3.2.3 Identifying outstanding natural features, landscapes and seascapes

Identify areas and values of outstanding natural features, landscapes and seascapes, using the attributes in Schedule 3.

Method 1: Kāi Tahu Relationships
Method 1.2

Method 3: Regional Plans
Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans
Method 4.2.2

Method 5: Research, Monitoring and Reporting
Method 5.1.2 c.

Policy 3.2.4 Managing outstanding natural features, landscapes and seascapes

Protect, enhance ~~and or~~ restore outstanding natural features, landscapes and seascapes, by all of the following:

- a) In the coastal environment, avoiding adverse effects on the outstanding values of the natural feature, landscape or seascape;
- ba) ~~Avoiding adverse effects on~~ Beyond the coastal environment, maintaining those the outstanding values which contribute to the significance of the natural feature, landscape or seascape;
- cb) ~~Avoiding, remedying or mitigating other adverse effects;~~
- c) ~~Recognising and providing for the positive contributions of existing introduced species to those values;~~
- d) ~~Controlling the adverse effects of pest species, preventing their introduction and reducing their spread;~~
- de) Encouraging enhancement of those areas and values ~~which that~~ contribute to the significance of the natural feature, landscape or seascape.

Method 1: Kāi Tahu Relationships
Method 1.2

Method 3: Regional Plans
Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans
Method 4.1

Method 5: Research, Monitoring and Reporting
Method 5.1.2 c.

Policy 3.2.5 Identifying highly valued natural features, landscapes and seascapes

Identify natural features, landscapes and seascapes, which are highly valued for their contribution to the amenity or quality of the environment but which are not outstanding, using the attributes in Schedule 3.

Method 1: Kāi Tahu Relationships
Method 1.2

Method 3: Regional Plans
Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans
Method 4.1, [4.2.2](#)

Method 5: Research, Monitoring and Reporting
Method 5.1.2 d.

Policy 3.2.6 Managing highly valued natural features, landscapes and seascapes

~~Protect~~ Maintain or enhance highly valued natural features, landscapes and seascapes by all of the following:

- a) Avoiding significant adverse effects on those values ~~which~~ that contribute to the high value of the natural feature, landscape or seascape;
- b) Avoiding, remedying or mitigating other adverse effects;
- ~~e) Recognising and providing for positive contributions of existing introduced species to those values;~~
- ~~d) Controlling the adverse effects of pest species, preventing their introduction and reducing their spread;~~
- ce) Encouraging enhancement of those values ~~which~~ that contribute to the high value of the natural feature, landscape or seascape.

Method 1: Kāi Tahu Relationships

Method 1.2

Method 3: Regional Plans

Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans

Method 4.1

Method 5: Research, Monitoring and Reporting

Method 5.1.2 d.

Policy 3.2.7 Landward extent of the coastal environment

Identify the landward extent of the coastal environment, recognising that the coastal environment ~~consists of one or more of the following~~ includes:

- a) The coastal marine area;
- b) Islands within the coastal marine area;
- c) Areas where coastal processes, influences or qualities are significant, including coastal lakes, lagoons, tidal estuaries, saltmarshes, coastal wetlands, and the margins of these;
- d) Areas at risk from coastal hazards;
- e) Coastal vegetation and the habitat of indigenous coastal species including migratory birds;
- f) Elements and features that contribute to the natural character, landscape, visual qualities or amenity values;
- g) Items of cultural and historic heritage in the coastal marine area or on the coast;
- h) Inter-related coastal marine and terrestrial systems, including the intertidal zone; and
- i) Physical resources and built facilities, including infrastructure, that have modified the coastal environment.

Method 1: Kāi Tahu Relationships

Method 1.2

Method 2: Regional, City and District Council Relationships

Method 2.1, Method 2.2

Method 5: Research, Monitoring and Reporting

Method 5.1.1

Policy 3.2.8 Identifying high and outstanding natural character in the coastal environment

Identify areas and values of high and outstanding natural character in the coastal environment, ~~where one or more of the following attributes are met~~ which may include matters such as:

- a) Natural elements, processes and patterns;
- b) Biophysical, ecological, geological and geomorphological aspects;
- c) Natural landforms such as headlands, peninsulas, cliffs, dunes, wetlands, estuaries, reefs, freshwater springs and surf breaks;
- d) The natural movement of water and sediment;
- e) The natural darkness of the night sky;
- f) Places or areas that are wild or scenic;
- g) A range of natural character from pristine to modified;
- h) Experiential attributes, including the sounds and smell of the sea; and their context or setting.

Method 2: Regional, City and District Council Relationships

Method 2.1, Method 2.2

Method 3: Regional Plans

Method 3.1.65

Method 4: City and District Plans

Method 4.1.23, Method 4.2.2

Method 5: Research, Monitoring and Reporting

Method 5.1.2 b.

Policy 3.2.9 Managing the outstanding natural character of the coastal environment

Preserve or enhance the outstanding natural character of the coastal environment, by all of the following:

- a) Avoiding adverse effects on those values ~~which that~~ contribute to the outstanding natural character of an area;
- b) Avoiding, remedying or mitigating other adverse effects;
- c) Recognising and providing for the contribution of existing introduced species to the natural character of the coastal environment;
- d) Encouraging enhancement of those values ~~which that~~ contribute to the outstanding natural character of an area;

- e) Controlling the adverse effects of pest species, prevent their introduction and reduce their spread.

Method 2: Regional, City and District Council Relationships
Method 2.1, Method 2.2

Method 3: Regional Plans
Method 3.1.65

Method 4: City and District Plans
Method 4.1.32

Method 5: Research, Monitoring and Reporting
Method 5.1.2 b., Method 5.2.2

Method 9: Advocacy and Facilitation
Method 9.2.3

Policy 3.2.10 Managing the high natural character of the coastal environment

Preserve or enhance the high natural character of the coastal environment, by all of the following:

- a) Avoiding significant adverse effects on those values ~~which~~ that contribute to the high natural character of an area;
- b) Avoiding, remedying or mitigating other adverse effects;
- c) Recognising and providing for the contribution of existing introduced species to the natural character of the coastal environment;
- d) Encouraging enhancement of those values ~~which~~ that contribute to the high natural character of an area;
- e) Controlling the adverse effects of pest species, prevent~~ing~~ ing their introduction and reduc~~ing~~ ing their spread.

Method 2: Regional, City and District Council Relationships
Method 2.1, Method 2.2

Method 3: Regional Plans
Method 3.1.65

Method 4: City and District Plans
Method 4.1.32

Method 5: Research, Monitoring and Reporting
Method 5.2.2

Method 9: Advocacy and Facilitation
Method 9.2.3

Policy 3.2.11 Identifying surf breaks of national importance

Recognise the surf breaks of national importance at:

- a) Karitane;
- b) Papatowai;
- c) The Spit;
- d) Whareakeake.

Method 3: Regional Plans

Method 3.1.7~~6~~

Policy 3.2.12 Managing surf breaks of national importance

Protect surf breaks of national importance, by all of the following:

- a) Avoiding adverse effects on the natural and physical processes contributing to their existence;
- b) Avoiding adverse effects of other activities on access to, and use and enjoyment of, those surf breaks.

Method 3: Regional Plans

Method 3.1.7~~6~~

Method 4: City and District Plans

Method 4.1.8~~7~~

Method 5: Research, Monitoring and Reporting

Method 5.1.3 d.

Policy 3.2.13 Identifying outstanding freshwater bodies

Identify freshwater bodies where any one or more of the following significant values are outstanding:

- a) Naturalness;
- b) Amenity or landscape values;
- c) Kāi Tahu cultural values;
- d) Recreational values;
- e) Ecological values;
- f) Hydrological values.

Method 3: Regional Plans

Method 3.1.8~~7~~

Method 5: Research, Monitoring and Reporting

Method 5.1.2 e.

Policy 3.2.14 Managing outstanding freshwater bodies

Protect outstanding freshwater bodies by all of the following:

- a) ~~Avoiding Maintaining the values that significant adverse effects on those values which~~ contribute to the water body being outstanding;
- b) Avoiding, remedying or mitigating other adverse effects on the water body;
- c) Controlling the adverse effects of pest species, preventing their introduction and reducing their spread;
- d) Encouraging enhancement of those values ~~which that~~ contribute to the water body being outstanding.

Method 3: Regional Plans

Method 3.1.87

Method 4: City and District Plans

Method 4.1

Method 5: Research, Monitoring and Reporting

Method 5.2.2

Method 9: Advocacy and Facilitation

Method 9.2.2, Method 9.2.5

Policy 3.2.15 Identifying the significant values of wetlands

Identify the significant values of wetlands, having regard to all of the following:

- a) Degree of naturalness;
- b) Amenity or landscape values;
- c) Kāi Tahu cultural values;
- d) Recreational values;
- e) Ecological ~~function and~~ values;
- f) Hydrological ~~function and~~ values;
- g) Geomorphological features and values.

Method 3: Regional Plans

Method 3.1.87

Method 4: City and District Plans

Method 4.1

Method 5: Research, Monitoring and Reporting

Method 5.1.2 g, 5.2.2

Method 911: Advocacy and Facilitation

Method 9.2.1, Method 9.2.2, Method 9.2.3, Method 9.2.5

Policy 3.2.16 Managing the values of wetlands

Protect the function and values of wetlands by all of the following:

- a) ~~Avoiding significant adverse effects on Maintaining~~ the significant values of ~~the~~ wetlands;
- b) Avoiding, remedying or mitigating other adverse effects;
- c) Controlling the adverse effects of pest species, preventing their introduction and reducing their spread;
- d) Encouraging enhancement ~~which that~~ contributes to the values of the wetland;
- e) Encouraging the rehabilitation of degraded wetlands.

Method 3: Regional Plans

Method 3.1. ~~87~~

Method 4: City and District Plans

Method 4.1

Method 5: Research, Monitoring and Reporting

Method 5.1.2 g, 5.2.2

Method ~~911~~: Advocacy and Facilitation

Method 9.2.1, Method 9.2.2, Method 9.2.3, Method 9.2.5

Policy 3.2.17 Identifying significant soil

Identify areas of soil that are significant ~~according to one or more of, using~~ the following criteria:

- a) Land classified as land use capability I, II and IIIe in accordance with the New Zealand Land Resource Inventory;
- b) Degree of significance for primary production;
- c) Significance for providing contaminant buffering or filtering services;
- d) Significance for providing water storage or flow retention services;
- e) Degree of rarity.

Method 2: Regional, City and District Council Relationships

Method 2.1, Method 2.2

Method 5: Research, Monitoring and Reporting

Method 5.1.3 c, Method 5.2.1 d.

Policy 3.2.18 Managing significant soil

~~Protect~~ Manage areas of significant soil, by all of the following:

- a) Maintaining those values which make the soil significant;
- ~~a) — Avoiding significant adverse effects on those values which make the soil significant;~~
- ~~b) — Avoiding, remedying or mitigating other adverse effects;~~

- b)e) Recognising that ~~loss of significant soil to urban development~~ ~~urban expansion on significant soils~~ may ~~occur in accordance with any future development strategy~~ ~~be appropriate due to location and proximity to existing urban development and infrastructure;~~
- c)d) Controlling the adverse effects of pest species, preventing their introduction and reducing their spread.

Method 2: Regional, City and District Council Relationships

Method 2.1, Method 2.2

Method 3: Regional Plans

Method 3.1.4

Method 4: City and District Plans

Method 4.1.65

Method 78: Education and Information

Method 7.1.2 f.

Principal Reasons and Explanation:

Otago has many significant and highly-valued landscapes, natural features and areas of indigenous biological diversity which are nationally or regionally important. These policies guide the identification, protection and enhancement of these resources. This higher level of protection recognises the importance of these resources to the cultural, environmental, social and economic wellbeing of people and communities.

PART B Chapter 4 Communities in Otago are resilient, safe and healthy

Otago is at risk of expected and unexpected shocks and changes, from natural hazards, climate change and reliance on energy, imported goods and fossil fuels. These disruptions have the potential to affect economic, social, cultural, and environmental wellbeing.

Ensuring communities develop in a way which helps to prepare for, respond, recover, and adapt to disruptions will help make communities resilient. The sustainable management of renewable energy sources, the use of hazardous substances, and management of waste materials will, in the long term, also help ensure communities' resilience.

This chapter deals with the response and ability to be resilient to resource limitations or constraints, shock events, system disruptions, natural hazards, and climate change.

Chapter overview:

Objective 4.1		
Risk that natural hazards pose to Otago's communities are minimised.		Page
Policy 4.1.1	Identifying natural hazards	475 9
Policy 4.1.2	Natural hazard likelihood	475 9
Policy 4.1.3	Natural hazard consequence	486 0
Policy 4.1.4	Assessing activities for natural hazard risk	486 0
Policy 4.1.5	Natural hazard risk	496 1
Policy 4.1.6	Avoiding Minimising increased <u>increase in</u> -natural hazard risk	506 2
Policy 4.1.7	Reducing existing natural hazard risk	516 3
Policy 4.1.8	Precautionary approach to natural hazard risk	526 3
Policy 4.1.9	Protecting features and systems that provide hazard mitigation	526 4
Policy 4.1.10	Mitigating natural hazards	526 4
Policy 4.1.11	Hard protection structures	536 5
Policy 4.1.12	Lifeline utilities and facilities for essential or emergency services	536 5
Policy 4.1.13	Hazard mitigation measures, lifeline utilities, and essential and emergency services	536 5
Objective 4.2		
Otago's communities are prepared for and able to adapt to the effects of climate change.		Page
Policy 4.2.1	Sea level rise	556 7
Policy 4.2.2	Climate change	556 7

Objective 4.3		
Infrastructure is managed and developed in a sustainable way.		Page
Policy 4.3.1	Managing infrastructure activities	57 <u>69</u>
Policy 4.3.2	Nationally and regionally significant infrastructure	58 <u>70</u>
<u>Policy 4.3.3</u>	<u>Functional needs of infrastructure that has national or regional significance</u>	<u>59</u>
Policy 4.3. 4 <u>3</u>	Adverse effects of nationally and regionally significant infrastructure	59 <u>70</u>
Policy 4.3. 5 <u>4</u>	Protecting <u>infrastructure with</u> nationally and-or regionally <u>significant infrastructure</u>	60 <u>71</u>
<u>Policy 4.3.6</u>	<u>The National Grid</u>	<u>61</u>
<u>Policy 4.3.7</u>	<u>Recognising port activities at Port Chalmers and Dunedin</u>	<u>61</u>
Objective 4.4		
Energy supplies to Otago's communities <u>resources and supplies</u> are secure, <u>reliable</u> and sustainable.		Page
Policy 4.4.1	Renewable electricity generation	63 <u>74</u>
Policy 4.4.2	Small and community scale renewable electricity generation	63 <u>74</u>
Policy 4.4.3	Protecting <u>existing</u> renewable electricity generation	64 <u>75</u>
Policy 4.4.4	Efficient transport of electricity	64 <u>75</u>
Policy 4.4.5	Electricity distribution infrastructure	65 <u>75</u>
Policy 4.4.6	Energy efficient transport	65 <u>76</u>
<u>Policy 4.4.7</u>	<u>Fuels</u>	<u>66</u>
Objective 4.5		
Urban growth and development is well designed, reflects local character <u>occurs in a strategic and coordinated way</u>, and integrates effectively with adjoining urban and rural environments.		Page
Policy 4.5.1	Managing <u>Providing</u> for urban growth and development	68 <u>79</u>
<u>Policy 4.5.2</u> 7	<u>Integrating infrastructure with land use</u>	<u>69</u>
Policy 4.5.2	Planned and coordinated urban growth and development	70 <u>80</u>
Policy 4.5.3	Urban design	71 <u>81</u>
Policy 4.5.4	Low impact design	71 <u>82</u>
Policy 4.5.5	Warmer buildings	72 <u>82</u>
Policy 4.5.6	Designing for public access	72 <u>83</u>
<u>Policy 4.5.7</u>	<u>Integrating infrastructure with land use</u>	<u>83</u>
Objective 4.6		
Hazardous substances, contaminated land and waste materials do not harm human health or the quality of the environment in Otago.		Page
Policy 4.6.1	Hazardous substances	74 <u>86</u>
Policy 4.6.2	Use, storage and disposal of hazardous substances	74 <u>86</u>
Policy 4.6.3	Hazardous substance collection, disposal and recycling	75 <u>87</u>

Policy 4.6.4	Identifying contaminated land	7588
Policy 4.6.5	Managing contaminated land	7588
Policy 4.6.6	Waste management	7689
Policy 4.6.7	Waste minimisation responses	7689
Policy 4.6.8	Waste storage, recycling, recovery, treatment and disposal	7789
Policy 4.6.9	<u>New</u> Contaminated land	7890

Objective 4.1 Risks that natural hazards pose to Otago's communities are minimised

Issue:²⁰

Natural hazard events, such as flooding and earthquakes, have the potential to injure people and damage property. Natural hazards may be exacerbated by the effects of climate change, which include sea level rise, and greater frequency and intensity of extreme weather events.

It is sometimes difficult and costly for a community to recover from a hazard event.

Policy 4.1.1 Identifying natural hazards

Identify natural hazards that may adversely affect Otago's communities, including hazards of low likelihood and high consequence by considering all of the following:

- a) Hazard type and characteristics;
- b) Multiple and cascading hazards;
- c) Cumulative effects, including from multiple hazards with different risks;
- d) Effects of climate change;
- e) Using the best available information for calculating likelihood;
- f) Exacerbating factors.

Method 2: Regional, City and District Council Relationships
Method 2.1, Method 2.2, Method 2.3

Method 4: City and District Plans
Method 4.1.~~24~~, Method 4.2.~~87~~

Method 5: Research, Monitoring and Reporting
Method 5.2.1, Method 5.2.2

Method 7: Education and Information
Method 7.1.1, Method 7.1.2, Method 7.1.3

Policy 4.1.2 Natural hazard likelihood

Using the best available information, assess the likelihood of natural hazard events occurring, over no less than 100 years.

Method 2: Regional, City and District Council Relationships
Method 2.1, Method 2.2, Method 2.3

²⁰ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

Method 3: Regional Plans
Method 3.1.~~13~~~~12~~, Method 3.2.1

Method 4: City and District Plans
Method 4.1.~~2~~~~1~~, Method 4.2.1, Method 4.2.~~8~~~~7~~

Method 5: Research, Monitoring and Reporting
Method 5.2.1, Method 5.2.2

Policy 4.1.3 Natural hazard consequence

Assess the consequences of natural hazard events, by considering all of the following:

- a) The nature of activities in the area;
- b) Individual and community vulnerability;
- c) Impacts on individual and community health and safety;
- d) Impacts on social, cultural and economic wellbeing;
- e) Impacts on infrastructure and property, including access and services;
- f) Risk reduction and hazard mitigation measures;
- g) Lifeline utilities, essential and emergency services, and their co-dependence;
- h) Implications for civil defence agencies and emergency services;
- i) Cumulative effects;
- j) Factors that may exacerbate a hazard event.

Method 2: Regional, City and District Council Relationships
Method 2.1, Method 2.2, Method 2.3

Method 3: Regional Plans
Method 3.1.~~13~~~~12~~, Method 3.2.1

Method 4: City and District Plans
Method 4.1.~~2~~~~1~~, Method 4.2.1, Method 4.2.~~8~~~~7~~

Method 5: Research, Monitoring and Reporting
Method 5.2.1, Method 5.2.2

Policy 4.1.4²¹ Assessing activities for natural hazard risk

Assess activities for natural hazard risk to people, property and communities, by considering all of the following:

- a) The natural hazard risk identified, including residual risk;
- b) Any measures to avoid, remedy or mitigate those risks, including relocation and recovery methods;

²¹ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

- c) The long-term viability and affordability of those measures;
- d) Flow-on effects of the risk to other activities, individuals and communities;
- e) The availability of, and ability to provide, lifeline utilities, and essential and emergency services, during and after a natural hazard event.

Method 2: Regional, City and District Council Relationships

Method 2.1, Method 2.2, Method 2.3

Method 3: Regional Plans

Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans

Method 4.1.21, Method 4.2.87

Method 5: Research, Monitoring and Reporting

Method 5.2.1, Method 5.2.2

Method 6: Non RMA Strategies and Plans

Method 6.1.1

Method 7: Education and Information

Method 7.1.1, Method 7.1.2, Method 7.1.3

Policy 4.1.5²² Natural hazard risk

Manage natural hazard risk to people, property and communities, with particular regard to all of the following:

- a) The risk posed, considering the likelihood and consequences of natural hazard events;
- b) The implications of residual risk, ~~including the risk remaining after implementing or undertaking risk reduction and hazard mitigation measures;~~
- c) The community's tolerance of that risk, now and in the future, including the community's ability and willingness to prepare for and adapt to that risk, and respond to an event;
- ~~d) The changing nature of tolerance to risk;~~
- de) Sensitivity of activities to risk;
- e) The need to encourage system resilience;
- f) The social costs of recovery.

Method 2: Regional, City and District Council Relationships

Method 2.1, Method 2.2, Method 2.3

Method 3: Regional Plans

²² Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

Method 3.1

Method 4: **City and District Plans**
Method 4.1.~~21~~, Method 4.2.~~87~~

Method 6: **Non RMA Strategies and Plans**
Method 6.1.1

Method 7: **Education and Information**
Method 7.1.1, Method 7.1.2, Method 7.1.3

Method 9: **Advocacy and Facilitation**
Method 9.1.2, Method 9.1.3, Method 9.2.1

Policy 4.1.6²³ ~~Avoiding Minimising increased increase in~~ **natural hazard risk**

~~Minimise natural hazard risk to people, communities, property and other aspects of the environment by:~~

- ~~a) Avoiding activities that result in significant risk from natural hazard;~~
- ~~b) Enabling activities that result in no or low residual risk from natural hazard;~~
- ~~c) Avoiding activities that increase risk in areas potentially affected by coastal hazards over at least the next 100 years;~~
- ~~d) Encouraging the location of infrastructure away from areas of hazard risk where practicable;~~
- ~~e) Minimising any other risk from natural hazard.~~

~~Manage natural hazard risk to people and communities, by both:~~

- ~~a) Avoiding activities that significantly increase risk including displacement of risk off-site; and~~
- ~~b) Avoiding activities that increase risk in areas potentially affected by coastal hazards over at least the next 100 years.~~

Method 2: **Regional, City and District Council Relationships**
Method 2.1, Method 2.2, Method 2.3

Method 3: **Regional Plans**
Method 3.1

Method 4: **City and District Plans**
Method 4.1.~~21~~, Method 4.2.~~87~~

Method 6: **Non RMA Strategies and Plans**
Method 6.1.1

²³ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

- Method 7: Education and Information**
Method 7.1.1, Method 7.1.2, Method 7.1.3
- Method 9: Advocacy and Facilitation**
Method 9.1.2, Method 9.1.3, Method 9.2.1

Policy 4.1.7²⁴ Reducing existing natural hazard risk

Reduce existing natural hazard risk to people and communities, including by all of the following:

- a) Encouraging activities that:
 - i. Reduce risk; or
 - ii. Reduce community vulnerability;
- b) Discouraging activities that:
 - i. Increase risk; or
 - ii. Increase community vulnerability;
- c) Considering the use of exit strategies for areas of significant risk to people and communities;
- d) Encouraging design that facilitates:
 - i. Recovery from natural hazard events; or
 - ii. Relocation to areas of lower risk; or
 - iii. Mitigation of risk;
- e) Relocating lifeline utilities, and facilities for essential and emergency service, to areas of reduced risk, where appropriate and practicable;
- f) Enabling development, upgrade, maintenance and operation of lifeline utilities and facilities for essential and emergency services;
- g) Reassessing natural hazard risk to people and communities, and community tolerance of that risk, following significant natural hazard events.

Method 3: Regional Plans
Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans
Method 4.1.~~2~~1

Method 6: Non RMA Strategies and Plans
Method 6.1.1

Method 7: Education and Information
Method 7.1.1, Method 7.1.2, Method 7.1.3

Method 9: Advocacy and Facilitation
Method 9.1.2, Method 9.1.3, Method 9.2.1

²⁴ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

Policy 4.1.8 Precautionary approach to natural hazard risk

Where natural hazard risk to people and communities is uncertain or unknown, but potentially significant or irreversible, apply a precautionary approach to identifying, assessing and managing that risk.

Method 3: Regional Plans
Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans
Method 4.1.~~21~~

Policy 4.1.9 Protecting features and systems that provide hazard mitigation

Avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects on natural or modified features and systems, ~~which that~~ contribute to mitigating the effects of both natural hazards and climate change.

Method 3: Regional Plans
Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans
Method 4.1.~~21~~

Policy 4.1.10²⁵ Mitigating natural hazards

Give preference to risk management approaches that reduce the need for hard protection structures or similar engineering interventions, and provide for hard protection structures only when all of the following apply:

- a) Those measures are essential to reduce risk to a level the community is able to tolerate;
- b) There are no reasonable alternatives ~~that result in reducing the risk exposure~~;
- c) It would not result in an increase in risk to people and communities, including displacement of risk off-site;
- d) The adverse effects can be adequately managed;
- e) The mitigation is viable in the reasonably foreseeable long term.

Method 3: Regional Plans
Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans
Method 4.1.~~21~~

²⁵ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

Method 7: Education and Information

Method 7.1.1, Method 7.1.2

Method 9: Advocacy and Facilitation

Method 9.1.2, Method 9.1.3, Method 9.2.1

Policy 4.1.11 Hard protection structures

Enable the location of hard protection structures or similar engineering interventions on public land only when either or both of the following apply:

- a) There is significant public or environmental benefit in doing so;
- b) The work relates to the functioning ability of a lifeline utility, or a facility for essential or emergency services.

Method 3: Regional Plans

Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District PlansMethod 4.1.2~~4~~**Method 7: Education and Information**

Method 7.1.1, Method 7.1.2

Policy 4.1.12 Lifeline utilities and facilities for essential or emergency services

Locate and design lifeline utilities and facilities for essential or emergency services to:

- a) Maintain their ability to function to the fullest extent possible, during and after natural hazard events; and
- b) Take into account their operational co-dependence with other lifeline utilities and essential services to ensure their effective operation.

Method 9: Advocacy and Facilitation

Method 9.2.3, Method 9.2.4

Policy 4.1.13²⁶ Hazard mitigation measures, lifeline utilities, and essential and emergency services

Protect the functional ~~needs and operational requirements~~ of hazard mitigation measures, lifeline utilities, and essential or emergency services, including by all of the following:

- a) Restricting the establishment of ~~those other~~ activities that may result in reverse sensitivity effects ~~on those measures, utilities or services~~;
- b) Avoiding significant adverse effects on those measures, utilities or services;

²⁶ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

- c) Avoiding, remedying or mitigating other adverse effects on those measures, utilities or services;
- d) Maintaining access to those measures, utilities or services for maintenance and operational purposes;
- e) Managing other activities in a way that does not restrict the ability of those mitigation measures, utilities or services to continue functioning.

Method 2: Regional, City and District Council Relationships

Method 2.1, Method 2.2, Method 2.3

Method 3: Regional Plans

Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans

Method 4.1.~~21~~, Method 4.2.~~87~~

Method 6: Non RMA Strategies and Plans

Method 6.1.1

Method 9: Advocacy and Facilitation

Method 9.2.3, Method 9.2.4

Principal Reasons and Explanation:

While many of these events are beyond the control of people and communities, there is a need to reduce their potential impacts on people's safety, health and wellbeing.

Natural hazards can injure or kill people, damage property, create stress and fear, affect the operation of infrastructure and impact on the economy.

Natural hazard risks can also be exacerbated by inappropriate subdivision, use and development. Natural hazards should be identified and managed appropriately, so the risk of avoidable social and economic harm to communities is reduced as much as possible.

Objective 4.2²⁷ Otago’s communities are prepared for and able to adapt to the effects of climate change

Issue:

~~Climate change will bring higher sea levels and an increased frequency of climate-related natural hazard events, which will increase the risk that communities face.~~

Climate change is creating environmental and economic outcomes that negatively affect the sustainability of natural and physical resources. These include higher sea levels, increased frequency of natural hazard events, and changing distribution of plants and animals. There is significant uncertainty over the rate and scale of change.

National and international policy frameworks have set objectives and guidance for New Zealand to proactively work toward reducing the rate of global warming.

Policy 4.2.1²⁸ Sea level rise

Ensure Otago’s people and communities are able to adapt to, or mitigate the effects of sea level rise, over no less than 100 years, by using:

- a) A sea level rise of at least 1 metre by 2115, relative to 1990 mean sea level (Otago Metric Datum); and
- b) Adding an additional 10mm per year beyond 2115, or the most up-to-date national or regional guidance on likely sea level rise.

Method 2: Regional, City and District Council Relationships
Method 2.1, Method 2.2

Method 3: Regional Plans
Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans
Method 4.1

Policy 4.2.2²⁹ Climate change

Ensure Otago’s people and communities are able to mitigate and adapt to, ~~or mitigate~~ the effects of climate change, over no less than 100 years, by all of the following:

- a) Taking into account the effects of climate change, including by using the best relevant climate change data;

²⁷ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

²⁸ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

²⁹ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

- b) Applying a precautionary approach ~~to~~ when assessing and managing the effects of climate change where there is scientific uncertainty and potentially significant or irreversible effects;
- c) Encouraging activities that assist to reduce or mitigate the effects of climate change.
- d) Encouraging system resilience.

Method 2:	Regional, City and District Council Relationships Method 2.1, Method 2.2
Method 3:	Regional Plans Method 3.1
Method 4:	City and District Plans Method 4.1
Method 5:	Research, Monitoring and Reporting Method 5.2.1 g. and j.
Method 6:	Non RMA Strategies and Plans Method 6.1.1
Method 7:	Education and Information Method 7.1.1, Method 7.1.2
Method 9:	Advocacy and Facilitation Method 9.1.2, Method 9.1.3

Principal Reasons and Explanation:

Communities need consistent guidance on sea level rise, ~~and~~ extreme weather events, and all other adverse effects of climate change to manage ~~their those~~ adverse effects.

Climate change ~~will bring~~ is bringing higher sea levels and ~~may increase~~ is increasing the frequency and severity of climate related natural hazards ~~such as~~ including flooding, landslips, erosion and drought. Stormwater systems may not be able to cope with heavier rainfall. Other effects of climate change include changing distributions of plants and animals, and consequential effects, such as the risk of saltwater intrusion into groundwater as a result of rising sea levels. There may be other adverse effects from climate change that are not yet known. A precautionary approach is required where there is scientific uncertainty.

~~There may be benefits from higher temperatures such as opportunities for growing different crops and reduced demand for heating in winter.~~

The effects of climate change will result in social, environmental and economic costs, and in some circumstances benefits. It is prudent that these changes be planned for now, so that the impacts can be reduced.

Objective 4.3 Infrastructure is managed and developed in a sustainable way

Issue:³⁰

Social and economic wellbeing depends on having adequate infrastructure. Failing to provide for its functional needs can result in adverse effects.

Aging and sub-standard infrastructure can present a risk to the community by threatening ~~creates risks to health and access, and as a consequence, threatens~~ community resilience and can constrain new infrastructure solutions.

Activities locating in proximity to infrastructure may lead to reverse sensitivity effects on that infrastructure.

Infrastructure may adversely affect other lawfully established activities.

Infrastructure of regional and national significance may result in ~~local~~ localised adverse environmental impacts, or adversely affect other nationally important values.

Some infrastructure can only ~~be located~~ in particular areas, and it may not always be possible to avoid significant adverse effects.

Policy 4.3.1³¹ Managing infrastructure activities

Recognise and provide for infrastructure by all of the following:

- a) Protecting and providing for the functional needs of lifeline utilities and essential or emergency services;
- b) Increasing the ability of communities to respond and adapt to emergencies, and disruptive or natural hazard events;
- c) Improving efficiency of natural and physical resource use;
- d) Minimising adverse effects on existing land uses, and natural and physical resources;
- e) Managing other activities to ensure the functional needs of infrastructure are not compromised.

Policies 4.3.2 – 4.3.6 regarding infrastructure that has regional or national significance prevail where there is a conflict with policy 4.3.1.

Manage infrastructure activities, to achieve all of the following:

- a) Maintaining or enhancing the health and safety of the community;
- b) Avoiding, remedying or mitigating adverse effects of those activities on existing land uses, including cumulative adverse effects on natural and physical resources;
- c) Supporting economic, social and community activities;
- d) Improving efficiency of use of natural resources;

³⁰ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 6 July 2018

³¹ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 6 July 2018

- ~~e) Protecting infrastructure corridors for infrastructure needs, now and for the future;~~
- ~~f) Increasing the ability of communities to respond and adapt to emergencies, and disruptive or natural hazard events;~~
- ~~g) Protecting the functional and operational requirements of lifeline utilities and essential or emergency services.~~

Method 3: Regional Plans
Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans
Method 4.1

Policy 4.3.2³² Nationally and regionally significant infrastructure

Recognise the national and regional significance of all of the following infrastructure:

- a) Renewable electricity generation activities, where they supply the ~~national electricity grid~~ National Grid ~~and or~~ local distribution network;
- b) National Grid;
- ~~c~~) Electricity sub-transmission infrastructure;
- ~~d~~) Telecommunication and radiocommunication facilities;
- ~~e~~) Roads classified as being of national or regional importance;
- ~~f~~) Ports and airports and associated navigation infrastructure;
- ~~g~~) Defence facilities;
- ~~h~~) Rail infrastructure ~~Structures for transport by rail;~~
- i) Municipal infrastructure.

Method 2: Regional, City and District Council Relationships
Method 2.1, Method 2.2

Method 3: Regional Plans
Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans
Method 4.1, Method 4.1.1~~74~~, 4.1.18

Method 6: Non RMA Strategies and Plans
Method 6.3.1

³² Changed by Environment Court consent order – 6 July 2018

Policy 4.3.3³³ Functional needs of infrastructure that has national or regional significance

Provide for the functional needs of infrastructure that has regional or national significance, including safety.

Method 3: Regional PlansMethod 3.1**Method 4: City and District Plans**Method 4.1**Policy 4.3.4³⁴ Adverse effects of nationally and regionally significant infrastructure**

- (1) Minimise Manage adverse effects ~~from of~~ infrastructure that has national or regional significance, by ~~all of the following~~:
- a) Giving preference to avoiding ~~their its~~ location in all of the following:
- ~~i.~~ Areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna ~~in the coastal environment~~;
 - ~~ii.~~ Outstanding natural features, landscapes and seascapes;
 - ~~iii.~~ Areas of outstanding natural character;
 - ~~ii.~~ Outstanding natural character in the coastal environment;
 - ~~iii.~~ Outstanding natural features and natural landscapes, including seascapes, in the coastal environment;
 - ~~iv.~~ Areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna beyond the coastal environment;
 - ~~v.~~ Outstanding natural character in areas beyond the coastal environment;
 - ~~vi.~~ Outstanding natural features and landscapes beyond the coastal environment;
 - ~~vii~~~~iv.~~ Outstanding water bodies or wetlands;
 - ~~viii.~~ Places or areas containing ~~significant~~ historic heritage ~~of regional or national significance~~;
- b) Where it is not ~~possible practicable~~ to avoid locating in the areas listed in a) above, ~~avoiding significant adverse effects on those values that contribute to the significant or outstanding nature of those areas; because of the functional needs of that infrastructure~~:
- ~~i.~~ Avoid adverse effects on the values that contribute to the significant or outstanding nature of a) i-iii;
 - ~~ii.~~ Avoid significant adverse effects on natural character and natural landscapes in all other areas of the coastal environment
 - ~~iii.~~ Avoid, remedy or mitigate, as necessary, adverse effects in order to maintain the outstanding or significant nature of a) iv-viii;

³³ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 6 July 2018

³⁴ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 6 July 2018. Note renumbering in accordance with Environment Court decision No. [2018] NZEnvC 183

- c) Avoid, remedy or mitigate, as necessary, adverse effects on highly valued natural features, landscapes and seascapes. in order to maintain their high values;
- d) Avoiding, remedying or mitigating other adverse effects;
- e) Considering offsetting for residual adverse effects on indigenous biological diversity.
- (2) Where there is a conflict, Policy 4.3.4 prevails over the policies under Objectives 3.2 (except for policy 3.2.12), 5.2 and Policy 4.3.1.

Method 2: **Regional, City and District Council Relationships**
Method 2.1, Method 2.2

Method 3: **Regional Plans**
Method 3.1

Method 4: **City and District Plans**
Method 4.1

Method 6: **Non RMA Strategies and Plans**
Method 6.3.1

Method 9: **Advocacy and Facilitation**
Method 9.1.2

Policy 4.3.54³⁵ **Protecting infrastructure with nationally and/or regionally significance
significant infrastructure**

Protect infrastructure with of national or regional significance, by all of the following:

- a) Restricting the establishment of activities that may result in reverse sensitivity effects;
- b) Avoiding significant adverse effects on the functional needs of such infrastructure;
- c) Avoiding, remedying or mitigating other adverse effects on the functional needs of such infrastructure;
- d) Protecting infrastructure corridors from activities that are incompatible with the anticipated effects of that infrastructure sensitive activities, now and for the future.

Method 3: **Regional Plans**
Method 3.1

Method 4: **City and District Plans**
Method 4.1, Method 4.1.1814

³⁵ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 6 July 2018

Policy 4.3.6³⁶ The National Grid

- (1) Provide for the National Grid by:
- a) Managing activities to the extent reasonably possible to avoid reverse sensitivity effects on the National Grid; and
 - b) Identifying corridors for the existing National Grid within which activities and development will be managed to the extent reasonably possible to ensure that the functional needs of the National Grid are not compromised; and
 - c) Not allowing existing activities in the identified corridors to intensify in a way that increases their incompatibility with existing National Grid infrastructure.
 - d) Manage the adverse effects of new National Grid infrastructure by all of the following:
 - i. recognising there may be some areas in the coastal environment where avoidance of adverse effects is required to protect the identified special values of those areas.
 - ii. seeking to avoid adverse effects on the values of the following:
 - a. Areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna;
 - b. Outstanding natural features, landscapes and seascapes;
 - c. Areas of outstanding natural character;
 - d. Outstanding water bodies or wetlands;
 - e. Places or areas containing historic heritage of regional or national significance.
 - iii. Where it is not practicable to avoid adverse effects on the values of the areas listed in d)ii. above because of the functional needs of the National Grid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects on those values;
 - iv. Avoiding, remedying or mitigating other adverse effects;
 - v. Consider offsetting for residual adverse effects on indigenous biological diversity.
- (2) Where there is a conflict, Policy 4.3.6 prevails over the policies under Objectives 3.1, 3.2, 4.3 and 5.2, and over policy 5.4.9.

Method 3: Regional Plans

Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans

Method 4.1

Policy 4.3.7³⁷ Recognising port activities at Port Chalmers and Dunedin

Recognise the functional needs of port activities at Port Chalmers and Dunedin and manage their effects by:

³⁶ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 6 July 2018

³⁷ Provisional wording suggested by the Environment Court in decision No. [2018] NZEnvC 183. Currently under appeal.

- a) Ensuring that other activities in the coastal environment do not adversely affect port activities;
- b) Providing for the efficient and safe operation of these ports and effective connections with other transport modes;
- c) Providing for the development of those ports' capacity for national and international shipping in and adjacent to existing port activities;
- d) If any of the policies under objective 3.2 cannot be implemented while providing for the safe and efficient operation of Port Otago activities then apply policy 4.3.4 which relates to naturally and regionally significant infrastructure and prevails (in certain circumstances) over objective 3.2;
- e) If in turn (d) cannot be achieved because the operation or development of Port Otago may cause adverse effects on the values that contribute to the significant or outstanding character identified in policy 4.3.4(1)(a)(i) to (iii) then, through a resource consent process, require consideration of those effects and whether they are caused by safety considerations which are paramount or by transport efficiency considerations and avoiding, remedying or mitigating the effects (through adaptive management or otherwise) accordingly;
- (f) In respect of naturally significant surf breaks to avoid, remedy or mitigate the adverse effects of port activities.

Method 3: Regional Plans

Method 3.1.18

Method 4: City and District Plans

Method 4.1.3, 4.1.22

Principal Reasons and Explanation:

It is essential for the economy and the wellbeing and health and safety of communities, that people are serviced by the right infrastructure at the right time and that infrastructure operates efficiently and effectively.

Some infrastructure such as roads, water supply, waste water and storm water is provided by local authorities. Other infrastructure such as energy generation and network utility operation is managed by state owned enterprises, requiring authorities and private companies.

Infrastructure of national and regional significance, including roads, rail, electricity generation and transmission, radiocommunication and telecommunication, are part of a national network, and contribute to the economic and social wellbeing of the region and nation.

It is important to recognise the benefits of this infrastructure to the economy and to community resilience, in addition to managing any adverse effects on natural resources.

Local authorities have a role to play, to ensure that local, regional and national infrastructure needs are being met now and for the future.

Objective 4.4³⁸ Energy supplies to Otago's communities resources and supplies are secure, reliable and sustainable

Issue:

Although Otago is rich in renewable energy sources it is also an importer of fossil fuels. Any constraints on energy and fuel supply could affect the way we live and are able to respond to disruptive events.

Policy 4.4.1³⁹ Renewable electricity generation

~~Recognise and p~~Provide for the development, operation, maintenance, and upgrading of renewable electricity generation activities, by ~~both~~ all of the following:

- a) Recognising the benefits associated with those activities;
- b) Recognising the functional needs of those activities;
- c) Recognising the importance of the resource needs of those activities;
- ~~da)~~ Encouraging Promoting the efficient use of existing structures or facilities; and
- ~~eb)~~ Providing for activities associated with the investigation, and identification, and development of potential renewable electricity generation sites and sources.

Method 3: **Regional Plans**
Method 3.1

Method 4: **City and District Plans**
Method 4.1, ~~Method 4.1.14~~

Method 7: **Education and Information**
Method 7.1.4

Method 9: **Advocacy and Facilitation**
Method 9.2.3

Policy 4.4.2 Small and community scale renewable electricity generation

Promote small and community scale renewable electricity generation activities that both:

- a) Increase the local community's resilience and security of energy supply; and
- b) Avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects from that activity.

Method 7: **Education and Information**
Method 7.1.4

³⁸ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

³⁹ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

Method 9: Advocacy and Facilitation
Method 9.2.3

Policy 4.4.3⁴⁰ Protecting existing-renewable electricity generation

Protect the ~~generating capacity generation output~~ of existing nationally or regionally significant renewable electricity generation activities, by all of the following:

- a) Recognising their functional needs ~~of renewable electricity generation activities~~, including ~~physical~~ resource ~~supply~~ needs;
- b) ~~Restricting the establishment of those activities that may result in reverse sensitivity effects, Avoiding, to the extent reasonably practicable, reverse sensitivity effects on their functional needs;~~
- c) Avoiding, remedying or mitigating adverse effects from other activities on ~~the functional needs of that infrastructure them; except when sub-clause d) applies;~~
- d) Having particular regard to avoiding, remedying or mitigating adverse effects from new water takes on those which do not have a specified water allocation volume.

Method 3: Regional Plans
Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans
Method 4.1

Policy 4.4.4⁴¹ Efficient transport of electricity

Enable electricity transmission and distribution infrastructure activities that achieve all of the following:

- a) Maintenance or improvement of the security and reliability of electricity supply;
- b) Enhancement of the safety, efficiency and effectiveness of the infrastructure efficiency-of transporting electricity; and
- c) Avoidance, remediation or mitigation of adverse effects from that activity.

Method 3: Regional Plans
Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans
Method 4.1, ~~Method 4.1.14~~

⁴⁰ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

⁴¹ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

Policy 4.4.5⁴² Electricity distribution infrastructure

~~Protect~~ Recognise and provide for electricity distribution infrastructure, by all of the following:

- a) Recognising the functional needs of electricity distribution activities;
- b) Restricting the establishment of activities that may result in reverse sensitivity effects;
- c) Avoiding, remedying or mitigating adverse effects from other activities on the functional needs of that infrastructure;
- d) Minimising adverse effects of new and upgraded electricity distribution infrastructure on existing land uses;
- e) Identifying significant electricity distribution infrastructure and managing effects of potentially incompatible activities through methods such as corridors.
- ~~d) Protecting existing distribution corridors for infrastructure needs, now and for the future.~~

Method 3: Regional Plans

Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans

Method 4.1, 4.1.19

Method 9: Advocacy and Facilitation

Method 9.1

Policy 4.4.6⁴³ Energy efficient transport

Enable energy efficient and sustainable transport for Otago's communities, by all of the following:

- a) Encouraging the development of compact and well integrated urban areas, to reduce travel needs within those areas;
- b) Ensuring that transport infrastructure in urban areas has good connectivity, both within new urban areas and between new and existing urban areas, by all of the following:
 - i. Placing a high priority on walking, cycling, and public transport, where appropriate;
 - ii. Maximising pedestrian and cycling networks connectivity, and integration with public transport;
 - iii. Having high design standards for pedestrian and cyclist safety and amenity;
- c) Enabling the development or upgrade of transport infrastructure and associated facilities that both:
 - i. Increase freight efficiency; and
 - ii. Foster the uptake of new technologies for more efficient energy uses, and renewable or lower emission transport fuels.

⁴² Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

⁴³ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

d) Fostering uptake of public transportation through provision of safe, reliable and well sheltered alternatives to private transport.

Method 2: Regional, City and District Council Relationships
Method 2.1, Method 2.2

Method 3: Regional Plans
Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans
Method 4.1

Method 6: Non RMA Strategies and Plans
Method 6.3

Method 9: Advocacy and Facilitation
Method 9.1, Method 9.2.2

Policy 4.4.7⁴⁴ Fuels

Recognise and provide for reliable and resilient fuel supply chain infrastructure to meet community fuel needs, including facilities for the transition to a lower-carbon future.

Method 3: Regional Plans
Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans
Method 4.1

Principal Reasons and Explanation:

There is a need to encourage renewable energy generation, encourage sustainable energy use and improve energy resilience.

People's social and economic wellbeing, and their health and safety, is dependent on their energy needs being met by a sustainable, reliable and secure supply of energy. Communities rely on a range of renewable energy sources such as hydro, wind and solar generation and non-renewable sources such as oil, gas and coal.

More efficient energy uses, and a greater diversity of energy sources have the potential to increase community resilience while increasing the ability to sustain economic development.

⁴⁴ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

In particular, more efficient or alternative transport fuels, in addition to better planning for access and public transport will provide for a more sustainable and resilient transport system.

Objective 4.5⁴⁵ Urban growth and development is well designed, reflects local character occurs in a strategic and coordinated way, and integrates effectively with adjoining urban and rural environments

Issue:

Unplanned urban growth and development risks exceeding the carrying capacity of existing infrastructure and services, adversely affecting community resilience.

Unanticipated growth places pressure on adjoining productive land, and risks losing connectivity with adjoining urban areas.

Urban development has not always had regard for the local environment or the needs of the community.

Policy 4.5.1⁴⁶ Managing Providing for urban growth and development

Manage Provide for urban growth and development in a strategic and co-ordinated way, including by all of the following:

- a) Ensuring future urban growth areas are in accordance with any future development strategy for that district.
- ba) Ensuring there is sufficient Monitoring supply and demand of residential, commercial and industrial zoned land capacity, to cater for the demand for such land, over at least the next 20 years;
- c) Ensuring that there is sufficient housing and business land development capacity available in Otago;
- d) Setting minimum targets for sufficient, feasible capacity for housing in high growth urban areas in Schedule 6
- eb) Coordinating urban growth and the development and the extension of urban areas with relevant infrastructure development programmes, to provide infrastructure in an efficient and effective way.
- fc) Identifying future growth areas and managing the subdivision, use and development of rural land outside these areas to achieve all of the following Having particular regard to:
 - i. Providing Minimise for rural production activities by minimising adverse effects on significant soils and activities which sustain food production rural activities and significant soils;
 - ii. Minimising Minimise competing demands for natural resources;
 - iii. Maintaining Maintain high and outstanding natural character in the coastal environment; outstanding natural features, landscapes, and seascapes; and areas of

⁴⁵ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

⁴⁶ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

- ~~significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna or enhance significant biological diversity, landscape or natural character values;~~
- iv. ~~Maintaining~~ **Maintain** important cultural or historic heritage values;
- v. ~~Avoiding~~ **Avoid** land with significant risk from natural hazards;
- ~~d) Considering the need for urban growth boundaries to control urban expansion;~~
- ge) Ensuring efficient use of land;
- ~~h) Restricting urban growth and development to areas that avoid reverse sensitivity effects unless those effects can be adequately managed;~~
- if) ~~Encouraging~~ **Requiring** the use of low or no emission heating systems where ambient air quality is:
 - i. Below standards for human health; or
 - ii. Vulnerable to degradation given the local climatic and geographical context;
- ~~g) Giving effect to the principles of good urban design, in Schedule 5;~~
- ~~h) Restricting the location of activities that may result in reverse sensitivity effects on existing activities.~~
- ~~j) Consolidating existing coastal settlements and coastal urban areas where this will contribute to avoiding or mitigating sprawling or sporadic patterns of settlement and urban growth.~~

Method 2: Regional, City and District Council Relationships

Method 2.1, Method 2.2

Method 4: City and District Plans

Method 4.1.65, Method 4.1.1312, Method 4.2.4, Method 4.2.7, Method 4.2.10

Method 5: Research, Monitoring and Reporting

Method 5.2.3

Method 6: Non RMA Strategies and Plans

Method 6.2

Policy 4.5.27⁴⁷ Integrating infrastructure with land use

Achieve the strategic integration of infrastructure with land use, by undertaking all of the following:

- a) Recognising and providing for the functional needs of infrastructure ~~of regional or national importance;~~
- b) Locating and designing infrastructure to take into account all of the following:
 - i. Actual and reasonably foreseeable land use change;
 - ii. The current population and projected demographic changes;
 - iii. Actual and reasonably foreseeable change in supply of, and demand for, infrastructure services;
 - iv. Natural and physical resource constraints;

⁴⁷ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

- v. Effects on the values of natural and physical resources;
 - vi. Co-dependence with other infrastructure;
 - vii. The effects of climate change on the long-term viability of that infrastructure;
 - viii. Natural hazard risk.
- ~~c) Locating growth and development :~~
- ~~i. Within areas that have sufficient infrastructure capacity; or~~
 - ~~ii. Where infrastructure services can be upgraded or extended efficiently and effectively;~~
- ~~cd) Coordinating the design and development of infrastructure with land use change in growth and redevelopment planning.~~

Method 2: Regional, City and District Council Relationships

Method 2.1, Method 2.2

Method 3: Regional Plans

Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans

Method 4.1, Method 4.2.4

Method 6: Non RMA Strategies and Plans

Method 6.3.1

Method 7: Education and Information

Method 7.1.4

Method 9: Advocacy and Facilitation

Method 9.1.2

~~**Policy 4.5.2⁴⁸ Planned and coordinated urban growth and development**~~

~~Where urban growth boundaries or future urban development areas, are identified in a district plan, control the release of land within those boundaries or areas, by:~~

- ~~a) Staging development, using identified triggers to release new stages for development; or~~
- ~~b) Releasing land in a way that ensures both:

 - ~~i. a logical spatial development; and~~
 - ~~ii. efficient use of existing land and infrastructure before new land is released; and~~~~
- ~~c) Avoiding urban development beyond the urban growth boundary or future urban development area.~~

~~**Method 2: Regional, City and District Council Relationships**~~

~~Method 2.1, Method 2.2~~

⁴⁸ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

~~Method 4: City and District Plans~~~~Method 4.1.12, Method 4.2.4~~**Policy 4.5.3⁴⁹ Urban design**

~~Design new urban development with regard to: Encourage the use of Schedule 5 good urban design principles in the subdivision and development of urban areas.~~

- ~~a) A resilient, safe and healthy community;~~
- ~~b) A built form that relates well to its surrounding environment;~~
- ~~c) Reducing risk from natural hazards;~~
- ~~d) Good access and connectivity within and between communities;~~
- ~~e) A sense of cohesion and recognition of community values;~~
- ~~f) Recognition and celebration of physical and cultural identity, and the historic heritage values of a place;~~
- ~~g) Areas where people can live, work and play;~~
- ~~h) A diverse range of housing, commercial, industrial and service activities;~~
- ~~i) A diverse range of social and cultural opportunities.~~

~~Method 4 City and District Plans~~~~Method 4.1~~~~Method 2: Regional, City and District Council Relationships~~~~Method 2.1, Method 2.2~~~~Method 4: City and District Plans~~~~Method 4.1~~~~Method 7: Education and Information~~~~Method 7.1.4~~~~Method 9: Advocacy and Facilitation~~~~Method 9.1.4, Method 9.1.5~~**Policy 4.5.4 Low impact design**

Encourage the use of low impact design techniques in subdivision and development to reduce demand on stormwater, water and wastewater infrastructure and reduce potential adverse environmental effects.

Method 4: City and District Plans

⁴⁹ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

Method 4.1

Method 7: Education and Information
Method 7.1.4

Method 9: Advocacy and Facilitation
Method 9.1.2, Method 9.1.5

Policy 4.5.5 Warmer buildings

Encourage the design of subdivision and development to reduce the adverse effects of the region's colder climate, and higher demand and costs for energy, including maximising passive solar gain.

Method 4: City and District Plans
Method 4.1

Method 7: Education and Information
Method 7.1.4

Method 9: Advocacy and Facilitation
Method 9.1.2, Method 9.1.5 c.

Policy 4.5.6 Designing for public access

Design and maintain public spaces, including streets and open spaces, to meet the reasonable access and mobility needs of all sectors.

Method 4: City and District Plans
Method 4.1.76

Principal Reasons and Explanation:

Well-designed and integrated urban growth, achieves effective and affordable infrastructure, and improves resilience. The best use of the natural and physical resources will reduce the effects of unanticipated growth.

Well planned urban growth and development can achieve multiple benefits, including economic, social and environmental benefits. Concentrating activities in urban areas creates economies of scale for the development and maintenance of infrastructure and supports community facilities such as health care and educational facilities. This can also reduce pressure on the surrounding productive and natural environment.

Urban areas that are well designed will improve quality of life, resilience and create more attractive opportunities for business investment.

The quality of the urban environment can affect quality of life and community viability. Built environments that relate well to their surroundings, have easy connectivity access to key services and reflect the distinctive character of their locality make a positive contribution to the community. Poor quality or badly co-ordinated development presents social, environmental, and economic risks.

Integrating the natural environment into urban areas has been shown to achieve multiple benefits. Urban design choices can allow natural processes to continue through and around everyday activities with minimal adverse impact to either.

Objective 4.6 Hazardous substances, contaminated land and waste materials do not harm human health or the quality of the environment in Otago

Issue:

Waste materials, hazardous substances and contaminated land may adversely affect the environment and community health and safety.

Policy 4.6.1 Hazardous substances

Promote an integrated approach to the management of hazardous substances in Otago.

Method 6: Non RMA Strategies and Plans

Method 6.9

Method 7: Education and Information

Method 7.1.6

Method 9: Advocacy and Facilitation

Method 9.1.2, Method 9.1.4

Policy 4.6.2⁵⁰ Use, storage and disposal of hazardous substances

Manage the use, storage and disposal of hazardous substances ~~to avoid accidental spillage or release of those substances~~, by all of the following:

- a) Providing secure containment ~~for the storage of hazardous substances of those substances in case of accidental spillage~~;
- b) Minimising risk associated with natural hazard events;
- c) ~~Avoiding adverse effects of those substances on~~ Ensuring the health and safety of people; ~~and~~
- d) ~~a~~ Avoiding, remedying or mitigating adverse effects on the environment ~~and other values~~;
- e) Providing for the development of facilities to safely store, transfer, process, handle and dispose of hazardous substances;
- f) Ensuring hazardous substances are treated or disposed ~~of at authorised facilities~~, in accordance with the relevant ~~disposal instructions~~ regulatory requirements;
- g) Restricting the location ~~and intensification~~ of activities that may result in reverse sensitivity effects near authorised facilities for hazardous substance ~~bulk storage~~, treatment or disposal;
- h) Encouraging the use of best management practices.

Method 2: Regional, City and District Council Relationships

⁵⁰ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

Method 2.1, Method 2.2

Method 3: Regional Plans
Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans
Method 4.1.98

Method 6: Non RMA Strategies and Plans
Method 6.9

Method 7: Education and Information
Method 7.1.6

Method 9: Advocacy and Facilitation
Method 9.1.2, Method 9.1.4

Policy 4.6.3 Hazardous substance collection, disposal and recycling

Promote and facilitate the establishment of hazardous substance collection, disposal and recycling services across the region.

Method 9: Advocacy and Facilitation
Method 9.1.2

Policy 4.6.4 Identifying contaminated land

Identify sites of known or potentially contaminated land in Otago.

Method 5: Research, Monitoring and Reporting
Method 5.2.1 e, Method 5.2.1 k.

Method 7: Education and Information
Method 7.1.3 b.

Policy 4.6.5⁵¹ Managing contaminated land

Ensure contaminated or potentially contaminated land does not pose an unacceptable risk to people and the environment, by:

- a) Assessing and, if required, monitoring contaminant levels and environmental risks;
- b) Protecting human health in accordance with regulatory requirements;

⁵¹ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

c) Minimising adverse effects of the contaminants on the environment.

~~Manage the use of contaminated land, to protect people and the environment from adverse effects, by all of the following:~~

- ~~a) Prior to subdivision or development of potentially contaminated land, requiring a site investigation be undertaken to determine the nature and extent of any contaminants;~~
- ~~b) Where there is contamination:

 - ~~i. Requiring an assessment of associated environmental risks; and~~
 - ~~ii. Remediating contaminated land;~~~~
- ~~c) Considering the need for ongoing monitoring of contaminant levels and associated risks.~~

Method 2: Regional, City and District Council Relationships
Method 2.1, Method 2.2

Method 3: Regional Plans
Method 3.1.~~1110~~

Method 4: City and District Plans
Method 4.2.6

Policy 4.6.6 Waste management

Promote an integrated approach to the management of the use, storage and disposal of waste materials.

Method 6: Non RMA Strategies and Plans
Method 6.9

Method 9: Advocacy and Facilitation
Method 9.1.2 c.

Policy 4.6.7⁵² Waste minimisation responses

Encourage activities to give effect to the waste minimisation hierarchy of responses, by:

- a) Giving preference to reducing waste generated; then
- b) Reusing waste; then
- c) Recycling waste; then
- d) Recovering resources from waste; then
- e) Treatment; then
- fe) Disposing residual waste to ~~authorised landfill~~ a disposal facility.

Method 6: Non RMA Strategies and Plans

⁵² Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

Method 6.8

Method 9: Advocacy and Facilitation
Method 9.1.2 c.

Policy 4.6.8⁵³ Waste storage, recycling, recovery, treatment and disposal

Manage the storage, recycling, recovery, treatment and disposal of waste materials by undertaking all of the following:

- a) Providing for the development of facilities and services for the storage, recycling, recovery, treatment and disposal of waste materials;
- b) ~~Avoiding adverse effects on~~ Ensuring the health and safety of people; ~~and~~
- c) ~~avoiding, remedying and mitigating~~ Minimising adverse effects on the environment ~~and other values;~~
- ~~d~~e) Minimising risk associated with natural hazard events;
- ~~e~~d) Restricting the location of activities that may result in reverse sensitivity effects near waste management facilities and services.

Method 2: Regional, City and District Council Relationships
Method 2.1, Method 2.2

Method 3: Regional Plans
Method 3.1. ~~1244~~

Method 4: City and District Plans
Method 4.1. ~~109~~

Method 5: Research, Monitoring and Reporting
Method 5.2.1 f.

Method 6: Non RMA Strategies and Plans
Method 6.8, Method 6.9

Method 7: Education and Information
Method 7.1.5

Method 9: Advocacy and Facilitation
Method 9.1.5

⁵³ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

Policy 4.6.9⁵⁴ New Contaminated land

Avoid the creation of new contaminated land or, where this is not practicable, minimise adverse effects on the environment.

Method 3: Regional Plans

Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans

Method 4.1

Principal Reasons and Explanation:

Resources need to be carefully used to minimise the material disposed of as waste.

Waste materials and hazardous substances need to be carefully managed to avoid creating environmental problems or adversely affecting human health.

Hazardous substances can be dangerous when not managed appropriately but are essential components of some activities. Hazardous substances and their waste should also be managed to avoid creating environmental problems or adversely affecting human health, in accordance with regulatory requirements.

⁵⁴ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

PART B Chapter 5 People are able to use and enjoy Otago's natural and built environment

The use of natural and physical resources underpins community, cultural, and economic wellbeing. Due to the importance of natural resources to wellbeing and the dynamic and interconnected nature of the environment, the sustainable management of resources requires consideration of the adverse effects of resource use on the environment and on other resource users.

This fifth chapter builds on the previous ones by enabling the use of the natural and physical environment for enjoyment and making a living, while ensuring that resources are sustainably managed for conflicting or incompatible uses.

Chapter overview:

Objective 5.1		
Public access to areas of value to the community is maintained or enhanced.		Page
Policy 5.1.1	Public access	81 <u>95</u>
Objective 5.2		
Historic heritage resources are recognised and contribute to the region's character and sense of identity.		Page
Policy 5.2.1	Recognising historic heritage	83 <u>97</u>
Policy 5.2.2	Identifying historic heritage	83 <u>97</u>
Policy 5.2.3	Managing historic heritage	84 <u>98</u>
Objective 5.3		
Sufficient land is managed and protected for economic production.		Page
Policy 5.3.1	Rural activities	85 <u>100</u>
Policy 5.3.2	Plantation forestry in dry catchments	85 <u>100</u>
Policy 5.3. 2 <u>3</u>	Distribution of commercial activities	85 <u>101</u>
Policy 5.3. 3 <u>4</u>	Industrial land	86 <u>102</u>
Policy 5.3.<u>4</u>	Mineral and petroleum exploration, extraction and processing	86 <u>102</u>
Policy 5.3.5	Tourism and outdoor recreation	87
Objective 5.4		
Adverse effects of using and enjoying Otago's natural and physical resources are minimised.		Page
Policy 5.4.1	Offensive or Objectionable discharges	88 <u>105</u>
Policy 5.4.2	Adaptive management approach	88 <u>105</u>
Policy 5.4.3	Precautionary approach to <u>adverse effects</u>	89 <u>106</u>
Policy 5.4.4	Emission standards	89 <u>106</u>
Policy 5.4.5	Pest plants and animals	89 <u>107</u>
Policy 5.4.<u>6</u>	Offsetting for indigenous biological diversity	90 <u>108</u>
Policy 5.4.<u>6A</u>	Biological Diversity Compensation	91

Policy 5.4.7	Offsetting for air quality	<u>92</u> 108
Policy 5.4.8	Adverse effects from mineral and petroleum exploration, extraction and processing	<u>92</u>109
<u>Policy 5.4.9</u>	<u>Activities in the Coastal Marine Area</u>	<u>93</u>
Policy 5.4. 103 -2	Plantation forestry <u>Managing land use change in dry catchments</u>	<u>93</u>

Objective 5.1 Public access to areas of value to the community is maintained or enhanced

Issue:

Public access to areas of value to the community is sometimes limited or inappropriate.

Policy 5.1.1⁵⁵ Public access

Maintain ~~and~~ or enhance public access to the natural environment, including to the coast, lakes, rivers and their margins, and where possible areas of cultural or historic significance, unless restricting access is necessary for one or more of the following:

- a) Protecting public health and safety;
- b) Protecting the natural heritage and ecosystem values of sensitive natural areas or habitats;
- c) Protecting identified sites and values associated with historic heritage or cultural significance to Kāi Tahu;
- d) Ensuring a level of security consistent with the operational requirements of a lawfully established activity.

Method 1: Kāi Tahu Relationships

Method 1.2

Method 2: Regional, City and District Council Relationships

Method 2.1, Method 2.2

Method 3: Regional Plans

Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans

Method 4.1. ~~1413~~, Method 4.2. ~~98~~

Method 8: Funding

Method 8.1.1

Method 9: Advocacy and Facilitation

Method 9.2.2 e, 9.2.8 b.

⁵⁵ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

Principal Reasons and Explanation:

Access to the natural environment and areas of cultural and historic significance is highly valued by residents and visitors.

The opportunities subdivision and development create to improve access to the natural environment or to limit access to more sensitive places should be utilised.

The ability to access the natural environment and areas of cultural and historic significance is highly valued by the community and contributes significantly to the tourism economy. The RMA identifies the maintenance or enhancement of public access to and along the coastal marine area, lakes, and rivers as a matter of national importance.

Improving access to the natural environment or sites of cultural and historic significance can contribute to recreational, cultural, spiritual and economic wellbeing and should be maintained or enhanced unless it would be detrimental to the protection of the values of these areas, or the health and safety of the community.

Objective 5.2 Historic heritage resources are recognised and contribute to the region's character and sense of identity

Issue:

Subdivision, use, and development may risk damage to Otago's rich historic heritage.

Policy 5.2.1 Recognising historic heritage

Recognise all the following elements as characteristic or important to Otago's historic heritage:

- a) Residential and commercial buildings;
- b) Māori cultural and historic heritage values;
- c) 19th and early 20th century pastoral sites;
- d) Early surveying, communications and transport, including roads, bridges and routes;
- e) Early industrial historic heritage, including mills and brickworks;
- f) Gold and other mining systems and settlements;
- g) Dredge and ship wrecks;
- h) Coastal historic heritage, particularly Kāi Tahu occupation sites and those associated with early European activity such as whaling;
- i) Memorials;
- j) Trees and vegetation.

Method 3: Regional Plans
Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans
Method 4.1

Policy 5.2.2 Identifying historic heritage

Identify historic heritage places and areas of regional or national significance, using the attributes in Schedule [56](#).

Method 3: Regional Plans
Method 3.1.[109](#)

Method 4: City and District Plans
Method 4.1.[1110](#)

Method 5: Research, Monitoring and Reporting
Method 5.1.4

Method 9: Advocacy and Facilitation
Method 9.1.3 e.

Policy 5.2.3 Managing historic heritage

Protect and enhance places and areas of historic heritage, by all of the following:

- a) Recognising that some places or areas are known or may contain archaeological sites, wāhi tapu or wāhi taoka which could be of significant historic or cultural value;
- b) Applying these provisions immediately upon discovery of such previously unidentified archaeological sites or areas, wāhi tapu or wāhi taoka;
- c) Avoiding adverse effects on those values ~~which~~ that contribute to the area or place being of regional or national significance;
- d) ~~Avoiding~~Minimising significant adverse effects on other values of areas and places of historic heritage;
- e) Remedying when adverse effects on other values cannot be avoided;
- f) Mitigating when adverse effects on other values cannot be avoided or remedied;
- g) Encouraging the integration of historic heritage values into new activities;
- h) Enabling adaptive reuse or upgrade of historic heritage places and areas where historic heritage values can be maintained.

Method 1: Kāi Tahu Relationships

Method 1.2

Method 2: Regional, City and District Council Relationships

Method 2.1, Method 2.2

Method 3: Regional Plans

Method 3.1. ~~109~~

Method 4: City and District Plans

Method 4.1. ~~1110~~, Method 4.2.3, Method 4.2.5

Method 8: Funding

Method 8.1.1

Method 9: Advocacy and Facilitation

Method 9.1. ~~53~~ b

Principal Reasons and Explanation:

In the RMA, protection of historic heritage from inappropriate activities is a matter of national importance.

Otago is a region rich in historic heritage which includes historic heritage places and areas that are recognised as nationally, regionally and locally important. Historic heritage resources make significant contributions to the regional identity and tourism economy.

The use of common criteria identifying historic heritage provides a more efficient and consistent approach across the region, while allowing local variation.

Objective 5.3 Sufficient land is managed and protected for economic production

Issue:⁵⁶

Providing for economic production can create adverse effects. Existing economic activities are susceptible to reverse sensitivity effects, particularly when adjoining land use changes.

Policy 5.3.1⁵⁷ Rural activities

Manage activities in rural areas, to support the region's economy and communities, by ~~all of the following~~:

- a) Enabling primary production and other rural activities that support ~~the rural economy that~~ production;
- ~~b)~~ Providing for mineral exploration, extraction and processing;
- ~~c)~~ Minimising the loss of significant soils;
- ~~d)~~ Restricting the establishment of incompatible activities in rural areas that ~~may are likely to~~ lead to reverse sensitivity effects;
- ~~e)~~ Minimising the subdivision of productive rural land into smaller lots that may result in ~~rural residential activities~~ a loss of its productive capacity or productive efficiency;
- ~~f)~~ Providing for other activities that have a functional need to locate in rural areas, ~~including tourism and recreational activities that are of a nature and scale compatible with rural activities.~~

Method 4: City and District Plans
Method 4.1.~~6~~⁵, Method 4.2.4

Method 5: Research, Monitoring and Reporting
Method 5.1.3 c, Method 5.2.1 d

Method 7: Education and Information
Method 7.1.2 f

Policy 5.3.~~2~~³⁵⁸ Distribution of commercial activities

Manage the distribution of commercial activities by:

- a) Enabling a wide variety of commercial, social and cultural activities in central business districts, and town and commercial centres;
- b) Enabling smaller commercial centres to service local community needs;

⁵⁶ Awaiting finalised changes pursuant to Environment Court decision No. [2019] NZEnvC41. Subject to appeal.

⁵⁷ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 5 September 2018

⁵⁸ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

- c) ~~Restricting commercial activities outside of a) and b) when such activities are likely to undermine the vibrancy and viability of those centres;~~
- d) ~~Encouraging the adaptive reuse of existing buildings.~~

~~Manage the distribution of commercial activities in larger urban areas, to maintain the vibrancy of the central business district and town centres and support local commercial needs, by all of the following:~~

- a) ~~Enabling a wide variety of commercial, social and cultural activities in the central business district;~~
- b) ~~Encouraging the adaptive re-use reuse of existing buildings;~~
- c) ~~Avoiding unplanned extension of commercial activities that has significant adverse effects on the central business district and town centres, including on the efficient use of infrastructure, employment and services;~~
- d) ~~Enabling smaller town centres to service local community needs.~~

Method 4: **City and District Plans**
Method 4.1

Method 9: **Advocacy and Facilitation**
Method 9.1.5

Policy 5.3.34⁵⁹ Industrial land

Manage the finite nature of land suitable and available for industrial activities, by all of the following:

- a) Providing specific areas to accommodate the effects of industrial activities;
- b) Providing a range of land suitable for different industrial activities, including land-extensive activities;
- c) Restricting the establishment of activities in industrial areas that ~~may are likely to~~ result in:
 - i. Reverse sensitivity effects; or
 - ii. Inefficient use of industrial land or infrastructure.

Method 4: **City and District Plans**
Method 4.1

Policy 5.3.45⁶⁰ Mineral and petroleum exploration, extraction and processing

~~Recognise the functional needs of mineral exploration, extraction and processing activities to locate where the resource exists, and manage them by all of the following:~~

- a) ~~Giving preference to avoiding their location in all of the following:~~
 - i. ~~Areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna;~~

⁵⁹ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

⁶⁰ Awaiting finalised changes pursuant to Environment Court decision No. [2019] NZEnvC41. Subject to appeal.

- ii. Outstanding natural features, landscapes and seascapes;
 - iii. Areas of outstanding natural character;
 - iv. Outstanding water bodies;
 - v. Areas subject to significant natural hazard risk;
 - vi. Places or areas containing significant historic heritage.
- b) Restricting the establishment of those activities in areas used for mineral and petroleum exploration, extraction and processing that may result in reverse sensitivity effects.

Method 3: Regional Plans

Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans

Method 4.1

Policy 5.3.5⁶¹ Tourism and outdoor recreation

Recognise the social and economic value of some forms of outdoor recreation and tourism having access to, and being located within, outstanding natural features and landscapes.

Method 3: Regional Plans

Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans

Method 4.1

Principal Reasons and Explanation:

Some degree of spatial separation of incompatible activities and control over land use change is needed to ensure efficient use of land and continuing economic viability.

The use of land for productive activity underpins the economy of the region. Opportunities for economic growth and development need to be provided for by recognising and managing the effects of activities. Managing the efficient use of land may also require the management of other land use activities where significant historical investment or future productive potential may be adversely affected by competing or conflicting activities.

⁶¹ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

Objective 5.4 Adverse effects of using and enjoying Otago's natural and physical resources are minimised

Issue:

Resource use can create adverse effects on other resources, their values and for other resource users and the wider community.

Ecosystems, significant areas of biological diversity and outstanding landscapes are under pressure from the direct effects of human activities, as well as indirect effects, including the spread of multiple pest species.

Policy 5.4.1⁶² Offensive or Objectionable discharges

Manage offensive or objectionable discharges to land, water and air ~~that are objectionable or offensive to Kāi Tahu and/or the wider community~~ by:

- a) Avoiding significant adverse effects of those discharges;
- b) Avoiding significant adverse effects of discharges of human or animal waste directly, or in close proximity, to water or mahika kai sites;
- c) Avoiding, remedying or mitigating other adverse effects of those discharges.

Method 3: Regional Plans

Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans

Method 4.1.⁵⁴

Method 7: Education and Information

Method 7.1.2

Policy 5.4.2 Adaptive management approach

Apply an adaptive management approach, to avoid, remedy or mitigate actual and potential adverse effects that might arise and that can be remedied before they become irreversible, by both:

- a) Setting appropriate indicators for effective monitoring of those adverse effects; and
- b) Setting thresholds to trigger remedial action before the effects result in irreversible damage.

Method 3: Regional Plans

Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans

Method 4.1

⁶² Changed by Environment Court consent order – 6 July 2018

Policy 5.4.3⁶³ Precautionary approach to adverse effects

Apply a precautionary approach to activities where adverse effects may be uncertain, not able to be determined, or poorly understood but are potentially significant or irreversible.

Method 3: Regional Plans
Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans
Method 4.1

Policy 5.4.4 Emission standards

Apply emission standards within airsheds, to achieve ambient air quality that supports good human health.

Method 3: Regional Plans
Method 3.1.~~98~~

Method 5: Research, Monitoring and Reporting
Method 5.1.3 a

Method 6: Non RMA Strategies and Plans
Method 6.2

Policy 5.4.5⁶⁴ Pest plants and animals

Control the adverse effects of pest species, prevent their introduction, ~~and~~ reduce their spread and enable the removal and destruction of material for biosecurity purposes, to safeguard all of the following:

- a) The viability of indigenous species and habitats for indigenous species;
- b) Ecosystem services that support economic activities;
- c) Water quality and water quantity;
- d) Soil quality;
- e) Human and animal health;
- f) Recreation values;
- g) Landscapes, seascapes and natural character;~~;~~
- h) Primary production.

Method 2: Regional, City and District Council Relationships

⁶³ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 6 July 2018

⁶⁴ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 6 July 2018

- Method 2.1, Method 2.2
- Method 3: Regional Plans**
Method 3.1
- Method 4: City and District Plans**
Method 4.1
- Method 6: Non RMA Strategies and Plans**
Method 6.5, Method 6.6
- Method 7: Education and Information**
Method 7.1.1 e
- Method 8: Funding**
Method 8.1
- Method 9: Advocacy and Facilitation**
Method 9.2.6

Policy 5.4.6⁶⁵ Offsetting for indigenous biological diversity

Consider the offsetting of indigenous biological diversity, when:

- a) Adverse effects of activities cannot be avoided, remedied or mitigated;
- b) The offset achieves no net loss and preferably a net gain in indigenous biological diversity;
- c) The offset ensures there is no loss of individuals of rare or vulnerable species as defined in reports published prior to 14 January 2019 under the New Zealand Threat Classification System ("NZTCS");
- d) The offset is undertaken close to the location of development, where it this will result in the best ecological outcome, preferably:
 - i. Close to the location of development; or
 - ii. Within the same ecological district or coastal marine biogeographic region.
- e) The offset is applied so that the ecological values being achieved are the same or similar to those being lost;
- f) The positive ecological outcomes of the offset last at least as long as the impact of the activity, preferably in perpetuity;
- g) The offset will achieve biological diversity outcomes beyond results that would have occurred if the offset was not proposed;
- h) The delay between the loss of biological diversity through the proposal and the gain or maturation of the offset's biological diversity outcomes is minimised.

⁶⁵ Changes provided by Environment Court decision No. [2019] NZEnvC41, Subject to appeal.

Method 3: Regional Plans
Method 3.1.15~~14~~

Method 4: City and District Plans
Method 4.1.20~~15~~

Policy 5.4.6A⁶⁶ Biological Diversity Compensation

Consider the use of biological diversity compensation:

a) **When:**

- i. Adverse effects of activities cannot be avoided, remedied, mitigated or offset; and
- ii. The residual adverse effects will not result in
 1. The loss of an indigenous taxon (excluding freshwater fauna and flora) or of any ecosystem type from an ecological district or coastal marine biogeographic region;
 2. Removal or loss of viability of habitat of a threatened or at risk indigenous species of fauna or flora under the New Zealand Threat Classification System ("NZTCS");
 3. Removal or loss of viability of an originally rare or uncommon ecosystem type that is associated with indigenous vegetation or habitat of indigenous fauna;
 4. Worsening of the NZTCS conservation status of any threatened or at risk indigenous freshwater fauna.

b) **By applying the following criteria:**

- i. The compensation is proportionate to the adverse effect;
- ii. The compensation is undertaken where it will result in the best practicable outcome, preferably;
 1. Close to the location of development;
 2. Within the same ecological district or coastal marine biogeographic region;
- iii. The compensation will achieve positive biological diversity outcomes that would not have occurred without that compensation;
- iv. The positive biological diversity outcomes of the compensation last for at least as long as the adverse effects of the activity; and
- v. The delay between the loss of biological diversity through the proposal and the gain or maturation of the compensation's biological diversity outcomes is minimised.

Method 3: Regional Plans
Method 3.1

Method 4: City and District Plans
Method 4.1

⁶⁶ Changes provided by Environment Court decision No. [2019] NZEnvC41, subject to appeal.

Policy 5.4.7 Offsetting for air quality

Provide for the offsetting of adverse effects of discharges to air on ambient air quality, only when all of the following are met:

- a) The ambient air quality of the relevant airshed breaches air quality standards for human health;
- b) Offsetting will reduce the cumulative effect of discharges to air in the relevant airshed by the same, or greater amount, than the proposed discharge;
- c) Offsetting improves access to reliable and affordable domestic heating in the relevant airshed.

Method 3: Regional Plans

Method 3.1

Method 6: Non RMA Strategies and Plans

Method 6.2

Policy 5.4.8⁶⁷ Adverse effects from mineral and petroleum exploration, extraction and processing

Minimise adverse effects from the exploration, extraction and processing of minerals and petroleum, by all of the following:

- a) Giving preference to avoiding their location in all of the following:
 - i. Areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna;
 - ii. Outstanding natural features, landscapes and seascapes;
 - iii. Areas of outstanding natural character;
 - iv. Outstanding water bodies;
 - v. Areas subject to significant natural hazard risk;
 - vi. Places or areas containing significant historic heritage.
- b) Where it is not possible to avoid locating in the areas listed in a) above, avoiding significant adverse effects of the activity on those values that contribute to the significant or outstanding nature of those areas;
- c) Avoiding adverse effects on the health and safety of the community;
- d) Avoiding, remedying, or mitigating adverse effects on other values;
- e) Reducing unavoidable adverse effects by
 - i. Staging development for longer term activities; and
 - ii. Progressively rehabilitating the site, where possible.
- f) Considering offsetting for residual adverse effects;
- g) Applying a precautionary approach to assessing the effects of the activity, where there is scientific uncertainty, and potentially significant or irreversible adverse effects.

Method 3: Regional Plans

Method 3.1

⁶⁷ Awaiting finalised changes pursuant to Environment Court decision No. [2019] NZEnvC41. Subject to appeal.

Method 4: City and District Plans**Method 4.1****Policy 5.4.9⁶⁸ Activities in the Coastal Marine Area**

In the coastal marine area minimise adverse effects from activities by all of the following:

- a) Avoiding activities that do not have a functional need to locate in the coastal marine area;
- b) When an activity has a functional need to locate in the coastal marine area, giving preference to avoiding its location in:
 - i. Areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna;
 - ii. Outstanding natural features, landscapes and seascapes;
 - iii. Areas of outstanding natural character;
 - iv. Places or areas containing historic heritage of regional or national significance;
 - v. Areas subject to significant natural hazard risk;
- c) Where it is not practicable to avoid locating in the areas listed in b) above, because of the functional needs of that activity:
 - i. Avoid adverse effects on the values that contribute to the significant or outstanding nature of b)i.-iii;
 - ii. Avoid significant adverse effects on natural character in all other areas of the coastal environment;
 - iii. Avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects on values as necessary to preserve historic heritage of regional or national significance;
 - iv. Minimise any increase in natural hazard risk through mitigation measures;
 - v. Avoiding, remedying, or mitigating adverse effects on other values;
- d) Providing for the efficient use of space by requiring structures be made available for public or multiple use wherever reasonable and practicable;
- e) Applying a precautionary approach to assessing the effects of the activity, where there is scientific uncertainty, and potentially significant or irreversible adverse effects;

Method 3: Regional Plans**Method 3.1****Policy 5.4.103.2⁶⁹ ~~Plantation forestry~~ Managing land use change in dry catchments**

Manage land use change in dry catchments, to avoid any significant reduction in water yield, by: ~~In~~ dry catchments avoid plantation forestry activities that would result in significant, including cumulative, reductions in water yield.

- a) Controlling any extension of forestry activities within those catchments that would result in a significant reduction in water yield, including cumulative reductions; and

⁶⁸ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 6 July 2018

⁶⁹ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

b) Minimising the conversion of tall tussock grasslands to species which are less able to capture and hold precipitation.

Method 2: **Regional, City and District Council Relationships**
Method 2.1, Method 2.2

Method 3: **Regional Plans**
Method 3.1.~~16~~¹⁵

Method 5: **Research, Monitoring and Reporting**
Method 5.1.3 b

Principal Reasons and Explanation:

Any use of natural or physical resources has the potential to generate adverse effects. Resource use significantly contributes to the economic and wider wellbeing of communities. It is important to manage activities to avoid, remedy or mitigate individual or cumulative adverse effects on the quality of the natural environment. This requires the proactive management of natural resources, and can only be achieved through the integrated management of natural resources, and by giving due consideration to both managing adverse effects and maintaining and enhancing environmental values. Resource use can also have adverse effects on other uses or prevent the normal operation of existing uses.

Resource management decisions often involve balancing values or uses. Section 3.2 of this document identifies resources which are so significant that adverse effects on their values should be avoided. Some activities, such as mineral extraction or infrastructure development, may have to locate in areas with significant values. To provide for those activities, it is important to outline how their adverse effects should be managed.

PART C Implementation

Roles and Responsibilities

Sections 62(1)(h) and (i) of the RMA requires the RPS identify the regional, city and district councils' responsibilities for the control of land use in regards to natural hazards, hazardous substances and the maintenance of indigenous biological diversity. These roles and responsibilities are provided for as follows:

Regional council will:

Specify objectives, policies and methods in regional plans for the control of the use of land for:

- a. The management of natural hazards in the beds of rivers, lakes and wetlands, and the coastal marine area;
- b. The management of hazardous substances to:
 - i. Avoid, remedy, or mitigate the actual or potential adverse effects of discharges of hazardous substances to water, land and air;
 - ii. Control the use, storage, disposal or transportation of hazardous substances in the beds of rivers, lakes and wetlands and the coastal marine area;
- c. The maintenance of indigenous biological diversity in the coastal marine area, in beds of rivers and lakes, and wetlands.

City and district councils will:

Specify objectives, policies and methods in district plans for the control of the use of land for:

- a. The management of natural hazards outside of the beds of rivers, lakes and wetlands or the coastal marine area;
- b. Avoiding, remedying or mitigating the adverse effects of the storage, use, transport or disposal of hazardous substances on the environment outside of the beds of rivers, lakes and wetlands or the coastal marine area;
- c. The maintenance of indigenous biological diversity on all land outside of the coastal marine area and the beds of rivers, wetlands and lakes.

Regional, city and district councils will:

Share responsibility for specifying objectives, policies and methods for the purpose of the maintenance of indigenous biological diversity through the management of the margins of the coastal marine area, beds of rivers and lakes, and wetlands.

Methods

Method 1: Kāi Tahu Relationships

- 1.1 Regional, city and district councils will develop processes to:
- 1.1.1 ⁷⁰Establish and maintain effective resource management relationships with Kāi Tahu based on ~~the principle of partnership~~ a mutual obligation to act reasonably and in good faith;
 - 1.1.2 Take Iwi Management Plans into account;
 - 1.1.3 Consult Kāi Tahu at an early stage in resource management processes and implementation.
 - 1.1.4 Facilitate efficient and effective processes for applicants to consult Kāi Tahu on resource consent applications and private plan change requests.
- 1.2 Regional, city and district councils will collaborate with Kāi Tahu to:
- 1.2.1 ⁷¹Identify and protect places, areas or landscapes of cultural, spiritual or traditional significance to them, in accordance with Policy 2.2.2, 3.1.~~1140~~, 3.2.3 and Schedule 3;
 - 1.2.2 Identify and protect the values that contribute to their significance;
 - 1.2.3 Identify areas or values that may contribute to the importance of outstanding natural features, landscapes and seascapes, and highly valued natural features, landscapes and seascapes;
 - 1.2.4 Determine appropriate naming for places of significance in Otago.
 - 1.2.5 Share information relevant to Kāi Tahu interests.
- 1.3 Regional, city and district councils will:
- 1.3.1 Promote awareness and improve knowledge of tikaka and the principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi among staff and stakeholders.
 - 1.3.2 Include statutory acknowledgement areas in district and regional plans.
- 1.4 Regional, city and district councils may:
- 1.4.1 ⁷²Delegate and transfer any one or more of their functions, powers or duties to an iwi authority in accordance with section 33 of the RMA, and where this provides an ~~efficient and~~ effective service.

Method 2: Regional, City and District Council Relationships

- 2.1 Regional, city and district councils together will:
- 2.1.1 Share information on matters of common interest;

⁷⁰ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

⁷¹ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

⁷² Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

- 2.1.2 Work together to ensure RMA plan provisions are complementary for overlapping or abutting responsibilities.
- 2.1.3 ⁷³Apply an integrated management approach to address the relationship between land use and both fresh and coastal water.
- 2.1.4 ⁷⁴Policy 4.5.1, by applying an integrated management approach to achieving air quality standards, including through advising district plan users on regional rules and building consent requirements.
- 2.2 Regional, city and district councils may:
- 2.2.1 Establish processes for working together on common resource management matters or cross boundary issues, such as:
- a. Committees;
 - b. Working groups;
 - c. Project management;
 - d. Combined hearings;
- 2.2.2 Prepare combined regional and district documents;
- 2.2.3 ⁷⁵Delegate or transfer any one or more of their functions, powers or duties from one local authority to another in accordance with section 33 of the RMA, and where this provides an efficient and effective service.
- 2.2.4 Establish management agreements with another statutory body;
- 2.2.5 Establish protocols and processes for resolving cross boundary issues through the Local Government Act 2002 triennial agreement.
- 2.3 Regional council may, at the request of city or district councils:
- 2.3.1 Make a regional rule for the purpose of extinguishing existing use rights under Section 10 of the RMA to address natural hazard risk;
- 2.3.2 Delegate the administration of that regional rule to the city or district council.

Method 3: Regional Plans⁷⁶

- 3.1 ⁷⁷Regional Plans will set objectives, policies and methods to implement policies in the RPS as they relate to Regional Council areas of responsibility. All objectives and policies of the RPS must be considered and given effect to when preparing Regional Plans. Matters in the methods can also be taken into account when considering resource consent applications.

More specific direction is provided in the following areas.

Objectives, policies and methods to implement the following policies:

⁷³ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 15 March 2019

⁷⁴ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

⁷⁵ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 15 March 2019

⁷⁶ Note an additional method 3.1.x regarding port activities is currently under appeal.

⁷⁷ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

- 3.1.1 ⁷⁸Policy 2.2.2: by including in regional plans encompassing wāhi tupuna sites: providing for the management of culturally sensitive information and the protection of culturally sensitive areas through the use of silent files and heritage alert layers by local authorities;
- a) provisions to recognise wāhi tupuna and to protect the values that contribute to wāhi tupuna being significant;
- b) the location on plans of the wāhi tupuna to be protected and the values that contribute to their significance, using the guide in schedule 1C to assist;
- 3.1.2 Policy 2.1.2: by having regard to the Te Rūnunga o Ngāi Tahu, Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Policy Statement 2008 when developing objectives, policies and methods for the management of hazardous substances and new organisms;
- 3.1.3⁷⁹ Policies 3.1.1, ~~3.1.2~~, and to 3.1.5, and Policies 4.3.3, 4.4.1 and 4.4.3:
- a. Manage land use and vegetation removal within the beds of lakes and rivers, wetlands, riparian areas, and in the coastal environment;
- b. In appropriate circumstances, provide for activities that have a functional need to be located in the beds of rivers, lakes, wetlands, and their margins.
- ~~c.b-~~ Manage change in river morphology;
- ~~d.e-~~ Encourage restoration of water margins;
- ~~e.d-~~ Managing noise in the coastal marine area;
- ~~f.e-~~ Identify freshwater management units that include all freshwater bodies in Otago in accordance with the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2014;
- ~~g.f-~~ Maintain good water quality and improve it where it is degraded.
- ~~h.~~ Provide for resource users, people and communities that rely on fresh water within environmental limits;
- ~~i.~~ Set limits and targets to give effect to the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2014;
- 3.1.4 Policies 3.1.7 and 3.2.18: by including provisions to manage adverse effects of land use on soil and protect significant soil.
- ~~3.1.5~~ Policy 4.3.1: by providing controls adjacent to infrastructure, where necessary to ensure the functional needs of infrastructure are not compromised.
- 3.1.6⁸⁰ Policies 3.1.12~~11~~, 3.2.8 to 3.2.10: by identifying and protecting areas of outstanding and high natural character in the coastal environment.
- 3.1.7~~6~~ Policies 3.2.11 and 3.2.12: by protecting surf breaks of national importance.
- 3.1.8~~7~~ Policies 3.2.13 – 3.2.16: by protecting the values of wetlands and outstanding freshwater bodies.

⁷⁸ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

⁷⁹ Changed by Environment Court consent orders – 28 June 2018 and 15 March 2019

⁸⁰ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 15 March 2019

- 3.1.98 Policy 3.1.6 and 5.4.4: by applying emission standards within airsheds to achieve ambient air quality that supports good human health;
- 3.1.109⁸¹ Policy 5.2.2 and 5.2.3: by identifying and protecting historic heritage places, areas or landscapes located in the beds of rivers, lakes and wetlands or the coastal marine area;
- 3.1.110 Policy 4.6.5: by managing the effects of the use of contaminated land:
- a. On the quality of air, water or land;
 - b. In the coastal marine area, and the beds of rivers, lakes and other waterbodies;
- 3.1.121 Policy 4.6.8: by requiring waste disposal facilities to monitor, record and report on the quantity and composition of waste being deposited to landfill;
- 3.1.131 Policy 4.1.3: by using the criteria when undertaking natural hazard assessments;
- 3.1.141 Policy 3.1.2: by developing river management strategies, including:
- a. The management of riparian margins along rivers and lakes;
 - b. The management of bed alterations.
- 3.1.151 Policy 5.4.6: by providing for offsetting for indigenous biological diversity.
- 3.1.161⁸² Policy 5.4.103.2: by including provisions managing plantation forestry land use change in dry catchments where this will impact on water yield.
- 3.1.17⁸³ Policy 5.4.5: by including provisions managing removal and disposal of material for biosecurity purposes.
- 3.1.18⁸⁴ Policy 4.3.7: by mapping and managing for port activities within the coastal marine area.

3.2 Implementing Regional Plans:

- 3.2.1 Regional council will implement Policies 4.1.2 and 4.1.3 when undertaking natural hazard assessments;

3.3 Monitoring and reviewing Regional Plans:

- 3.3.1 Regional Council will monitor and review regional plans to give effect to their responsibilities under the RMA.

Method 4: City and District Plans⁸⁵

- 4.1 ⁸⁶City and district plans will set objectives, policies and methods to implement policies in the RPS as they relate to the City or District Council areas of responsibility. All objectives and policies of the RPS must be considered and given effect to when preparing city and

⁸¹ Inserted pursuant to Environment Court decision No. [2018] NZEnvC 183. Currently under appeal.

⁸² Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

⁸³ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

⁸⁴ Inserted pursuant to Environment Court decision No. [2018] NZEnvC 183. Currently under appeal.

⁸⁵ Note an additional method 4.1.x regarding port activities is currently under appeal.

⁸⁶ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

district plans. Matters in the methods can also be taken into account when considering resource consent applications.

More specific direction is provided in the following areas.

Objectives, policies and methods to implement the following policies:

4.1.1 ⁸⁷Policy 2.2.2 by:

- a. including provisions to recognise the wahi tupuna and to protect the values that contribute to wahi tupuna being significant;
- b. Identifying the location on plans of the wahi tapuna to be protected and the values that contribute to their significance, using the guide in Schedule 1C to assist.

4.1.21 Policies 4.1.1 to 4.1.11 by determining the appropriate level of regulatory response to natural hazard risk by:

- a. Identifying areas subject to natural hazards in plans and/or natural hazard registers and databases;
- b. Applying the plan principles to the management of natural hazards;
- c. Considering the use of adaptive management techniques;

4.1.32⁸⁸ Policies 3.2.8 to 3.2.10: by identifying and protecting areas of outstanding and high natural character in the coastal environment.

4.1.43⁸⁹ Policies 3.1.2, 3.1.9 and 3.2.2: by including provisions to:

- a. ~~M~~aintain or enhance ecosystems and biological diversity; ~~and to~~
- b. ~~p~~rotect significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna;
- c. Control the clearance or modification of indigenous vegetation and habitats of indigenous fauna;

4.1.54 Policies 3.1.7, 3.1.8 and 5.4.1: by including provisions to manage the discharge of dust, and silt and sediment associated with earthworks and land use;

4.1.65 Policies 3.1.7, 3.2.18, 4.5.1, and 5.3.1: by managing urban growth and development and the subdivision of land to protect significant soils

4.1.76 Policy 4.5.6: include subdivision and infrastructure design standards to recognise the access needs of different sections of the community, including the mobility impaired, the elderly and children;

4.1.87 Policy 3.2.12: by maintaining and where possible enhancing access to surf breaks of national importance;

4.1.98 Policy 4.6.2: including by managing the actual or potential adverse effects of the use or storage of hazardous substances, including on:

- a. Other land use activities;
- b. The health and safety of the community;
- c. Groundwater , or community water supplies;

⁸⁷ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

⁸⁸ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 15 March 2019

⁸⁹ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 15 March 2019

- d. Amenity values, and community and takata whenua resources, cultural and spiritual values;
 - e. Other activities or environmental values as a result of location in hazard prone areas;
- 4.1.109 Policy 4.6.8: by providing for and managing adverse effects associated with the establishment of waste management activities and facilities including but not limited to;
- a. Providing for the development of facilities and services for the storage, recycling, recovery, treatment and disposal of waste so that adverse effects on health and safety are avoided and adverse effects on the environment are avoided, remedied or mitigated;
 - b. Minimising risk associated with natural hazard events; and
 - c. Restricting the location of activities that may result in reverse sensitivity effects.
- 4.1.110 Policy 5.2.2 and 5.2.3 by:
- a. Including accidental discovery protocols as advice notes on consents for earthworks or other activities that may unearth archaeological features
 - b. Providing for activities which that contribute to the retention of historic heritage places, areas or landscapes, including maintenance and seismic strengthening;
 - c. Providing for the recording of information culturally sensitive to Kāi Tahu and the protection of culturally sensitive areas through the use of silent files, heritage alert layers or other methods satisfactory to them ;
 - d. Identifying and protecting significant historic heritage resources located within the authority's district;
 - e. Including heritage alert layers in plans to inform the public about areas where there is a high probability of the presence of heritage values, particularly archaeological values.
- 4.1.121 Policy 2.2.4: by making allowance for native reserves to be used in the manner intended by the Crown at the time of their establishment, including Papakāika and marae related activities;
- 4.1.131 Policy 4.5.1 and 4.5.2 by:
- a. Establishing urban growth boundaries where required to manage pressure for urban development;
 - b. Ensuring urban growth boundaries contain sufficient capacity, when measured district wide, to accommodate 20 years urban growth based on demographic growth projections;
- 4.1.141 Policy 5.1.1: by providing for the maintenance and enhancement of public access to the natural environment, including the coast, lakes, rivers and their margins, and where possible areas of cultural and historic significance.
- ~~4.1.14⁹⁰ Policies 4.3.2, 4.3.4, 4.4.1 and 4.4.4: by:~~

⁹⁰ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 6 July 2018

- a. ~~recognising transmission corridors for electricity transmission infrastructure within their district; and~~
 - b. ~~identifying transmission lines on planning maps; and~~
 - c. ~~providing controls on subdivision and land use, as necessary to ensure that the operation, maintenance, upgrading and development of electricity transmission infrastructure is not compromised as a result of the adverse effects of incompatible land uses (including structures).~~
- 4.1.15⁹¹ Policy 3.1.2, 4.3.3, 4.4.1 and 4.4.3: by providing, in appropriate circumstances, for activities that have a functional need to be located in the beds of rivers, lakes, wetlands, and their margins.
- 4.1.16⁹² Policy 4.3.1: by providing controls adjacent to infrastructure where necessary to ensure the functional needs of infrastructure are not compromised.
- 4.1.17⁹³ Policy 4.3.6: by:
- a. Identifying National Grid transmission lines and corridors on planning maps for managing sensitive and non-sensitive activities and development that can compromise the Grid;
 - b. Providing controls to avoid reverse sensitivity effects on the National Grid;
 - c. Providing controls on activities as necessary to ensure that the functional needs of the National Grid are not compromised.
- 4.1.18⁹⁴ Policies 4.3.2 and 4.3.5: by:
- a. Identifying nationally or regionally significant infrastructure on planning maps, including corridors where appropriate;
 - b. Including provisions managing land use activities within or adjacent to this regionally or nationally significant infrastructure to address potential reverse sensitivity issues;
 - c. When considering provisions to manage activities within or adjacent to electricity infrastructure, having regard to NZECP34:2001 Electrical Code of Practice for Electrical Safe Distances and the Electricity (Hazards from Trees) Regulations 2003 (prepared under the Electricity Act 1992).
- 4.1.19⁹⁵ Policy 4.4.5: by:
- a. Where necessary, providing controls for buildings, structures and other activities adjacent to electricity infrastructure, to ensure the functional needs of that infrastructure are not compromised based on NZECP34:2001 Electrical Code of Practice for Electrical Safe Distances and the Electricity (Hazards from Trees) Regulations 2003 (prepared under the Electricity Act 1992);
 - b. Identifying significant electricity distribution infrastructure on planning maps;

⁹¹ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 6 July 2018

⁹² Changed by Environment Court consent order – 6 July 2018

⁹³ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 6 July 2018

⁹⁴ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 6 July 2018

⁹⁵ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

c. Where necessary, providing controls on activities to ensure that the functional needs of the significant electricity distribution infrastructure are not compromised.

4.1.2015⁹⁶ Policy Policies 4.3.6 and 5.4.6: by providing for offsetting for indigenous biological diversity.

4.1.21⁹⁷ Policy 5.4.5: by including provisions managing removal and disposal of material for biosecurity purposes.

4.1.22⁹⁸ Policy 4.3.7: by mapping and managing for port activities at Port Chalmers and Dunedin.

4.2 ⁹⁹Implementing district plans.

City and District Councils will implement the following policies:

4.2.1 Policies 4.1.2 and 4.1.3: when undertaking natural hazard assessments;

4.2.2 Policies 3.1.~~1110~~, 3.2.1, 3.2.3, 3.2.5 and 3.2.8: to assess the values of places of potential significance to inform the decision making process;

4.2.3 Policy 5.2.3: by including accidental discovery protocols as advice notes on consents for earthworks or other activities that may unearth archaeological features;

4.2.4 ¹⁰⁰Policies 4.5.1, 4.5.2, and 5.3.1: by preparing or requiring structure plans for large scale land use changes, including subdivision;

4.2.5 ¹⁰¹Policy Policies 2.2.2 and 5.2.3: by ensuring methods for protecting culturally important sites are culturally appropriate;

4.2.6 Policy 4.6.5 by managing adverse effects from the subdivision, development or use of contaminated land, in accordance with that policy and giving effect to the NES for Assessing and Managing Contaminants in Soil to Protect Human Health

4.2.7¹⁰² Policy 4.5.1: For high growth areas, as defined under the NPS Urban Development Capacity, by developing a future development strategy.

City and District Councils may implement the following policies by:

4.2.87 Policies 4.1.1 to 4.1.6, and 4.1.13 ~~4.1.2 and 4.1.3~~:

- a. Requiring site specific investigation where there is limited information available on natural hazard or climate change risk or effects;
- b. Requesting the regional council develop a regional rule for the purpose of extinguishing existing use rights under Section 10 of the RMA to address specific natural hazard risk;

⁹⁶ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 6 July 2018

⁹⁷ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 6 July 2018

⁹⁸ Inserted pursuant to Environment Court decision No. [2018] NZEnvC 183. Currently under appeal.

⁹⁹ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 15 March 2019

¹⁰⁰ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

¹⁰¹ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

¹⁰² Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

4.2.98 Policy 5.1.1: by including conditions to maintain or enhance access to the natural environment or sites of cultural significance.

4.2.10¹⁰³ Policy 4.5.1: For medium growth areas, as defined under the NPS Urban Development Capacity, by developing a future development strategy.

4.3 Monitoring and reviewing city and district plans:

4.3.1 City and district councils will monitor and review district plans to give effect to their responsibilities under the RMA.

Method 5 Research, Monitoring and Reporting

5.1 Identification of important resources

5.1.1 Regional, city and district councils will:

- a. Work collaboratively to identify the landward extent of the coastal environment

5.1.2¹⁰⁴ Regional, city and district councils, in their areas of responsibility, will identify:

- a. Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna;
- b. Areas of outstanding natural character in the coastal environment;
- c. Outstanding natural features, landscapes and seascapes;
- d. Highly valued natural features, landscapes and seascapes;
- e. Outstanding water bodies and their significant values;
- f. The values of water margins critical to threatened or rare indigenous flora and fauna;
- g. Significant values of wetlands.

5.1.3 Regional council will:

- a. Identify airsheds based on geographical and physical boundaries, for the management of air quality;
- b. Identify dry catchments where rules are required by regional council to manage water quantity;
- c. Identify significant soils;
- d. Identify the spatial extent of the nationally important surf breaks.

5.1.4¹⁰⁵ Regional council will engage with Kāi Tahu to identify the cultural values of resources and requirements for customary uses.

- ~~a. Identify the cultural values of resources and requirements for customary uses;~~
- ~~b. Identify wāhi tūpuna and the values that contribute to their significance, including sites and landscapes of cultural significance to Kāi Tahu such as wāhi tapu and other elements identified in schedule 1C.~~

¹⁰³ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

¹⁰⁴ Inserted pursuant to Environment Court decision No. [2018] NZEnvC 183. Currently under appeal.

¹⁰⁵ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

5.2 Research

5.2.1 The regional council will:

- a. Undertake investigation for the identification of catchment values and the resources and processes those values depend on, including:
 - i. The interconnections between water bodies, including coastal water;
 - ii. The role of river and catchment morphology and natural functioning in supporting those values;
 - iii. The maintenance and enhancement of indigenous biological diversity and ecosystem health;
 - iv. Erosion risk mitigation;
 - v. Providing for the natural functioning of rivers and lakes;
- b. Identify the values of the coast, and the processes and resources those values are dependent on;
- c. Identify airsheds based on geographical and physical boundaries, for the management of air quality;
- d. Investigate and provide guidance on:
 - i. The inventory and mapping of soil resources;
 - ii. The location and extent of significant soil;
 - iii. Identification of threats to the life-supporting capacity of soil resources;
- e. Develop, maintain and monitor a register of sites of known or potentially contaminated land in Otago. Share information regarding Otago's soil resources and contaminated land with city and district councils;
- f. Provide city and district councils with regional data on the quantity and composition of waste being deposited to landfill for waste assessments;
- g. Undertake research in collaboration with local authorities and other stakeholders as appropriate, into natural hazards and climate change in Otago;
- h. Supply city and district councils with information on natural hazards for:
 - i. The preparation of district plan reviews or changes;
 - ii. Inclusion in Land and Project Information Memoranda;
- i. Collect and share information on erosion-prone land;
- j. Collect and make available information on the expected effects of climate change.
- k. Investigate land for the purpose of identifying contaminated or potentially contaminated sites.

5.2.2¹⁰⁶ Regional, city and district councils together will:

- a. Research and share information relevant to the effects of land use on water, including:

¹⁰⁶ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 15 March 2019

- i. The values supported by the catchment;
- ii. Riparian vegetation cover or any land cover ~~which that~~ contributes to supporting freshwater values, such as tussock grasslands;
- iii. Land use changes which might have significant effects on freshwater values;
- iv. Areas particularly sensitive to land use changes, such as sensitive aquifers and water-short catchments;
- v. The effects of land use on erosion;
- b. Research and share information relevant to the effects of land use on:
 - i. Coastal network infrastructure;
 - ii. Coastal values;
 - iii. Coastal hazards;
 - iv. Riparian vegetation cover or any land cover ~~which that~~ contributes to supporting coastal values, or mitigating coastal hazards;
 - v. Areas particularly sensitive to land use changes.

5.2.3 City and district councils will:

- a. Research demographic changes including the relationship between housing demand and population growth and residential capacity within existing urban areas.
- b. When considering land use, development or subdivision by consent, share information with the regional council on any identified breaches to relevant regional rules, including:
 - i. Discharges to water, or to land, in circumstances which may result in contaminant entering water;
 - ii. Discharges to air;
 - iii. Discharges to land.

5.3 State of Environment reporting

5.3.1 Regional, city and district councils will:

- a. Carry out state of the environment reporting in accordance with s35 of the RMA.

5.4 RMA plan effectiveness reporting

5.4.1 Regional council will develop appropriate indicators and measures for the RPS within 12 months, report on the efficiency and effectiveness of the RPS based on those indicators and measures, and review those indicators and measures every five years.

5.4.2 Regional, city and district councils will:

- a. Include indicators for determining plan effectiveness in all plans developed under the RMA;
- b. Report on the efficiency and effectiveness of plans based on those indicators.

5.5 Plan implementation reporting

- 5.5.1 Regional, city and district councils will:
- a. Monitor and report publicly on the achievement of regional and district plan objectives, policies and methods.

Method 6 Non-RMA Strategies and Plans

6.1 Natural hazard strategies

- 6.1.1 Regional, city and district councils may:
- a. Prepare strategies or other similar documents to assist in the management and reduction of natural hazard risk and adaptation to, and mitigation of, climate change;
 - b. Develop community relevant responses to the impacts of natural hazards and climate change, in collaboration with the relevant local authority, key stakeholders and affected community.

6.2 Air strategy

- 6.2.1 Regional, city and district councils may develop and implement, in collaboration with other key stakeholders, a strategy for:
- a. The upgrading of housing stock and their thermal envelopment;
 - b. The reduction of domestic emissions to air.

6.3 Regional Land Transport Plan

- 6.3.1 Regional council will set objectives, policies and activities to assist in the implementation of policy 4.4.6, 4.5.27, 4.3.1, 4.3.2, with a particular focus on:
- a. Enhancing road safety;
 - b. Ensuring travel needs in Otago are met;
 - c. Enabling increased freight efficiency;
 - d. Managing Otago's public transport services;
 - e. Ensuring transport networks are resilient, efficient and sustainably managed.

6.4 Regional Biological Diversity Strategy

- 6.4.1 The regional council will develop and implement, with other key stakeholders, a Biological Diversity Strategy.

6.5 Pest management strategy

- 6.5.1 The regional council will:
- a. Develop and implement a Pest Management Strategy for the control of pest species including those which:
 - i. Have adverse effects on the natural character of the coastal environment;
 - ii. Have adverse effects on significant indigenous biological diversity;
 - iii. Have significant adverse effects on indigenous biological diversity;

- iv. Have adverse effects on outstanding natural features, landscapes, seascapes and highly valued natural features, landscapes and seascapes-;
 - v.¹⁰⁷ Have propensity for spread, including wilding trees.
- b. Have regard to indigenous biological diversity when preparing any Regional Pest Management Strategy and prioritising pest management activities, including:
 - i. Any areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna;
 - ii. Any local indigenous biological diversity strategies.
- 6.6 Pan-regional pest management strategy
- 6.6.1 The regional council may develop a pest management strategy with neighbouring regions.
- 6.7 Urban stream plans
- 6.7.1 District and city councils may develop and implement urban stream restoration plans, for the restoration of the natural character and natural functioning of urban streams.
- 6.8 Waste Management and Minimisation Plans
- 6.8.1 City and District Councils will develop Waste Management and Minimisation Plans in accordance with the Waste Minimisation Act 2008 and any regional strategy.
- 6.9 Waste and hazardous substances:
- 6.9.1 Regional, city and district councils may develop strategies or similar documents to:
- a. Provide an integrated approach to waste management under the NZ Waste Strategy 2010, the RMA, the Waste Minimisation Act 2008; the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996, the Climate Change Response Act 2002 and the Local Government Act 2002;
 - b. Provide an integrated approach to hazardous substances management under the RMA, the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996, the Climate Change Response Act 2002 and the Local Government Act 2002.

Method 7 Education and Information

- 7.1 Providing public information
 - 7.1.1 Regional, district and city councils may provide information and guidance on:

¹⁰⁷ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 15 March 2019

- a. The maintenance, restoration and enhancement of indigenous ecosystems and habitats;
 - b. Natural hazard risk responses;
 - c. Ways to adapt to and mitigate the effects of climate change;
 - d. The benefits of natural features and systems in mitigating natural hazards;
 - e. The control of pest species.
- 7.1.2 Regional council will provide information and guidance on:
- a. Natural hazards;
 - b. Rainfall and river flow;
 - c. Climate change;
 - d. Measures to mitigate erosion risks resulting from land uses;
 - e. Riparian margin management, especially on flooding and erosion risks;
 - f. Measures to maintain or enhance soil quality;
 - g. Discharge management, including on reducing domestic discharges to air;
 - h. The management of diffuse discharges to water;
 - i. The ecosystem services derived from indigenous biological diversity;
 - j. On the benefits of riparian margin management, especially on flooding and erosion risks.
- 7.1.3 City and district councils will:
- a. Provide available natural hazard information through the Land (LIM) and Property Information Memorandum (PIM) process;
 - b. Provide available information on known or potentially contaminated sites through the LIM and PIM process;
- 7.1.4 City and district councils may provide information and guidance on:
- a. Crime prevention through environmental design and urban design principles to inform local development proposals;
 - b. Urban design techniques to respond to the different access requirements or needs of the community;
 - c. Design techniques to enable adaptive reuse of buildings;
 - d. Water conservation and the efficient domestic use of water;
 - e. Measures for increased energy efficiency and energy conservation;
 - f. Opportunities for the development of small-scale renewable electricity generation.
 - g. The projected demographic changes to local communities.
- 7.1.5 Regional, city and district councils will provide information and guidance on waste minimisation and management.
- 7.1.6 Regional Council may facilitate and support a regional response to hazardous substances collection, disposal and recycling services.

Method 8: Funding

8.1 Providing financial support

8.1.1 Regional, city and district councils may:

- a. Establish and administer funds to provide public access or services to sites of significance on privately owned land;

- b. Fund community groups and projects with aims that complement RPS objectives and policies.

Method 9: Advocacy and Facilitation

9.1 Promotion

- 9.1.1 Regional, city and district councils will work with stakeholders, including central government agencies and other interested parties, on resource management matters;
- 9.1.2 Regional, city and district councils may advocate for:
 - a. Initiatives and proposals which support or complement the goals of the RMA, RPS and supporting documents;
 - b. Subdivision and building design that increases passive solar gain and uses higher levels of insulation in buildings to improve energy efficiency;
 - c. The implementation of the waste hierarchy throughout the region;
 - d. National guidance on managing natural hazards, and mitigating and adapting to climate change;
 - e. Legislative change to improve resilience and reduce the risk of natural hazards and climate change to individuals and communities;
 - f. The development of infrastructure and services to provide for hazardous substance collection, disposal and recycling services across the region;
 - g. The development, upgrade or maintenance of infrastructure, when it will enhance Otago's communities' well-being or health and safety;
- 9.1.3 Enhance individual and community resilience by encouraging activities and actions that:
 - a. Promote interactions and partnerships within and between communities, businesses and organisations;
 - b. Support self-sufficiency;
 - c. Improve disaster readiness, response and recovery;
 - d. Enable opportunities for improvements to be made following a disaster event;
 - e. Contribute to the retention of historic heritage places, areas or landscapes, including maintenance and seismic strengthening;
 - f. Encourage an approach to resource management that assists in reducing individual and community natural hazard risk and in reducing the effects of climate change.
- 9.1.4 Regional, city and district councils may promote:
 - a. Subdivision and urban development that responds to and anticipates the changing demographic needs of the local community;
 - b. The development and adoption of best practice guidelines for the use and management of hazardous substances, and a reduction in hazardous substance use.
- 9.1.5 City and district councils will:

- a. Promote the integration of new development with existing areas through the use of elements that reflect local character;
- b. Encourage the adaptive reuse of buildings;
- c. Ensure consideration of orientation and design for solar gain in subdivision and building design;
- d. Advocate for the establishment of solid waste management and disposal facilities.

9.2 Facilitation

9.2.1¹⁰⁸ Regional, city and district councils ~~will~~ may facilitate the restoration of natural wetlands or construction of artificial wetlands, particularly when it contributes to the:

- a. Management of diffuse discharges to water;
- b. Protection or restoration of indigenous species;
- c. Mitigation of natural hazards;
- d. Restoration of the natural character of wetlands.

9.2.2¹⁰⁹ Regional, city and district councils ~~will~~ may facilitate the restoration or enhancement of riparian margins, particularly when they:

- a. Improve the health and resilience of ecosystems supporting indigenous biological diversity;
- b. Restore or rehabilitate indigenous biological diversity and natural character;
- c. Encourage the natural regeneration of habitats, including habitats for indigenous species.
- d. Contribute to a safe network of active transport infrastructure;
- e. Improve access to rivers, lakes, wetlands and their margins;
- f. Mitigate risks of erosion.

9.2.3¹¹⁰ Regional, city and district councils ~~will~~ may facilitate initiatives that support:

- a. Community-based development of strategies and plans to maximise community, ecosystem and natural resource resilience at a scale sufficient for those natural and physical resources;
- ba. The conservation of indigenous vegetation;
- cb. Conservation of biological diversity;
- de. Maintenance or enhancement of coastal values, including restoration or rehabilitation of the natural character;
- ed. The protection or restoration of the significant values of wetlands;
- fe. Co-ordination of the services provided by operators of lifeline utilities, essential and emergency services across and beyond Otago;
- gf. Energy conservation and efficiency, at a community or individual scale;

¹⁰⁸ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 15 March 2019

¹⁰⁹ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 15 March 2019

¹¹⁰ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 15 March 2019

- hg. Small scale renewable electricity generation;
- 9.2.4¹¹¹ Regional, city and district councils ~~will~~ may facilitate coordination between lifeline utilities for emergency management, including by:
- a. Recognising the interconnections between lifeline utilities;
 - b. Encouraging any development or upgrade of infrastructure which would resolve potential weaknesses in emergency management.
- 9.2.5 Regional council will facilitate the restoration, rehabilitation or creation of freshwater and coastal habitats, particularly when it:
- a. Encourages the natural regeneration of indigenous species;
 - b. Buffers or links ecosystems, habitats and areas of significance that contribute to ecological corridors;
 - c. Maintains or enhances the provision of indigenous ecosystem services.
- 9.2.6 Regional council will facilitate the control of pest species, including wilding pines, particularly when it contributes to the protection or restoration of:
- a. Outstanding or highly valued landscapes;
 - b. Indigenous species.
- 9.2.7 Regional council will facilitate the establishment of:
- a. Water management groups that co-ordinate the exercise of water-related consents;
 - b. Water allocation committees for the management of water allocation in case of drought.
- 9.2.8 Regional, city and district councils may facilitate:
- a. The planning for community infrastructure, when it would increase the efficiency of water use;
 - b. Negotiations with landowners for public or Kāi Tahu access to sites of significance that do not have suitable access.

¹¹¹ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 15 March 2019

Monitoring Procedures and Anticipated Environmental Results

Monitoring Procedures

This section describes the procedures that will be used to monitor the efficiency and effectiveness of PRPS provisions, as required by the section 62(1)(j) of the RMA.

Within 12 months of the PRPS becoming operative, the Regional Council will develop specific indicators and measures to monitor the RPS against its anticipated environmental results.

The Regional Council will report on the efficiency and effectiveness of the PRPS based on those indicators and measures, and review those indicators and measures every five years. This work will be in accordance with Section 35 of the RMA, and integrated with the other significant monitoring work that the ORC carries out, such as state of the environment reporting and compliance with resource consents.

These procedures are set out in Method 5 Research, Monitoring and Reporting.

The following section identifies environmental results anticipated from implementing the policies and methods of the PRPS.

Anticipated Environmental Results

1. Resource management in Otago is integrated

Objective 1.1¹¹²

Otago's resources are used sustainably to promote economic, social, and cultural wellbeing for its people and communities

Objective 1.2¹¹⁴

Recognise and provide for the integrated management of natural and physical resources to support the wellbeing of people and communities in Otago

AER 1.1¹¹³

The economic, social, and cultural wellbeing of Otago's people and communities is enabled through sustainable use, development and protection of natural and physical resources

AER 1.2¹¹⁵

Natural and physical resources are managed in an integrated way

2. Kāi Tahu values and interests are recognised and kaitiakitaka is expressed.

¹¹² Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

¹¹³ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

¹¹⁴ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

¹¹⁵ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

Objective 2.1

The principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi are taken into account in resource management processes and decisions

Objective 2.2

Kāi Tahu values, interests and customary resources are recognised and provided for

AER 2.1

Te Tiriti o Waitangi principles are adhered to

AER 2.2

Kāi Tahu values and culture are respected and able to be expressed

3. Otago has high quality natural resources and ecosystems

Objective 3.1

The values of Otago's natural resources are recognised, maintained and enhanced

AER 3.1

Water bodies support healthy ecosystems, are safe for swimming, and maintain their natural form and character

AER 3.2

The quality of coastal environment is maintained or enhanced

AER 3.3

The quality of soils is maintained or enhanced

AER 3.4

The health and diversity of ecosystems is maintained or enhanced

AER 3.5

Ambient air quality is maintained or enhanced

Objective 3.2

Otago's significant and highly-valued natural resources are identified, and protected or enhanced

AER 3.6

The extent of, and values of, significant and highly valued natural resources and are protected or enhanced

4. Communities in Otago are resilient, safe and healthy

Objective 4.1

Risk that natural hazards pose to Otago's communities are minimised

AER 4.1

The location and design of new developments and natural resource uses reduce community exposure to the adverse effects of multiple, large, and diverse shock events and processes.

Objective 4.2

Otago's communities are prepared for and able to adapt to the effects of climate change

AER 4.2

The impact on life, property, lifeline utilities, and essential services from climate change is reduced

Objective 4.3

Infrastructure is managed and developed in a sustainable way

Objective 4.4

Energy supplies to Otago's communities are secure and sustainable

Objective 4.5

Urban growth and development is well designed, reflects local character and integrates effectively with adjoining urban and rural environments

Objective 4.6

Hazardous substances, contaminated land and waste materials do not harm human health or the quality of the environment in Otago

AER 4.3

Infrastructure is safe, and efficient and the adverse effects of infrastructure on outstanding and highly-valued natural and physical resource values are avoided, remedied or mitigated.

AER 4.4

The use of local renewable energy sources increases and reliance on fossil fuels decreases

AER 4.5

Urban areas are compact, maximise the use of existing services and infrastructure and are able to adapt to evolving standards and to the changing requirements of its inhabitants and surrounding natural and physical environment

AER 4.6

Hazardous substances, contaminants and waste materials are not harmful to the environment, people and communities.

AER 4.7

The waste hierarchy is implemented, resulting in less waste requiring disposal and a reduction of the environmental effects generated from waste.

5. People are able to use and enjoy Otago's natural and built environment

Objective 5.1

Public access to areas of value to the community is maintained or enhanced

Objective 5.2

Historic heritage resources are recognised and contribute to the region's character and sense of identity

Objective 5.3

Sufficient land is managed and protected for economic production

Objective 5.4

Adverse effects of using and enjoying Otago's natural and physical resources are minimised

AER 5.1

The coast, lakes and rivers can be accessed by the public

AER 5.2

Significant historic heritage is identified, protected, and integrated into current and future uses

AER 5.3

The effects of land management do not preclude future economic uses of land

AER 5.4

The number and severity of environmental issues is reduced

PART D Schedules and Appendices

Schedule 1 Kāi Tahu values & interests

The following Kāi Tahu values and interests must be considered in planning and consenting decisions. Some interests are specific to particular papatipu rūnaka, and others are more generally applicable.

Schedule 1A Kāi Tahu values

This schedule is a guide to assist in identifying Kāi Tahu values. It is not a complete list of all values Kāi Tahu have.

Kāi Tahu do not see their existence as separate from Te Ao Tūroa, the natural world, but as an integral part of it. Through whakapapa, genealogy, all people and life forms descend from a common source. Whakapapa binds Kāi Tahu to the mountains, forests and waters and the life supported by them, and this is reflected in traditional attitudes towards the natural world and resource management.

Whakawhanaukataka, the process of maintaining relationships, embraces whakapapa, through the relationship between people, and between people and the environment. The nature of these relationships defines people's rights and responsibilities in relation to the use and management of resources in.

All things have the qualities of wairua, spiritual dimension, and mauri, life force or life supporting capacity, and have a genealogical relationship with each other.

Mauri provides the common centre between the natural resources, taoka, the people or guardians who care for the taoka, the kaitiaki, and the management framework, tikaka, of how taoka are to be managed by the kaitiaki. It is through kawa, protocol, that the relationship between taoka, tikaka and kaitiakitaka is realised.

Each papatipu rūnaka has its own takiwā determined by natural boundaries such as headlands, mountain ranges and rivers, see Schedule 1B . This political and operational authority over an area is undertaken by takata whenua and encompasses kaitiakitaka and rakatirataka. An integral element of the concepts of kaitiakitaka and rakatirataka is the recognition that Kāi Tahu have their own traditional means of managing and maintaining resources and the environment. This system of rights and responsibilities is inherited from previous generations and has evolved over time.

The resources in any given area are a point of prestige for the people who reside there and are a statement of identity. Traditionally, the abundance or lack of resources directly determines the welfare of every tribal group, and so affects their mana.

Ki Uta Ki Tai

Ki uta ki tai is a Kāi Tahu term that has become synonymous with the way Kāi Tahu think about natural resource management. Ki uta ki tai, from the mountains to the sea, is the concept used to describe holistic natural resource management.

Ki uta ki tai is the Kāi Tahu way of understanding the natural environment, including how it functions, how people relate to it and how it can be looked after appropriately.

Rakatirataka

Rakatirataka is about having the mana or authority to give effect to Kāi Tahu culture and traditions in the management of the natural world. Recognition of the relationship of Kāi Tahu and their culture and traditions with their ancestral lands, water, sites, wāhi tapu, and other taoka are embedded in the RMA and the Treaty.

Kaitiakitaka

Kaitiakitaka means the exercise of guardianship by Kāi Tahu of an area in accordance with tikaka Māori in relation to natural and physical resources and includes the ethic of stewardship. This statutory definition of kaitiakitaka is, however, a starting point only for Kāi Tahu, as kaitiakitaka is a much wider cultural concept than guardianship. Kaitiakitaka entails the active protection and responsibility for natural and physical resources by Kāi Tahu.

Kaitiakitaka is fundamental to the relationship between Kāi Tahu and the environment. The objectives of kaitiakitaka are to protect the life supporting capacity of the environment and to pass the environment on to future generations in an enhanced state. For Kāi Tahu, kaitiakitaka is not passive custodianship, nor is it simply the exercise of traditional property rights, but it entails an active exercise of responsibility in a manner beneficial to the resource.

Tikaka

Tikaka Māori encompasses the beliefs, values, practices and procedures that guide appropriate codes of conduct, or ways of behaving. In the context of natural resource management, observing tikaka is part of the ethic and exercise of kaitiakitaka. It is underpinned by a body of Mātauraka Māori, Māori knowledge, and is based on a general understanding that people belong to the land and have a responsibility to care for and manage the land. It incorporates forms of social control to manage the relationship of people and the environment, including concepts such as tapu, noa and rāhui.

Tikaka is based on traditional practices, but is dynamic and continues to evolve in response to different situations.

Taoka

All natural resources, air, land, water, and indigenous biological diversity, are taoka. Taoka are treasured resources that are highly valued by Kāi Tahu, derived from the atua, gods, and left by the tūpuna, ancestors, to provide and sustain life. In the management of natural resources, it is important that the habitats and wider needs of taoka species are sustainably managed and enhanced.

Mahika Kai

Mahika kai is one of the cornerstones of Kāi Tahu cultural identity. Mahika kai is a term that literally means "food workings" and refers to the customary gathering of food and natural materials and the

places where those resources are gathered or produced. The term also embodies the traditions, customs and collection methods, and the gathering of natural resources for cultural use, including raraka, weaving, and rokoā, traditional medicines. Maintaining mahika kai sites, gathering resources, and continuing to practice the tikaka that governs each resource, is an important means of passing on cultural values and mātauraka Māori, traditional knowledge, to the next generation.

Schedule 1B Interests specific to particular papatipu rūnaka

This schedule is a guide to assist in identifying Kāi Tahu interests. It is not a complete list of all interests Kāi Tahu have.

Te Rūnanga o Moeraki

The takiwā of Te Rūnanga o Moeraki is centred on Moeraki and extends from the Waitaki River to the Waihemo, Shag, River and inland to the Main Divide. The coastal interests of Te Rūnanga o Moeraki are concentrated in the Moeraki Peninsula area and surrounds, including Te Raka-a-Hine-atea Pā, Koekohe, Hampden Beach, and Te Kai Hinaki, the Boulders Beach, with its boulders.



Te Rūnanga o Moeraki Marae, Moeraki

Kāti Huirapa Rūnaka ki Puketeraki

The takiwā of Kāti Huirapa Rūnaka ki Puketeraki centres on Karitāne and extends from the Waihemo, Shag, River to Purehurehu, Heyward Point, and includes an interest in Ōtepoti and the greater harbour of Ōtākou. The takiwā extends inland to the Main Divide sharing an interest in the lakes and mountains to Wakatipu Waitai with rūnaka to the south. The kaimoana resources of the coast from Karitāne to Okahau/Blueskin Bay and Pūrākaunui, and the kai awa of the Waikouaiti River and estuary are treasured and well-utilised mahika kai for Kāti Huirapa Rūnaka ki Puketeraki.



Puketeraki Marae

Te Rūnanga o Ōtākou

The takiwā of Te Rūnanga o Ōtākou centres on Muaūpoko, Otago Peninsula, and extends from Purehurehu, Heyward Point, to Te Mata-Au, Clutha River, and inland, sharing an interest in the lakes and mountains to the western coast with rūnaka to the north and south. The Otago Harbour has a pivotal role in the well-being of Ōtākou people. The harbour is a source of identity, a bountiful provider of kaimoana, and it is the pathway to the fishing grounds beyond. Traditionally it was the mode for other hapū to visit, and in today's world it is the lifeline to the international trade that benefits the region. The ebb and flow of the harbour tides is a valued certainty in a world of change, a taoka to be treasured and protected for the benefit of current and future generations.



Ōtākou Marae, Otago Peninsula

Hokonui Rūnanga

The takiwā of Hokonui Rūnaka centres on the Hokonui region and includes a shared interest in the lakes and mountains between Whakatipu-Waitai and Tawhitarere with other Murihiku Rūnanga and those located from Waihemo southwards. Although Hokonui Rūnanga is based in Gore, their interests in the Otago area, especially South Otago, are significant. They hold this in common with other Otago Rūnaka through whakapapa, history and tradition.



Hokonui Marae

Whānau Rōpū

Moturata Taieri Whānau and Waikoau Ngāi Tahu Rūnaka, South Otago, are whānau rōpū that have an interest in the coastal area from the Catlins south to Bruces Rocks.

Whānau rōpū are located in areas that hold a strong tradition of Kāi Tahu presence close to the Papatipu lands reserved from the 1840s land sales. The whānau rōpū are associated with the Papatipu Rūnaka.

Schedule 1C Wāhi tūpuna

This schedule is a guide to assist in identifying wāhi tūpuna. It is not a complete list of all wāhi tūpuna in Otago.

Kāi Tahu use the term 'wāhi tūpuna' to describe landscapes that embody the customary and contemporary relationship of Kāi Tahu and their culture and traditions with Otago. It is important to understand this concept in the context of the distinctive seasonal lifestyle that Kāi Tahu evolved in the south. The sites and resources used by Kāi Tahu are spread throughout Otago. These places did not function in isolation from one another but were part of a wider cultural setting and pattern of seasonal resource use. The different elements of these sites of significance include:

Site of Significance	Explanation
Ara Tawhito	Ancient trails. A network of trails crossed the region linking the permanent villages with seasonal inland campsites and along the coast, providing access to a range of mahika kai resources and inland stone resources, including pounamu and silcrete.
Kāika	Permanent settlements or occupation sites. These occurred throughout Otago, particularly in coastal areas.
Nohoaka	These were a network of seasonal settlements. Kāi Tahu were based largely on the coast in permanent settlements, and ranged inland on a seasonal basis. Iwi history shows, through place names and whakapapa, continuous occupation of a network of seasonal settlements, which were distributed along the main river systems from the source lakes to the sea.
Wāhi Mahika kai	The places where the customary gathering of food or natural materials occurs. Mahika kai is one of the cornerstones of Kāi Tahu culture.
Mauka	Important mountains. Mountains are of great cultural importance to Kāi Tahu. Many are places of spiritual presence, and prominent peaks in the district are linked to Kāi Tahu creation stories, identity and mana.
Marae	The marae atea and the buildings around it, including the wharenuī, wharekai, church and urupā. The sheltering havens of Kāi Tahu cultural expression, a place to gather, kōrero and to welcome visitors. Marae are expressions of Kāi Tahu past and present.
Repo raupo	Wetlands or swamps. These provide valued habitat for taoka species and mahika kai resources.
Tauraka waka	Canoe mooring sites. These were important for transport and gathering kai.

Tūāhu	Places of importance to Māori identity. These are generally sacred ground and marked by an object, or a place used for purposes of divination.
Taumanu	Fishing sites. These are traditional fishing easements which have been gazetted by the South Island Māori Land Court.
Umu, Umu-tī	Earth ovens. Used for cooking tī-kōuka (cabbage tree), are found in a diversity of areas, including old stream banks and ancient river terraces, on low spurs or ridges, and in association with other features, such as kāika nohoaka.
Urupā	Human burial sites. These include historic burial sites associated with kāika, and contemporary sites, such as the urupā at Ōtākou and Puketeraki marae.
Wāhi kōhatu	Rock outcrops. Rocky outcrops provided excellent shelters and were intensively occupied by Māori from the moa-hunter period into early European settlement during seasonal hikoī. Tuhi tuhi neherā (rock art) may be present due to the occupation of such places by the tūpuna.
Wāhi pakaka	Battle sites. Historic battle sites occur throughout Otago, such as that at Ohinepouwera (Waikouaiti sandspit) where Taoka's warriors camped for six months while they laid siege on Te Wera on the Huriawa Peninsula.
Wāhi paripari	Cliff areas.
Wāhi taoka	Resources, places and sites treasured by manawhenua. These valued places reflect the long history and association of Kāi Tahu with Otago.
Wāhi tapu	Places sacred to Kāi Tahu. These occur throughout Otago and include urupā (human burial sites).
Wāhi tohu	Features used as location markers within the landscape. Prominent landforms formed part of the network of trails along the coast and inland. These acted as fixed point locators in the landscape for travellers and are imbued with history.
Wai Māori	Freshwater areas important to Māori, including wai puna (springs), roto (lakes) and awa (rivers).

Schedule 1D Māori land reserves

A Native Reserve is any property or site that is a:

- Native Reserve excluded from the Ōtākou Land Purchases (1844)
- Native Reserve excluded from the Kemps Land Purchases (1848)
- Reserve granted by the Native Land Court (1868)
- Half Caste Reserve (1881)
- Landless Native Reserve (1896)
- Other reserve (1890 and 1900)

A number of Māori reserves exist that were excluded from the land sales of the 1840s. These reserves are steeped in history and association and are places of belonging. Remaining reserves are located at Moeraki, Waikouaiti, Ōtākou, Onumia, Taieri Mouth, and Te Karoro, Kaka Point. Other categories of Māori land exist at Koputai, Port Chalmers, and Ōtepoti, Dunedin, where tauraka waka, landing sites, were recognised. In addition, land was held at Manuhaea, Lake Hawea, Aramoana, Clarendon, Taieri Mouth, Tautuku-Waikawa and Glenomaru amongst others. Landing reserves were allocated at Matainaka, Waikouaiti, and the former Lake Tatawai on the Taieri Plains.

The following table lists the reserves in Otago. Many of the sections within these Native Reserves now have the status of general land. While some of this general land is still in Māori ownership, many of the general titled sections have been sold to non-Māori or taken under various pieces of legislation such as the Public Works Act. Although these sections are no longer in whānau ownership, descendants of the original owners retain an ancestral relationship with these lands.

Native Reserves located within the Otago region

Location	Comments	Reserve Type
Tautuku	Southern block of Tautuku sections Northern sections are Reserved lands	South Island Landless Natives Act Native Reserve
Glenomaru	Located south of Kaka Point	South Island Landless Natives Act
Maranuku	Granted in 1844 as part of the Otakou Purchase. Originally called Te Karoro, split into two reserves	Native Reserve
Clarendon	Located inland from Taieri Mouth	Clarendon Half Caste Reserve
Taieri	Granted in 1844 as part of the Otakou Purchase Deed. Split into three reserves; A, B and C	Native Reserve

Lake Tatawai	Located on the Taieri Plain, south of the Dunedin City Airport	Native Reserve
Lake Tatawai	Lake that is now drained	Landing Reserve
Otago Heads Native Reserve	Granted in 1844 as part of the Otakou Purchase Deed. Split into four reserves	Native Reserve
Port Chalmers	Granted in 1848 as part of the Otakou Purchase Deed. A further grant adjacent to the Reserve was made in approximately 1888	Native Reserve
Aramoana	This reserve resulted from the Purakaunui Half Caste grant	Half Caste Reserve
Purakaunui	Granted in 1848 as part of Kemp's Purchase Deed. Further allocations were made in 1868 at Wharauwerawera	Native Reserve
Brinns Point	Granted in the latter part of the nineteenth century	Half Caste Reserve
Karitane (Waikouaiti Native Reserve)	Granted in 1848 as part of Kemp's Purchase Deed	Native Reserve
Matainaka and Hawksbury Fishing Easement	Two fishing easements fall under this reserve, Matainaka, located at Hawksbury Lagoon at Waikouaiti and the Forks Reserve located inland from Karitane. The legal description for the latter reserve is Section 1N Town of Hawksbury	Fishing Easement
Hawksbury	Located north of Waikouaiti, in the vicinity of Goodwood	Hawksbury Half Caste Reserve
Moeraki	Granted in 1848 as part of Kemp's Purchase Deed. Further awards were made in 1868	Native Reserve
Kuri Bush	10 acre reserve of timber	Native Reserve
Kakanui	Granted in 1848 as part of Kemp's Purchase Deed. By 1853, this Reserve was noted as being abandoned and the 75 acre allocation was added to the southern edge of the Moeraki Native Reserve.	Native Reserve

Korotuaheka	Located south of the Waitaki River mouth. Now Reserved as an urupa. It appears this originated as an occupational reserve and Fishing Easement	Partitioned in 1895. Possibly awarded as part of the 1868 awards.
Punaomaru	376 acre reserve located approximately 14 miles from the Waitaki River mouth on the south bank of the river	Native Reserve
Lake Hawea	Reserve of 100 acres situated in the western extremity of the middle arm of Lake Hawea near a Lagoon. Part of the Reserve was taken for power development in 1962 and the balance of the land was alienated by the Māori Trustee in 1970	Fishing Easement



Native reserves in Otago

Applicable legislation:

In ~~2019~~2015, all Māori land is governed by Te Ture Whenua Māori Act 1993. Some lands, such as those at Port Chalmers also fall under the Māori Reserve Land Act 1955.

Explanatory notes:

Since approximately the mid 1890's, ancillary claim blocks have been awarded for various reasons. Ancillary claim blocks are Māori freehold land granted under the South Island Landless Natives Act 1906 to those who were left landless when the original reserves were granted. There are a number located throughout Otago. The ownership lists for these blocks are incomplete and information for these blocks is not readily available. As ancillary claim blocks do not form part of the original reservations, they are not included in the RPS. Māori Reservations that have been created in recent times and fall outside the boundaries of the Native Reserves are not included, such as land at Arai te Uru Marae in Shetland Street, Wakari, Dunedin and Whare Koa, located in Oamaru.

Schedule 2 Statutory acknowledgement areas

Statutory acknowledgements are recorded in the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for several water bodies, mountains and coastal features in the Otago Region.

These acknowledgements comprise a statement made by Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu of the particular cultural, spiritual, historic and traditional association of Kāi Tahu with these areas.

Part 12 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 provides details of statutory acknowledgements, and the responsibilities relating to them. Section 208 of the NTSCA requires that local authorities have regard to these statutory acknowledgements in resource consent processing under Sections 95 of the RMA in deciding whether Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu is a person who may be adversely affected by the granting of a resource consent for activities within, adjacent to or impacting directly on the statutory area.

The statutory acknowledgements provide a prototype for the approach to mapping wāhi tūpuna.

Statutory Acknowledgement areas	Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 Schedule Number
Ka Moana Haehae (Lake Roxburgh)	22
Kakaunui River	23
Kuramea (Lake Catlins)	28
Lake Hawea	30
Lake Wanaka	36
Mata-Au (Clutha River)	40
Matakaea (Shag Point)	41
Pikirakatahi (Mount Earnslaw)	51
Pomahaka River	52
Te Tauraka Poti (Merton Tidal Arm)	60
Te Wairere (Lake Dunstan)	61
Tititea (Mount Aspiring)	62
Tokatā (The Nuggets)	64
Waihola/Waipori Wetland	70
Whakatipu Wai Māori (Lake Wakatipu)	75
Te Tai O Arai Te Uru (Otago Coastal Marine Area)	103

Schedule 3¹¹⁶ Criteria for the identification of outstanding natural features, landscapes and seascapes, and highly valued natural features, landscapes and seascapes

The identification of natural features, landscapes and seascapes will ~~be based on, but not limited to,~~ have regard to the following criteria:

1. Biophysical attributes
 - a. Natural science factors, including geological, topographical, ecological and dynamic components
 - b. The presence of water including in seas, lakes, rivers and streams
 - c. Vegetation (native and exotic)
2. Sensory attributes
 - a. Legibility or expressiveness—how obviously the feature or landscape demonstrates its formative processes
 - b. ~~Amenity~~ Aesthetic values including memorability and naturalness
 - c. Transient values including presence of wildlife or other values at certain times of the day or year
 - d. Wild or scenic values
3. Associative attributes
 - a. Whether the values are shared and recognised
 - b. Cultural and spiritual values for Kāi Tahu, identified by working, as far as practicable, in accordance with tikanga Māori; including their expression as cultural landscapes and features
 - c. Historical and heritage associations

¹¹⁶ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 15 March 2019

Schedule 4¹¹⁷ Criteria for the identification of areas of significant indigenous vegetation and habitat of indigenous fauna

The identification of areas of significant indigenous vegetation and habitat of indigenous fauna are assessed against all of the following criteria. Areas will be considered significant where they meet one or more of the following criteria.

1. Representativeness An area that is an example of an indigenous vegetation type or habitat that is typical or characteristic of the natural diversity of the relevant ecological district or coastal marine biogeographic region. This may include degraded examples of their type or represent all that remains of indigenous vegetation and habitats of indigenous fauna in some areas.
2. Rarity An area that supports:
 - a. An indigenous species that is threatened, at risk, or uncommon, nationally or within an ecological district or coastal marine biogeographic region;
 - b. Indigenous vegetation or habitat of indigenous fauna that has been reduced to less than 20% of its former extent nationally, regionally or within a relevant land environment, ecological district, coastal marine biogeographic region or freshwater environment including wetlands;
 - c. Indigenous vegetation and habitats within originally rare ecosystems.
3. Diversity An area that supports a high diversity of indigenous ecosystem types, indigenous taxa or has changes in species composition reflecting the existence of diverse natural features or gradients. ~~vegetation and habitats of indigenous fauna or consists of a diverse range or sequence of interrelated vegetation and habitat types. The degree of diversity should be referenced to specific communities i.e. levels of diversity varying significantly between communities and habitat types.~~
4. Distinctiveness An area that supports or provides habitat for:
 - a. Indigenous species at their distributional limit within Otago or nationally;
 - b. Indigenous species that are endemic to the Otago region;
 - c. Indigenous vegetation or an association of indigenous species that is distinctive, of restricted occurrence, or has developed as a result of an unusual environmental factor or combinations of factors.
5. Ecological Context The relationship of the area with its surroundings, including:

¹¹⁷ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 15 March 2019

- a. An area that has important connectivity value allowing dispersal of indigenous vegetation and fauna between different areas;
- b. An important buffering function that helps to protect the values of an adjacent area or feature;
- c. An area that is important for indigenous fauna during some part of their life cycle, either regularly or on an irregular basis, e.g. for feeding, nesting, breeding, or refuges from predation.

6. Coastal Environment An area identified in accordance with Policy 11 of the NZCPS.

This schedule applies to indigenous vegetation and habitat of indigenous fauna in the terrestrial, coastal and marine environments.

The Regional Council holds additional information to inform decision making on these criteria including the rationale for criteria and examples of areas representing these criteria.

Schedule 5¹¹⁸ — Urban form and design

Good quality urban design offers a safe and enjoyable setting for people to work, live and play in, and fosters a positive relationship between the community and their natural environment. It caters to the needs of all, offers many lifestyle choices, and supports a healthy community. It also contributes to the community's identity and cohesion, and reflects the community values.

1. A safe and enjoyable environment
 - a. Provides lively and pleasant places for people to enjoy
 - b. Reflects the importance of community spaces
 - c. Protects public open space, and improves the quality, quantity and distribution of local open space over the long term
 - d. Creates transport networks that are safer
 - e. Creates safe, attractive and secure pathways and links between town centres and landmarks and neighbourhoods
 - f. Provides a comfortable and safe urban environment
 - g. Considers the impact of design on people's health
 - h. Reduce risk from natural and man-made hazards, including avoiding areas of significant risk

2. A positive relationship between the community and its natural environment
 - a. Has regard to the suitability of development in regard to the viability of required resources such as water
 - b. Provides a positive contribution to the environmental health of urban streams, and the coastal environment
 - c. Manages the use of resources carefully, through environmentally responsive and sustainable design solutions
 - d. Minimises the effects of increased impervious surfaces and manages contamination
 - e. Promotes the maintenance, enhancement or protection of natural resources
 - f. Recognises features or values which warrant protection or preservation
 - g. Utilises green technologies in the design and construction of buildings and infrastructure
 - h. Facilitates green networks that link public and private open space
 - i. Promotes innovation and resource use efficiency
 - j. Promotes energy efficiency in transport and urban form, including site layout and building design
 - k. Incorporates renewable energy sources and passive solar gain
 - l. Reflects natural features such as rivers, lakes, wetlands and topography
 - m. Provides for ecological corridors
 - n. Protects areas of indigenous biological diversity and habitat for indigenous fauna

¹¹⁸ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

- 3. Supports a healthy community, and offers many choices and opportunities
 - o. Utilises low impact design techniques
 - a. Ensures urban environments provide opportunities for all.
 - b. Supports design which is flexible and adaptable and which will remain useful over the long term
 - c. Facilitates access to services and efficient movement of goods and people
 - d. Promotes transport networks that are safe, legible, attractive and well connected
 - e. Provides for public transport, roading, cycling and walking networks that are integrated with each other and the land uses they serve
 - f. Places a high priority on walking, cycling and public transport
 - g. Provides environments that encourage people to become more physically active
 - h. Maximises pedestrian connectivity
 - i. Results in buildings that are adapted to local climatic conditions
 - j. Acknowledges the need for a diverse range of housing and creates a range of housing opportunities and choices
 - k. Ensures public spaces are accessible by everybody, including people with disabilities
 - l. Creates areas where people can live, work and play
 - m. Enables a diverse range of commercial, industrial and services activities
- 4. Contributes to the community's identity and cohesion, and reflects community values
 - a. Builds upon physical and cultural identity
 - b. Celebrates cultural identity and recognises the historic heritage values of a place
 - c. Provides formal and informal opportunities for social and cultural interaction
 - d. Enables a range of opportunities

Schedule 56 Criteria for the identification of historic heritage values

The identification of items, places and areas of historic heritage value will be based on but not limited to the following criteria:

-
1. The extent to which the item, place or area reflects important or representative aspects of Otago or New Zealand history.

 2. The association of the item, place or area with events, persons, or ideas of importance in Otago or New Zealand history.

 3. The potential of the item, place or area to provide knowledge of Otago or New Zealand history.

 4. The importance of the item, place or area to tangata whenua.

 5. The community association with, or public esteem for, the item, place or area.

 6. The potential of the item, place or area for public education.

 7. The technical accomplishment, value or design of the item, place or area.

 8. The symbolic or commemorative value of the item, place or area.

 9. The importance of identifying historic items, places or areas known to date from an early period of New Zealand settlement:

10. The importance of identifying rare types of historic items, places or areas:

11. The extent to which the item, place, or area forms part of a wider historical and cultural item, place or area.

Physical values

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Archaeological information | Does the place or area have the potential to contribute information about the human history of the region, or to current archaeological research questions, through investigation using archaeological methods? |
| 2. Architecture | Is the place significant because of its design, form, scale, materials, ornamentation, style, period, craftsmanship or other architectural element? |
| 3. Technology | Does the place demonstrate innovative or important methods of construction or design, does it contain unusual construction materials, is it an early example of the use of a particular construction technique or does it have the potential to contribute information about technological history? |
| 4. Scientific | Does the area or place have the potential to provide scientific information about the history of the region? |
| 5. Rarity | Is the place or area, or are features within it, unique, unusual, uncommon or rare at a district, regional or national level or in relation to particular historical themes? |
| 6. Representativeness | Is the place or area a good example of its class, for example, in terms of design, type, features, use, technology or time period? |
| 7. Integrity | Does the place have integrity, retaining significant features from its time of construction, or later periods when important modifications or additions were carried out? |
| 8. Vulnerability | Is the place vulnerable to deterioration or destruction or is threatened by land use activities? |
| 9. Context or Group | Is the place or area part of a group of historic heritage places, a landscape, a townscape or setting which when considered as a whole amplify the historic heritage values of the place and group/landscape or extend its significance? |

Historic values

- | | |
|-----------------------|--|
| 10. People | Is the place associated with the life or works of a well known or important individual, group or organisation? |
|-----------------------|--|

11. Events Is the place associated with an important event in local, regional or national history?
12. Patterns Is the place associated with important aspects, processes, themes or patterns of local, regional or national history?

Cultural values

13. Identity Is the place or area a focus of community, regional or national identity or sense of place, and does it provide evidence of cultural or historical continuity?
14. Public esteem Is the place held in high public esteem for its historic heritage or amenity values or as a focus of spiritual, political, national or other cultural sentiment?
15. Commemorative Does the place have symbolic or commemorative significance to people who use or have used it, or to the descendants of such people, as a result of its special interest, character, landmark, amenity or visual appeal?
16. Education Could the place contribute, through public education, to people's awareness, understanding and appreciation of New Zealand's history and cultures?
17. Takata whenua Is the place important to Kāi Tahu takata whenua for traditional, spiritual, cultural or historical reasons?
18. Statutory recognition Does the place or area have recognition in New Zealand legislation or international law including: World Heritage Listing under the World Heritage Convention 1972; registration under the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014; is it an archaeological site as defined by the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014; is it a statutory acknowledgement under claim settlement legislation; or is it recognised by special legislation?

Schedule 6¹¹⁹: Housing capacity

This schedule will be amended in accordance with NPS Urban Development Capacity requirements.
Refer to Policy 4.5.1(c) Providing for urban growth and development

¹¹⁹ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

Appendix 1: Te Tiriti o Waitangi

Two versions of Te Tiriti o Waitangi, the Treaty of Waitangi, exist, an English version and a version in Te Reo. Under international law, where there is a conflict between the versions the Te Reo version should be given precedence.

The Te Reo version was signed by 512 Chiefs and the English text version was signed by 30 Chiefs. Both were signed on behalf of the Crown by William Hobson, Consul and Lieutenant Governor.

Te Reo version of the Treaty

Ko te tuatahi

Ko nga Rangatira o te Wakaminenga me nga Rangatira katoa hoki ki hai i uru ki taua Wakaminenga ka tuku rawa atu ki te Kuini o Ingarani ake tonu atu te Kawanatanga katoa o o ratou wenua.

Ko te tuarua

Ko te Kuini o Ingarani ka wakarite ka wakaae ki nga Rangatira ki nga Hapu ki nga tangata katoa o Nui Tirani te tino rangatiratanga o o ratou wenua o ratou kainga me o ratou taonga katoa. Otiia ko nga Rangatira o te Wakaminenga me nga Rangatira katoa atu ka tuku ki te Kuini te hokonga o era waahi wenua e pai ai te tangata nona te wenua ki te ritenga o te utu e wakaritea ai e ratou ko te kai hoko e meatia nei e te Kuini hei kai hoko mona.

Ko te tuatoru

Hei wakaritenga mai hoki tenei mo te wakaetanga ki te Kawanatanga o te Kuini. Ka tiakina e te Kuini o Ingarani nga tangata māori katoa o Nui Tirani ka tukua ki a ratou nga tikanga katoa rite tahi ki ana mea ki nga tangata o Ingarani.

A Literal English Translation of the Māori Text

(NZ Court of Appeal, 29 June 1987, credited to Professor I H Kawharu)

The First

The Chiefs of the Confederation and all the chiefs who have not joined that Confederation give absolutely to the Queen of England for ever the complete government over their land.

The Second

The Queen of England agrees to protect the chiefs, subtribes and all the people of New Zealand in the unqualified exercise of their chieftainship over their lands, villages and all their treasures. But on the other hand the Chiefs of the Confederation and all the chiefs will sell land to the Queen at a price agreed to by the person owning it and by the person buying it (the latter being) appointed by the Queen as her purchase agent.

The Third

For this agreed arrangement therefore concerning the Government of the Queen, the Queen of England will protect all the ordinary people of New Zealand and will give them the same rights and duties of citizenship as the people of England.

English version**Article The First**

The chiefs of the Confederation of the United Tribes of New Zealand and the separate and independent Chiefs who have not become members of the Confederation cede to Her Majesty the Queen of England absolutely and without reservation all the rights and powers of Sovereignty which the said Confederation or Individual Chiefs respectively exercise or possess or may be supposed to exercise or to possess over their respective Territories as the sole sovereigns thereof.

Article The Second

Her Majesty the Queen of England confirms and guarantees to the Chiefs and Tribes of New Zealand and to the respective families and individuals thereof the full exclusive and undisturbed possession of their Lands and Estates Forests Fisheries and other properties which they may collectively or individually possess so long as it is their wish and desire to retain the same in their possession: but the Chiefs of the United Tribes and the individual Chiefs yield to her Majesty the exclusive right of Pre-emption over such lands as the proprietors thereof may be disposed to alienate at such prices as may be agreed upon between the respective Proprietors and persons appointed by Her Majesty to treat with them in that behalf.

Article The Third

In consideration thereof Her Majesty the Queen of England extends to the Natives of New Zealand Her Royal protection and imparts to them all the rights and Privileges of British Subjects.

Glossary

If a word or phrase is not defined then the meaning should be taken to be the same as found in Section 2 of the RMA, or relevant National Policy Statement or National Environmental Standard. Terms not defined in either the glossary or the above documents should be interpreted in keeping with their common usage.

Where used in this regional policy statement, these terms have the following definitions.

1990 mean sea level (Otago Datum)	The fixed level for basing subsequent level measurements on, in this case Otago Metric Datum is the Dunedin Vertical Datum (DVD 1958) plus 100 metres.
Ahi kā	Continued occupation according to traditional law of Māori tenure “keeping the fires burning”.
Ara Tawhito	Ancient Trails.
Atua	God, supernatural being.
Biodiversity Offsets¹²⁰	<u>Measurable conservation outcomes resulting from actions designed to compensate for residual adverse biodiversity impacts arising from project development after appropriate avoidance, minimisation, remediation and mitigation measures have been taken. The goal of biodiversity offsets is to achieve no net loss and preferably a net gain of biodiversity on the ground.</u>
Cascading hazards	Where the occurrence of one natural hazard is likely to trigger another natural hazard event e.g. an earthquake triggering a landslide which dams a river causing flooding.
Climate change	A change of climate that is attributed directly or indirectly to human activity that alters the composition of the global atmosphere and that is in addition to natural climate variability observed over comparable time periods.
Coastal water	Coastal water means seawater within the outer limits of the territorial sea and includes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Seawater with a substantial fresh water component; and (b) Seawater in estuaries, fiords, inlets, harbours, or embayments.

¹²⁰ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 15 March 2019

Contaminant	<p>Includes any substance (including gases, odorous compounds, liquids, solids, and micro-organisms) or energy (excluding noise) or heat, that either by itself or in combination with the same, similar, or other substances, energy, or heat:</p> <p>(a) when discharged into water, changes or is likely to change the physical, chemical, or biological condition of water; or</p> <p>(b) when discharged onto or into land or into air, changes or is likely to change the physical, chemical, or biological condition of the land or air onto or into which it is discharged</p>
Contaminated Land	<p>Means land that has a hazardous substance in or on it that:</p> <p>(a) has significant adverse effects on the environment; or</p> <p>(b) is reasonably likely to have significant adverse effects on the environment</p>
Crime prevention through environmental design	<p>A set of principles that can be applied to the design and development of buildings and other public areas. It seeks to use effective design to reduce the incidence and fear of crime.</p>
Cumulative effects	<p>In regard to assessing natural hazard consequence, cumulative effects include:</p> <p>a) The repeat of the same type of event, or different types of events, on the same area and/or people; and</p> <p>b) The effects of an event on many areas and/or people.</p>
Customary	<p>In accordance with custom or habitual practice; usual; habitual. Customs, or customary uses, may include those involving uninterrupted use and occupation. The word 'customary' in this policy statement plan is used in accordance with its dictionary definition, and is not limited to its legal definition.</p>
Ecosystem	<p>A system of interacting terrestrial or aquatic living organisms within their natural and physical environment.</p>
Ecosystem services	<p>Are the resources and processes the environment provides that people benefit from e.g. purification of water and air, pollination of plants and decomposition of waste.</p>

Electricity distribution infrastructure ¹²¹	Lines and associated equipment used for the conveyance of electricity on lines other than lines that are part of the <u>National gGrid or electricity sub-transmission infrastructure.</u>
<u>Electricity sub-transmission Infrastructure</u> ¹²²	<u>Means electricity infrastructure which conveys electricity between the National Grid and renewable energy generation sources to zone substations and between zone substations.</u>
Electricity transmission infrastructure	The n <u>N</u> ational g <u>G</u> rid of transmission lines and cables (aerial, underground and undersea, including the high-voltage direct current link), stations and sub-stations and other works used to connect grid injection points and grid exit points to convey electricity throughout the North and South Islands of New Zealand.
Emergency services	Has the meaning set out in section 4 of the Civil Defence Emergency Management Act 2002.
Endemic	Species that are naturally restricted to within a certain area.
Essential services	Include hospitals and health services, schools, public transport and essential commercial activities for civil defence purposes.
Exit strategy	A means of leaving a current situation that is likely to become difficult, e.g. as a result of natural hazards or climate change e.g. managed retreat or relocating dwellings.
Fresh water	Fresh water means all water except coastal water and geothermal water.
Functional needs ¹²³	The locational, operational, practical or technical needs of an activity, <u>including development and upgrades.</u>
Future urban development areas	Land mapped in district plans to provide direction on the location of greenfield urban expansion.
<u>Future development strategy</u> ¹²⁴	<u>In accordance with the NPS Urban Development Capacity</u>
Hapū	Sub-tribe, extended whānau.
Hazardous substance	Has the meaning set out in section 2 of the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996, but including non-toxic environmentally

¹²¹ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 6 July 2018

¹²² Changed by Environment Court consent order – 6 July 2018

¹²³ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

¹²⁴ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

damaging substances, medicines in dosage form, hazardous biological substances and radioactive substances.

Highly valued natural features, landscapes and seascapes¹²⁵

Highly valued natural features, landscapes and seascapes are those which have natural values that are of significance under Sections ~~6(a), 6(c), 7(c)~~ and 7(f), but are not 'outstanding natural features and landscapes' under Section 6(b) of the RMA.

Indigenous species

A species or genetic variant found naturally in New Zealand, including migrant species visiting New Zealand on a regular or irregular basis.

Infrastructure

- a) Pipelines that distribute or transmit natural or manufactured gas, petroleum, biofuel, or geothermal energy;
- b) A network for the purpose of telecommunication as defined in section 5 of the Telecommunications Act 2001;
- c) A network for the purpose of radiocommunication as defined in section 2(1) of the Radiocommunications Act 1989;
- d) Facilities for the generation of electricity, lines used or intended to be used to convey electricity, and support structures for lines used or intended to be used to convey electricity, excluding facilities, lines, and support structures if a person—
 - i. uses them in connection with the generation of electricity for the person's use; and
 - ii. does not use them to generate any electricity for supply to any other person;
- e) A water supply distribution system, including a system for irrigation;
- f) A drainage or sewerage system;
- g) structures for transport on land by cycleways, rail, roads, walkways, or any other means;
- h) Facilities for the loading or unloading of cargo or passengers transported on land by any means;
- i) An airport as defined in section 2 of the Airport Authorities Act 1966;
- j) A navigation installation as defined in section 2 of the Civil Aviation Act 1990;
- k) Facilities for the loading or unloading of cargo or passengers carried by sea, including a port related commercial undertaking as defined in section 2(1) of the Port Companies Act 1988;

¹²⁵ Under appeal

	l) Anything described as a network utility operation in regulations made for the purposes of the definition of “network utility operator” in section 166 of the Resource Management Act 1991.
Iwi	Tribe.
Iwi authority	The authority which represents an iwi and which is recognised by that iwi as having the authority to do so. Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu is the iwi authority in Otago.
Kāi Tahu	The collective of individuals who descend from Kāi Tahu, Kāti Māmoe and Waitaha, and who have mana whenua in Otago. Note: In the south of the South Island, the local Māori dialect uses a 'k' interchangeably with 'ng'. The preference is to use a 'k' so southern Māori are known as Kāi Tahu, rather than Ngāi Tahu. In this document, the “ng” is used for the iwi in general, and the “k” for southern Māori in particular.
Kāi Tahu ki Otago	The four Papatipu Rūnaka and associated whānau and rōpū of the Otago Region.
Kāika	Settlement.
Kaimoana	Food obtained from the sea.
Kaitiaki	Guardian.
Kaitiakitaka	The exercise of customary custodianship, in a manner that incorporates spiritual matters, by Kāi Tahu who hold manawhenua status for particular area or resource.
Ki Uta Ki Tai	Mountains to the sea.
Lifeline utilities	Utilities provided by those entities listed in Schedule 1 of the Civil Defence Emergency Management Act, 2002.
Mahika Kai	The customary gathering of food and natural materials and the places where those resources are gathered.
Mana Whenua	Customary authority or rakatirataka exercised by an iwi or hapū in an identified area.
Manawhenua	Those who exercise customary authority or rakatirataka in an identified area.

Marae	The marae atea and the complex of buildings around it, including the wharenuī, wharekai, church and urupa.
Marae atea	Courtyard or meeting place in front of the wharenuī.
Marae related activity	Māori cultural activities and provision of services primarily aimed at the health and wellbeing of the Māori population, by or for Kāi Tahu , undertaken on a marae that has the approval of rūnaka, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) Hui; b) Wānaka; c) Tangi; d) Overnight accommodation for visitors; e) Events and gatherings; f) Health services; and g) Cultural tourism.
Mauka	Mountain.
Mauri	Life supporting capacity. This definition, while not replicating the term ‘Mauri’, achieves the essence of this concept.
Multiple hazards	Where two or more unrelated natural hazard events may occur.
<u>Municipal infrastructure</u>¹²⁶	<p><u>Infrastructure for:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) <u>Conveyance of untreated water from source to, and including, the point of its treatment to potable standard for an urban environment (see below), but excluding its distribution within that urban environment;</u> b) <u>Treatment of wastewater from a reticulated system in an urban environment (see below) and conveyance for its disposal, but excluding its pre-treatment collection within that urban environment;</u> c) <u>Treatment of stormwater from a reticulated system in an urban environment (see below) and conveyance for its disposal, but excluding its pre-treatment collection within that urban environment.</u> <p><u>Urban Environment means:</u></p>

¹²⁶ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 6 July 2018

	<p>a) <u>Dunedin, Queenstown, Oamaru and any other urban area within Otago that qualifies as an urban environment as defined by the National Policy Statement on Urban Development Capacity 2016.</u></p> <p>b) <u>An area of land containing, or intended to contain, a concentrated settlement of 10,000 people or more and any associated business land, irrespective of local authority or statistical boundaries).</u></p>
Native Reserve	Any property or site that is a: Native Reserve excluded from the Ōtākou Land purchases (1844), Native Reserves excluded from the Kemps Land Purchases (1848), Reserves granted by the Native Land Court (1868), Half Caste Reserves (1881), Landless Native Reserve (1896), Other reserves (1890 and 1900).
Natural hazard	Includes any atmospheric or earth or water related occurrence (including earthquake, tsunami, erosion, volcanic and geothermal activity, landslip, subsidence, sedimentation, wind, drought, fire, or flooding) the action of which adversely affects or may adversely affect human life, property, or other aspects of the environment.
<u>No net loss</u>¹²⁷	<p><u>In the context of biodiversity offsets, means no net loss with respect to:</u></p> <p>a) <u>Species abundance, population structure, and composition (e.g. individual species or species groups)</u></p> <p>b) <u>Habitat structure (e.g. vegetation tiers, vegetation pattern)</u></p> <p>c) <u>Ecosystem function (e.g. nutrient cycling rates)</u></p> <p>d) <u>People's use of and cultural values associated with biodiversity (e.g. particularly valued habitats or species).</u></p>
Nohoaka/Nohoanga	Seasonal settlements.
Originally rare	In relation to terrestrial ecosystems, “originally” means the ecosystem type was present when Māori arrived, and still exists today. “Rare” means the total extent of each originally rare ecosystem type is less than 0.5 percent of New Zealand’s total area – that is, less than 134,000 hectares. A published list of originally rare terrestrial ecosystem types has been compiled by Landcare Research and is available from that organisation.
Papakāika	Traditional settlement or settlement on traditional land.
Papatipu Rūnaka/Rūnanga	Local manawhenua representative group or community system of representation.

¹²⁷ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 15 March 2019

Port Activities¹²⁸	Means the loading or unloading of ships for export or import purposes, including storage facilities and other related activities for the operation of the port area.
Pounamu	Nephrite, greenstone, jade.
Primary Production	The use of land and auxiliary buildings for the production (but not processing) of primary products (including agricultural, pastoral, horticultural, and forestry products). Primary production does not include land or auxiliary buildings used or associated with prospecting, exploration, or mining for minerals.
Rāhui	Restriction on access to a specific resource for a particular time.
Rakātira	Chief.
Rakātirataka	Chieftainship, decision-making rights.
Renewable electricity generation	The generation of electricity from solar, wind, hydro electricity, geothermal, biomass, tidal, wave, or ocean current energy sources.
Residual risk	The risk remaining after the implementation or undertaking of risk management measures.
Resilient / Resilience	The capacity and ability to withstand or recover quickly from difficult conditions.
Reverse sensitivity	The potential for the operation of an existing lawfully established activity to be constrained or curtailed by the more recent establishment or intensification of other activities which are sensitive to the established activity.
Risk	In the context of natural hazards means a combination of the likelihood of occurrence and consequences of a natural hazard event, and incorporates the concept of probabilities and impacts included in the definition of “effect” in Section 3 of the RMA.
Rohe	Boundary.

¹²⁸ Change proposed in Environment Court decision No. [2018] NZEnvC 183, currently subject to appeal.

Rōpū	Grouping.
<u>Significant electricity distribution infrastructure</u> ¹²⁹	<p><u>Means electricity infrastructure which supplies:</u></p> <p>a) <u>Essential public services (such as hospitals and lifeline facilities);</u></p> <p>b) <u>Other regionally significant infrastructure or individual consumers requiring supply of 1MW or more;</u></p> <p>c) <u>700 or more consumers; or</u></p> <p>d) <u>Communities that are isolated and which do not have an alternative supply in the event the line or cable is compromised and where the assets are difficult to replace in the event of failure.</u></p>
Statutory acknowledgement	An acknowledgement by the Crown of Ngāi Tahu’s special relationship with identifiable areas, namely Ngāi Tahu’s particular cultural, spiritual, historical, and traditional association with those areas (known as statutory areas).
Surf break	A natural feature that is comprised of swell, currents, water levels, seabed morphology, and wind. The hydrodynamic character of the ocean (swell, currents and water levels) combines with seabed morphology and winds to give rise to a ‘surfable wave’. A surf break includes the ‘swell corridor’ through which the swell travels, and the morphology of the seabed of that wave corridor, through to the point where waves created by the swell dissipate and become non-surfable. ‘Swell corridor’ means the region offshore of a surf break where ocean swell travels and transforms to a ‘surfable wave’. ‘Surfable wave’ means a wave that can be caught and ridden by a surfer. Surfable waves have a wave breaking point that peels along the unbroken wave crest so that the surfer is propelled laterally along the wave crest.
<u>System</u> ¹³⁰	<u>A set of discrete components interconnected and working together to function as a complex whole.</u>
Takata whenua	The iwi or hapū that holds mana whenua in a particular area.
Takiwā	Area, region, district.
Te Ao Tūroa	The natural environment.

¹²⁹ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

¹³⁰ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 28 June 2018

Te Tai o Arai Te Uru	Otago Coastal Marine Area.
Te Wai Pounamu	The South Island.
Tikaka	Lore and custom, customary values and practices.
Tino Rangatirataka	Full chiefly authority.
Tōpuni	Named for the Tōpuni cloak worn by Ngāi Tahu raketira, Tōpuni in this sense provides a public symbol of Ngāi Tahu manawhenua and raketirataka over some of the most prominent landscape features and conservation areas in Te Wai Pounamu. Under the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 Tōpuni has been laid over 14 areas of public conservation land of significance to Ngāi Tahu.
Tuhituhi neherā	Rock art.
Tūpuna/tīpuna	Ancestor.
Umu-tī	Earth oven used for cooking tī.
Urban growth boundary	Boundary mapped in district plans to identify areas of existing urban development and where further urban development can take place over the next 10 years and beyond.
Urupā	Burial place.
Wāhi Taoka	Resources, places and sites treasured by Kāi Tahu.
Wāhi Tapu	Places sacred to Kāi Tahu.
Wāhi Tūpuna	Landscapes and places that embody the relationship of manawhenua and their culture and traditions with their ancestral lands, water, sites, wāhi tapu, and other taoka.
Wairua	Life principle, spirit.
Waka	Canoe.
Wānaka/Wānanga	Customary learning method.
Waste	Has the meaning set out in section 5 of the Waste Minimisation Act 2008.

Water body	Fresh water or geothermal water in a river, lake, stream, pond, wetland, or aquifer, or any part thereof, that is not located within the coastal marine area.
Wetland¹³¹	<p>Wetland includes permanently or intermittently wet areas, shallow water, and land water margins that support a natural ecosystem of plants and animals that are adapted to wet conditions.</p> <p><u>In this Regional Policy Statement, 'wetland' excludes any wetland constructed for the purpose of water quality management</u></p>
Whakapapa	Genealogy.
Whānau	Family.
Whānau Rōpū	Whānau grouping.
Whare Kai	Dining hall.
Whareniui	Ancestral meeting house.
Whenua	Land.

¹³¹ Changed by Environment Court consent order – 15 March 2019

User Index

This index assists users of the Regional Policy Statement for Otago in identifying the most relevant objectives and policies that relate to a specific topic. Topics are presented in this index in alphabetical order. The index is a guide only and other policies may be relevant.

Chapter One ‘Resource Management in Otago is Integrated’ and Chapter Two ‘Kāi Tahu Values and Interests are Recognised and Kaitiakitaka is Expressed’ should be considered in every instance.

AIR		Page
Objective 3.1	The functions and values of Otago’s ecosystems and natural resources are recognised, maintained or enhanced where degraded	24
	Policy 3.1.6 Air quality	27
Objective 5.4	Adverse effects of using and enjoying Otago’s natural and physical resources are minimised	88
	Policy 5.4.1 Offensive or objectionable discharges	88
	Policy 5.4.4 Emission standards	89
	Policy 5.4.7 Offsetting for air quality	92
BIOLOGICAL DIVERSITY		Page
Objective 3.1	The functions and values of Otago’s ecosystems and natural resources are recognised, maintained or enhanced where degraded	24
	Policy 3.1.9 Ecosystems and indigenous biological diversity	29
	Policy 3.1.10 Biodiversity in the coastal environment	30
	Policy 3.1.12 Environmental enhancement	32
Objective 3.2	Otago’s significant and highly-valued natural resources are identified, and protected or enhanced where degraded	34
	Policy 3.2.1 Identifying significant indigenous vegetation and habitats	34
	Policy 3.2.2 Managing significant indigenous vegetation and habitats	34
Objective 5.4	Adverse effects of using and enjoying Otago’s natural and physical resources are minimised	88
	Policy 5.4.5 Pest plants and animals	89
	Policy 5.4.6 Offsetting for indigenous biological diversity	90

CLIMATE CHANGE		Page
Objective 4.1	Risks that natural hazards pose to Otago's communities are minimised	47
	Policy 4.1.1 Identifying natural hazards	47
	Policy 4.1.2 Natural hazard likelihood	47
	Policy 4.1.6 Avoiding increased natural hazard risk	50
	Policy 4.1.8 Precautionary approach to natural hazard risk	52
	Policy 4.1.9 Protecting features and systems that provide hazard mitigation	52
Objective 4.2	Otago's communities are prepared for and able to adapt to the effects of climate change	55
	Policy 4.2.1 Sea level rise	55
	Policy 4.2.2 Climate change	55
COASTAL ENVIRONMENT		Page
Objective 3.1	The functions and values of Otago's ecosystems and natural resources are recognised, maintained or enhanced where degraded	24
	Policy 3.1.5 Coastal water	27
	Policy 3.1.10 Biodiversity in the coastal environment	30
	Policy 3.1.11 Natural features, landscapes and seascapes	31
	Policy 3.1.12 Natural character in the coastal environment	32
	Policy 3.1.13 Environmental enhancement	32
Objective 3.2	Otago's significant and highly-valued natural resources are identified, and protected or enhanced where degraded	34
	Policy 3.2.3 Identifying outstanding natural features, landscapes and seascapes	35
	Policy 3.2.4 Managing outstanding natural features, landscapes and seascapes	35
	Policy 3.2.5 Identifying highly valued natural features, landscapes and seascapes	36
	Policy 3.2.6 Managing highly valued natural features, landscapes and seascapes	37
	Policy 3.2.7 Landward extent of the coastal environment	37
	Policy 3.2.8 Identifying high and outstanding natural character in the coastal environment	38
	Policy 3.2.9 Managing the outstanding natural character of the coastal environment	38
	Policy 3.2.10 Managing the high natural character of the coastal environment	39
	Policy 3.2.11 Identifying surf breaks of national importance	40
	Policy 3.2.12 Managing surf breaks of national importance	40

Objective 5.4	Adverse effects of using and enjoying Otago's natural and physical resources are minimised	88
	Policy 5.4.5 Pest plants and animals	89
	Policy 5.4.9 Activities in the Coastal Marine Area	93
DEVELOPMENT		Page
Objective 5.3	Sufficient land is managed and protected for economic production	85
	Policy 5.3.1 Rural activities	85
	Policy 5.3.2 Distribution of commercial activities	85
	Policy 5.3.3 Industrial land	86
	Policy 5.3.4 Mineral and petroleum exploration, extraction and processing	87
	Policy 5.3.5 Tourism and outdoor recreation	87
Objective 5.4	Adverse effects of using and enjoying Otago's natural and physical resources are minimised	88
	Policy 5.4.1 Offensive or objectionable discharges	88
	Policy 5.4.2 Adaptive management approach	88
	Policy 5.4.3 Precautionary approach	89
	Policy 5.4.4 Emission standards	89
	Policy 5.4.5 Pest plants and animals	89
	Policy 5.4.8 Adverse effects from mineral and petroleum exploration, extraction and processing	92
ENERGY		
Objective 4.4	Energy supplies to Otago's communities are secure and sustainable	63
	Policy 4.4.1 Renewable electricity generation	63
	Policy 4.4.2 Small and community scale renewable electricity generation	63
	Policy 4.4.3 Protecting existing renewable electricity generation	64
	Policy 4.4.4 Efficient transport of electricity	64
	Policy 4.4.5 Electricity distribution infrastructure	65
	Policy 4.4.6 Energy efficient transport	65
	Policy 4.4.7 Fuels	66
FRESH WATER		
Objective 3.1	The functions and values of Otago's ecosystems and natural resources are recognised, maintained or enhanced where degraded	24
	Policy 3.1.1 Fresh water	24
	Policy 3.1.2 Beds of rivers, lakes, wetlands and their margins	25
	Policy 3.1.3 Water allocation and use	26
	Policy 3.1.4 Water shortage	26
	Policy 3.1.12 Environmental enhancement	32

Objective 3.2	Otago's significant and highly-valued natural resources are identified, and protected or enhanced where degraded	34
	Policy 3.2.13 Identifying outstanding freshwater bodies	40
	Policy 3.2.14 Managing outstanding freshwater bodies	40
	Policy 3.2.15 Identifying the significant values of wetlands	41
	Policy 3.2.16 Managing the values of wetlands	41
Objective 5.4	Adverse effects of using and enjoying Otago's natural and physical resources are minimised	88
	Policy 5.4.1 Offensive or objectionable discharges	88
	Policy 5.4.5 Pest plants and animals	89
HISTORIC HERITAGE		
Objective 5.2	Historic heritage resources are recognised and contribute to the region's character and sense of identity	83
	Policy 5.2.1 Recognising historic heritage	83
	Policy 5.2.2 Identifying historic heritage	83
	Policy 5.2.3 Managing historic heritage	83
INFRASTRUCTURE AND LIFELINE UTILITIES		
Objective 4.1	Risks that natural hazards pose to Otago's communities are minimised	47
	Policy 4.1.7 Reducing existing natural hazard risk	51
	Policy 4.1.11 Hard protection structures	53
	Policy 4.1.12 Lifeline utilities and facilities for essential or emergency services	53
	Policy 4.1.13 Hazard mitigation measures, lifeline utilities, and essential and emergency services	53
Objective 4.3	Infrastructure is managed and developed in a sustainable way	55
	Policy 4.3.1 Managing infrastructure activities	57
	Policy 4.3.2 Nationally and regionally significant infrastructure	58
	Policy 4.3.3 Functional needs of infrastructure that has national or regional significance	59
	Policy 4.3.4 Adverse effects of nationally and regionally significant infrastructure	59
	Policy 4.3.5 Protecting infrastructure with national or regional significance	60
	Policy 4.3.6 The National Grid	61
	Policy 4.3.7 Recognising port activities at Port Chalmers and Dunedin	61

Objective 4.5	Urban growth and development is well designed, occurs in a strategic and coordinated way, and integrates effectively with adjoining urban and rural environments	68
	Policy 4.5.2 Integrating infrastructure with land use	69
INTEGRATED RESOURCE MANAGEMENT		Page
Objective 1.1	Otago's resources are used sustainably to promote economic, social, and cultural wellbeing for its people and communities	11
	Policy 1.1.1 Economic wellbeing	11
	Policy 1.1.2 Social and cultural wellbeing and health and safety	11
Objective 1.2	Recognise and provide for the integrated management of natural and physical resources to support the wellbeing of people and communities in Otago	13
	Policy 1.2.1 Integrated resource management	13
KĀI TAHU		Page
Objective 1.1	Otago's resources are used sustainably to promote economic, social, and cultural wellbeing for its people and communities	11
	Policy 1.1.2 Social and cultural wellbeing and health and safety	11
Objective 2.1	The principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi are taken into account in resource management processes and decisions	17
	Policy 2.1.1 Treaty obligations	17
	Policy 2.1.2 Treaty principles	17
Objective 2.2	Kāi Tahu values, interests and customary resources are recognised and provided for.	19
	Policy 2.2.1 Kāi Tahu wellbeing	19
	Policy 2.2.2 Recognising sites of cultural significance	19
	Policy 2.2.3 Wāhi tūpuna and associated sites	20
	Policy 2.2.4 Sustainable use of Māori land	20
Objective 5.2	Historic heritage resources are recognised and contribute to the region's character and sense of identity	83
	Policy 5.2.1 Recognising historic heritage	83
	Policy 5.2.2 Identifying historic heritage	83
	Policy 5.2.3 Managing historic heritage	84

LAND AND SOIL		Page
Objective 3.1	The functions and values of Otago's ecosystems and natural resources are recognised, maintained or enhanced where degraded	24
	Policy 3.1.7 Soil values	28
	Policy 3.1.8 Soil erosion	29
Objective 5.3	Sufficient land is managed and protected for economic production	85
	Policy 5.3.1 Rural activities	85
	Policy 5.3.2 Distribution of commercial activities	85
	Policy 5.3.3 Industrial land	86
	Policy 5.3.4 Mineral and petroleum exploration, extraction and processing	86
	Policy 5.3.5 Tourism and outdoor recreation	87
Objective 5.4	Adverse effects of using and enjoying Otago's natural and physical resources are minimised	88
	Policy 5.4.1 Offensive or objectionable discharges	88
	Policy 5.4.5 Pest plants and animals	89
	Policy 5.4.8 Adverse effects from mineral and petroleum exploration, extraction and processing	92
	Policy 5.4.10 Managing land use change in dry catchments	93
LANDSCAPES, SEASCAPES AND NATURAL FEATURES		Page
Objective 3.1	The functions and values of Otago's ecosystems and natural resources are recognised, maintained or enhanced where degraded	24
	Policy 3.1.11 Natural features, landscapes and seascapes	32
	Policy 3.1.12 Natural character in the coastal environment	32
Objective 3.2	Otago's significant and highly-valued natural resources are identified, and protected or enhanced where degraded	34
	Policy 3.2.3 Identifying outstanding natural features, landscapes and seascapes	35
	Policy 3.2.4 Managing outstanding natural features, landscapes and seascapes	35
	Policy 3.2.5 Identifying highly valued natural features, landscapes and seascapes	36
	Policy 3.2.6 Managing highly valued natural features, landscapes and seascapes	37
	Policy 3.2.17 Identifying significant soil	42
	Policy 3.2.18 Managing significant soil	42
NATURAL HAZARDS		Page
Objective 4.1	Risks that natural hazards pose to Otago's communities are minimised	47

Policy 4.1.1	Identifying natural hazards	47
Policy 4.1.2	Natural hazard likelihood	47
Policy 4.1.3	Natural hazard consequence	48
Policy 4.1.4	Assessing activities for natural hazard risk	48
Policy 4.1.5	Natural hazard risk	49
Policy 4.1.6	Minimising increase in natural hazard risk	50
Policy 4.1.7	Reducing existing natural hazard risk	51
Policy 4.1.8	Precautionary approach to natural hazard risk	52
Policy 4.1.9	Protecting features and systems that provide hazard mitigation	52
Policy 4.1.10	Mitigating natural hazards	52
Policy 4.1.11	Hard protection structures	53
Policy 4.1.12	Lifeline utilities and facilities for essential or emergency services	53
Policy 4.1.13	Hazard mitigation measures, lifeline utilities, and essential and emergency services	53
Objective 3.1	The functions and values of Otago’s ecosystems and natural resources are recognised, maintained or enhanced where degraded	24
Policy 3.1.13	Environmental enhancement	32
PUBLIC ACCESS		Page
Objective 3.1	The functions and values of Otago’s ecosystems and natural resources are recognised, maintained or enhanced where degraded	24
Policy 3.1.13	Environmental enhancement	32
Objective 4.5	Urban growth and development is well designed, occurs in a strategic and coordinated way, and integrates effectively with adjoining urban and rural environments	68
Policy 4.5.6	Designing for public access	72
Objective 5.1	Public access to areas of value to the community is maintained or enhanced	81
Policy 5.1.1	Public access	81
URBAN DESIGN AND GROWTH		Page
Objective 4.5	Urban growth and development is well designed, occurs in a strategic and coordinated way, and integrates effectively with adjoining urban and rural environments	68
Policy 4.5.1	Providing for urban growth and development	68
Policy 4.5.2	Integrating infrastructure with land use	69
Policy 4.5.3	Urban design	71

Policy 4.5.4	Low impact design	71
Policy 4.5.5	Warmer buildings	72
Policy 4.5.6	Designing for public access	72
WASTE, CONTAMINATION AND HAZARDOUS SUBSTANCES		Page
Objective 4.6	Hazardous substances, contaminated land and waste materials do not harm human health or the quality of the environment in Otago	74
Policy 4.6.1	Hazardous substances	74
Policy 4.6.2	Use, storage and disposal of hazardous substances	74
Policy 4.6.3	Hazardous substance collection, disposal and recycling	75
Policy 4.6.4	Identifying contaminated land	75
Policy 4.6.5	Managing contaminated land	75
Policy 4.6.6	Waste management	76
Policy 4.6.7	Waste minimisation responses	76
Policy 4.6.8	Waste storage, recycling, recovery, treatment and disposal	77
Policy 4.6.9	New contaminated land	78